2003

# ESCALADE/ESCALADE ESV



# The 2003 Cadillac Escalade/Escalade ESV Owner Manual


**Seats and Restraint Systems** ..... 1-1
- Front Seats ..... 1-3
- Rear Seats ..... 1-7
- Safety Belts ..... 1-25
- Child Restraints ..... 1-48
- Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) ..... 1-73
- Restraint System Check ..... 1-87

**Features and Controls** ..... 2-1
- Keys ..... 2-3
- Doors and Locks ..... 2-8
- Windows ..... 2-14
- Theft-Deterrent Systems ..... 2-16
- Starting and Operating Your Vehicle ..... 2-18
- Mirrors ..... 2-30
- OnStar® System ..... 2-35
- HomeLink® Transmitter ..... 2-37
- Storage Areas ..... 2-41
- Sunroof ..... 2-46
- Vehicle Personalization ..... 2-47

**Instrument Panel** ..... 3-1
- Instrument Panel Overview ..... 3-4
- Climate Controls ..... 3-22
- Warning Lights, Gages and Indicators ..... 3-31
- Driver Information Center (DIC) ..... 3-47
- Audio System(s) ..... 3-64

**Driving Your Vehicle** ..... 4-1
- Your Driving, the Road, and Your Vehicle ..... 4-2
- Towing ..... 4-47

**Service and Appearance Care** ..... 5-1
- Service ..... 5-3
- Fuel ..... 5-5
- Checking Things Under the Hood ..... 5-10
- All-Wheel Drive ..... 5-49
- Rear Axle ..... 5-51
- Headlamp Aiming ..... 5-52
- Bulb Replacement ..... 5-56
- Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement ..... 5-64
- Tires ..... 5-65
- Appearance Care ..... 5-90
- Vehicle Identification ..... 5-98
- Electrical System ..... 5-99
- Capacities and Specifications ..... 5-109
- Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts ..... 5-111

**Maintenance Schedule** ..... 6-1
- Maintenance Schedule ..... 6-2

**Customer Assistance Information** ..... 7-1
- Customer Assistance Information ..... 7-2
- Reporting Safety Defects ..... 7-9

**Index** ..... 1



GENERAL MOTORS, GM, the GM Emblem, CADILLAC, the CADILLAC Crest & Wreath and the name ESCALADE are registered trademarks and the name ESV is a trademark of the General Motors Corporation.

This manual includes the latest information at the time it was printed. We reserve the right to make changes after that time without further notice. For vehicles first sold in Canada, substitute the name "General Motors of Canada Limited" for Cadillac Motor Car Division whenever it appears in this manual.

Please keep this manual in your vehicle, so it will be there if you ever need it when you're on the road. If you sell the vehicle, please leave this manual in it so the new owner can use it.

Litho in U.S.A.
Part No. S2334 A First Edition

## Canadian Owners

You can obtain a French copy of this manual from your dealer or from:

Helm, Incorporated
P.O. Box 07130
Detroit, MI 48207

## How to Use This Manual

Many people read their owner's manual from beginning to end when they first receive their new vehicle. If you do this, it will help you learn about the features and controls for your vehicle. In this manual, you'll find that pictures and words work together to explain things.

## Index

A good place to look for what you need is the Index in back of the manual. It's an alphabetical list of what's in the manual, and the page number where you'll find it.

©Copyright General Motors Corporation 06/24/02
All Rights Reserved

## Safety Warnings and Symbols

You will find a number of safety cautions in this book. We use a box and the word CAUTION to tell you about things that could hurt you if you were to ignore the warning.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**These mean there is something that could hurt you or other people.**

In the caution area, we tell you what the hazard is. Then we tell you what to do to help avoid or reduce the hazard. Please read these cautions. If you don't, you or others could be hurt.



You will also find a circle with a slash through it in this book. This safety symbol means "Don't," "Don't do this" or "Don't let this happen."

## Vehicle Damage Warnings

Also, in this book you will find these notices:

***Notice:*** **These mean there is something that could damage your vehicle.**

A notice will tell you about something that can damage your vehicle. Many times, this damage would not be covered by your warranty, and it could be costly. But the notice will tell you what to do to help avoid the damage.

When you read other manuals, you might see CAUTION and NOTICE warnings in different colors or in different words.

You'll also see warning labels on your vehicle. They use the same words, CAUTION or NOTICE.

## Vehicle Symbols

Your vehicle has components and labels that use symbols instead of text. Symbols, used on your vehicle, are shown along with the text describing the operation or information relating to a specific component, control, message, gage or indicator.

If you need help figuring out a specific name of a component, gage or indicator reference the following topics:

- Seats and Restraint Systems in Section 1
- Features and Controls in Section 2
- Instrument Panel Overview in Section 3
- Climate Controls in Section 3
- Warning Lights, Gages and Indicators in Section 3
- Audio System(s) in Section 3
- Engine Compartment Overview in Section 5

These are some examples of vehicle symbols you may find on your vehicle:

CAUTION POSSIBLE INJURY



PROTECT EYES BY SHIELDING



CAUSTIC BATTERY ACID COULD CAUSE BURNS



AVOID SPARKS OR FLAMES



SPARK OR FLAME COULD EXPLODE BATTERY



LATCH BOTH LAP AND SHOULDER BELTS TO PROTECT OCCUPANT DO NOT TWIST SAFETY BELT WHEN ATTACHING



FASTEN SEAT BELTS



MOVE SEAT FULLY REARWARD SECURE CHILD SEAT



PULL BELT OUT COMPLETELY THEN SECURE CHILD SEAT



POWER WINDOW



AIR BAG



DO NOT INSTALL A REAR-FACING CHILD RESTRAINT IN THIS SEATING POSITION



DO NOT INSTALL A FORWARD-FACING CHILD RESTRAINT IN THIS SEATING POSITION



DOOR LOCK UNLOCK



MASTER LIGHTING SWITCH



TURN SIGNALS



PARKING LAMPS



HAZARD WARNING FLASHER



DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS



FOG LAMPS



ENGINE COOLANT TEMP



BATTERY CHARGING SYSTEM



BRAKE



COOLANT



ENGINE OIL PRESSURE



ANTI-LOCK BRAKES




FUSE BOX ACCESS



ENGINE COOLANT FAN



FUEL



OWNER'S MANUAL



SERVICE



SERVICE MANUAL



## NOTES

# Section 1 Seats and Restraint Systems


**Front Seats** ..... 1-3
- Power Seats ..... 1-3
- Power Lumbar ..... 1-3
- Heated Seats ..... 1-4
- Reclining Seatbacks ..... 1-5
- Head Restraints ..... 1-6

**Rear Seats** ..... 1-7
- Rear Seat Operation ..... 1-7
- Heated Seats ..... 1-9
- 60/40 Split Bench Seat ..... 1-9
- 50/50 Split Bench Seat ..... 1-11
- Bench Seat ..... 1-17
- Bucket Seats ..... 1-22

**Safety Belts** ..... 1-25
- Safety Belts: They Are for Everyone ..... 1-25
- Questions and Answers About Safety Belts ..... 1-29
- How to Wear Safety Belts Properly ..... 1-30
- Driver Position ..... 1-30
- Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy ..... 1-38
- Right Front Passenger Position ..... 1-39
- Center Passenger Position ..... 1-39
- Rear Seat Passengers ..... 1-41
- Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides for Children and Small Adults ..... 1-44
- Safety Belt Extender ..... 1-47

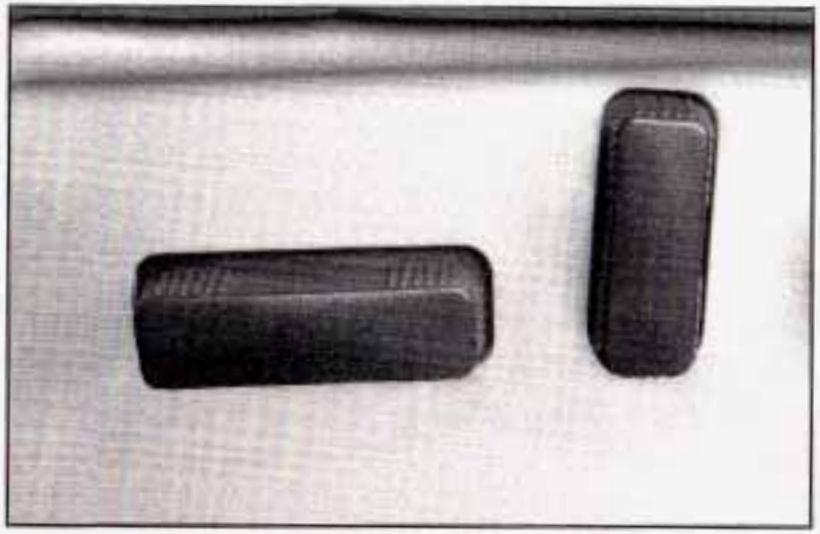
**Child Restraints** ..... 1-48
- Older Children ..... 1-48
- Infants and Young Children ..... 1-50
- Child Restraint Systems ..... 1-54
- Where to Put the Restraint ..... 1-57
- Top Strap ..... 1-58
- Top Strap Anchor Location ..... 1-59
- Lower Anchorages and Top Tethers for Children (LATCH System) ..... 1-62
- Securing a Child Restraint Designed for the LATCH System ..... 1-64
- Securing a Child Restraint in a Rear Outside Seat Position ..... 1-64
- Securing a Child Restraint in a Center Rear Seat Position ..... 1-66
- Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position ..... 1-68

# Section 1 Seats and Restraint Systems


**Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)** ..... 1-73
Where Are the Air Bags? ..... 1-75
When Should an Air Bag Inflate? ..... 1-77
What Makes an Air Bag Inflate? ..... 1-79
How Does an Air Bag Restrain? ..... 1-79
What Will You See After an Air Bag Inflates? ..... 1-80
Passenger Sensing System ..... 1-81
Servicing Your Air Bag-Equipped Vehicle ..... 1-86
Adding Equipment to Your Air Bag-Equipped Vehicle ..... 1-86
**Restraint System Check** ..... 1-87
Checking Your Restraint Systems ..... 1-87
Replacing Restraint System Parts After a Crash ..... 1-87

# Front Seats

## Power Seats



**Horizontal Control:** You can adjust your vehicle's front seats with the horizontal control located on the outboard edge of each front seat.

Raise or lower the front of the seat by raising or lowering the forward edge of the control. Raise or lower the rear of the seat by raising or lowering the rear edge of the control.

Move the seat forward or rearward by moving the whole control toward the front or toward the rear of the vehicle.

Moving the whole control up or down raises or lowers the entire seat cushion.

## Power Lumbar



You can increase or decrease lumbar support in an area of the lower seatback.

To increase support, press and hold the front of the control. To decrease support, press and hold the rear of the control. Let go of the control when the lower seatback reaches the desired level of support.

You can also reshape the side wing area of the lower seatback for more lateral support.

To increase support, press and hold the top of the control. To decrease support, press and hold the bottom of the control. Let go of the control when the lower seatback reaches the desired level of support.

## Heated Seats



The buttons used to control this feature are located on the front doors. The engine must be running for the heated seat feature to work.

To heat the entire seat, press the horizontal button with the heated seat symbol. Press the button to cycle through the temperature settings of high, medium and low and to turn the heated seat off. Indicator lights will glow to designate the level of heat selected, three for high, two for medium, and one for low.

The low setting warms the seatback and cushion until the seat temperature is near body temperature. The medium and high settings heat the seatback and seat cushion to a slightly higher temperature. You will be able to feel heat in about two minutes.

To heat only the seatback, press the vertical button with the heated seatback symbol. An indicator light on the seatback button will glow to designate that only the seatback is being heated. Additional presses of the seatback button will cycle through the heat levels for the seatback only. Press the horizontal button again to heat the whole seat.

The heated front seats will shut off automatically when the ignition is turned off.

Your vehicle also has heated rear seats. See *Heated Seats on page 1-9.*

## Reclining Seatbacks

The vertical power seat control described earlier allows the seatback to recline.

But don't have a seatback reclined if your vehicle is moving.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Sitting in a reclined position when your vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even if you buckle up, your safety belts can't do their job when you're reclined like this.**

**The shoulder belt can't do its job. In a crash, you could go into it, receiving neck or other injuries.**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**The lap belt can't do its job either. In a crash the belt could go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not at your pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries.**

**For proper protection when the vehicle is in motion, have the seatback upright. Then sit well back in the seat and wear your safety belt properly.**

## Head Restraints



Adjust your head restraint so that the top of the restraint is closest to the top of your head. This position reduces the chance of a neck injury in a crash.

Pull straight up on the head restraint to raise it and push it down to lower it.

The front head restraints can also be tilted forward in addition to being slid up or down. To tilt either of the front head restraints do the following:

Pull the head restraint toward you until you hear a click. Then let go. The head restraint will stay in this position unless you pull it forward more until another click is heard. There are four positions available: initial position, first click, second click, and third click. After the third position (three clicks) is reached, pulling the head restraint farther will release it back to the normal upright position.

The rear head restraints can be slid up or down just as the front head restraints, but they do not tilt.

# Rear Seats

## Rear Seat Operation

### Entering or Exiting the Third Row Seats

**Escalade:** To enter or exit the third row seat you must fold the second row seat down following the instructions later in this section. See "Folding the Seatback" under *60/40 Split Bench Seat on page 1-9*. If you are exiting the third row seat with no assistance do the following:

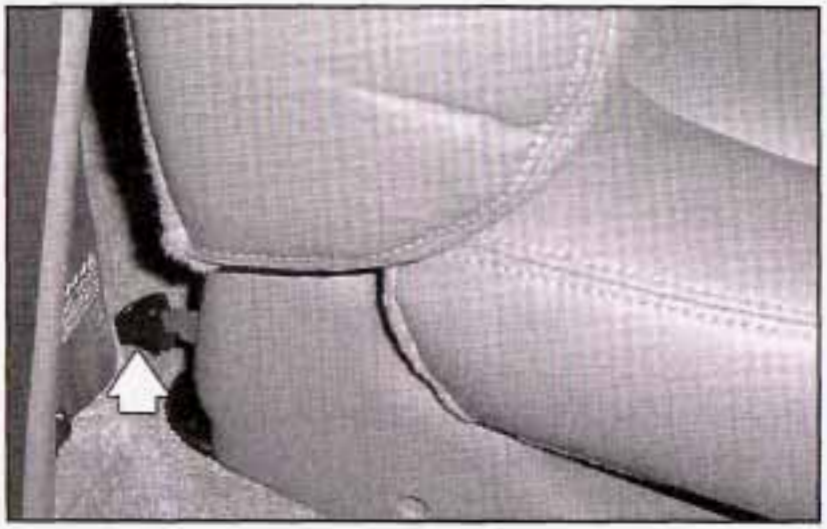


1. Reach over the second row seat and pull up on the strap loop. Then pull the seat cushion up and push it forward.
2. Next, push the seatback forward until it is flat with the floor.

Be sure to return the seat to the passenger position when finished. Pull forward and push rearward on the seat to make sure it is locked in place.

**Escalade ESV:** The passenger's side of the second row 60/40 or rear bucket seat has an easy entry/exit feature. This makes it easy to get in and out of the third row seat.

To operate the easy entry seat, do the following:



1. Lift the release lever on the back of the seat, upward.
2. Tilt the seatback toward the front of the vehicle and the seat will release.
3. Pull (push if you are exiting the third row with no assistance) the seat forward until it stops.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**If the seatback isn't locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always press rearward on the seatback to be sure it is locked.**

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**A safety belt that is improperly routed, not properly attached, or twisted won't provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. After raising the rear seatback, always check to be sure that the safety belts are properly routed and attached, and are not twisted.**

Be sure to return the seat to the passenger position when finished. Pull forward and push rearward on the seat to make sure it is locked in place.

## Heated Seats



The buttons used to control this feature are located on the back of the center console. The engine must be running for the heated seat feature to work.

To heat the seat, press the button to cycle through the temperature settings of high and low. Press the button a third time to turn the seats off. An Indicator light will glow for each heat setting when the seats are operating.

The heated rear seats will shut off automatically when the ignition is turned off.

## 60/40 Split Bench Seat

If your vehicle has a 60/40 split bench, the seatbacks can be folded to give you more cargo space.

## Folding the Seatbacks (60/40 Split Bench Seat)

The rear seat may have a 60/40 split seat which may be folded down to create a load floor and give you more cargo space. On the Escalade, the rear seatbacks are equipped with rearward folding head restraints. When the seatback is being folded down, the head restraint will automatically fold rearward.

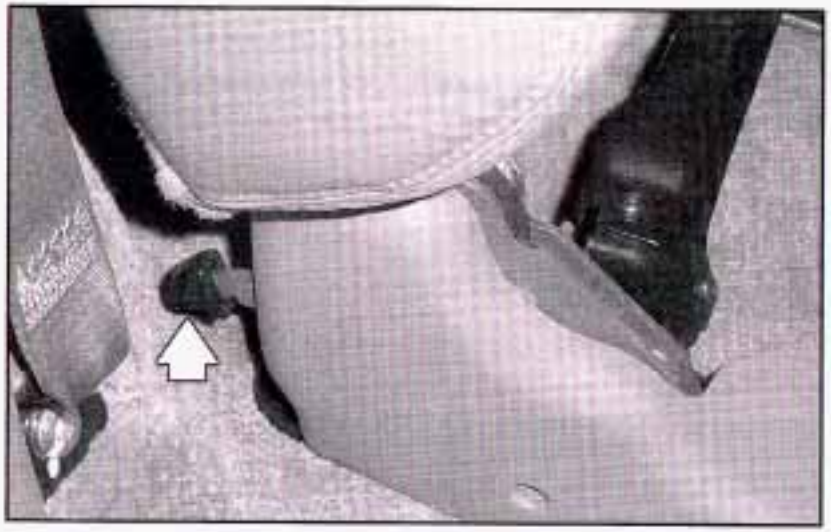
To fold the rear seat, do the following:

1. Make sure that nothing is under or in front of the seat.



2. Pull up on the strap loop located at the rear of the seat cushion and pull the seat cushion up. Then fold it forward.

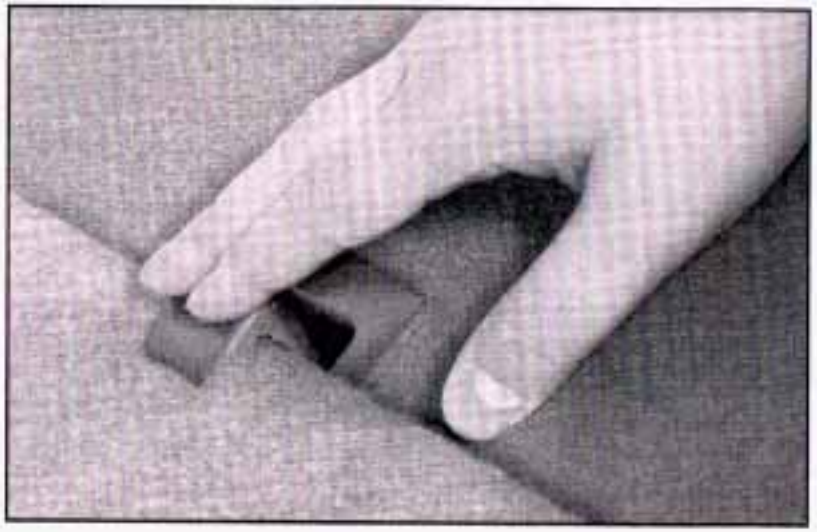
3. **Escalade:** Pull the seatback forward and fold it down until it is flat.



**Escalade ESV:** On the passenger side of Escalade ESV models, the lever at the base of the seat must be pulled up to release the seatback. Pull the seatback forward and fold it down until it is flat.

If the seatback cannot fold flat because it interferes with the cushion, try moving the front seat forward and/or bringing the front seatback more upright.

Once the seatbacks are folded down, on Escalade ESV models only, the rear seat footwell area will be exposed and will have to be covered by the load floor panel(s). To create a load floor, do the following:



1. Release the panels from the seatbacks by pushing forward on the latches.
2. Then fold the panels back to cover the rear seat footwell area.

## Returning the Seats to an Upright Position

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**If the seatback isn't locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always press rearward on the seatback to be sure it is locked.**

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**A safety belt that is improperly routed, not properly attached, or twisted won't provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. After raising the rear seatback, always check to be sure that the safety belts are properly routed and attached, and are not twisted.**

To return the seat to the upright position, do the following:

1. On Escalade ESV models, lift the load floor panels and latch them into the seatback.
2. Lift the seatback up and push it rearward all the way.
3. Lower the seat cushion until it latches into position.
4. Pull forward on the seatback and up on the seat cushion to make sure the seat is securely in place.
5. On Escalade models, return the head restraints to the upright position.
6. Check to see that the safety belt buckles on the driver's side seat are accessible to the outboard and center occupants and are not under the seat cushions.

## 50/50 Split Bench Seat

If your vehicle has a 50/50 split bench, the seatback(s) can be folded and the entire seat(s) tilted or removed from the vehicle.

## Folding the Seatbacks

To fold the seatbacks, do the following:



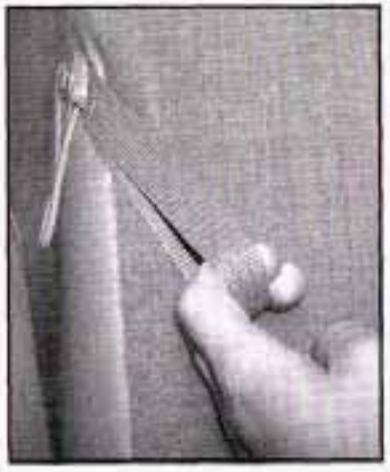
1. Pull up on the release lever, labeled 1, located on the rear of the seatback, and push the seatback forward.

## Unfolding the Seatbacks

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**If the seatback isn't locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always press rearward on the seatback to be sure it is locked.**

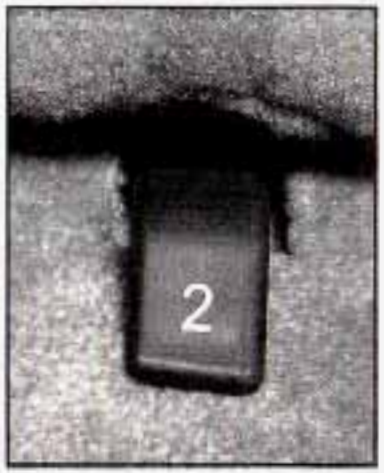
To return the seatbacks to the passenger position, do the following:



1. Pull up on the release lever labeled 1 and then pull up on the seatback or the assist strap located on the outboard side of the seat until the seatback locks into the upright position.
2. Push forward on the seatback to make sure it is locked into position.

## Tilting the 50/50 Split Bench Seat

1. Fold the seatbacks forward using the instructions listed previously.




2. Unlatch the seat from the floor by pulling up on the lever labeled 2, located on the rear of the seat.

3. Lift the rear of the seat up from the floor and push it forward until it locks into place. You will not be able to unlatch the seat from the floor unless the seatback is folded down.

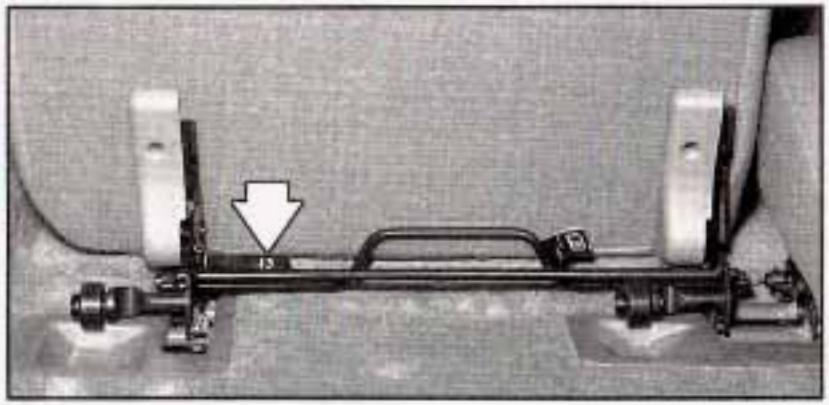
The seat will now remain locked in the upright position.

## Returning the Seat(s) to an Upright Position

**⚠ CAUTION:**

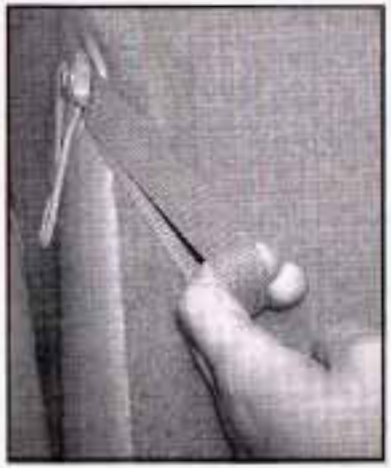
**If the seatback isn't locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always press rearward on the seatback to be sure it is locked.**

To return the seatback to an upright position, do the following:



1. Pull the lever labeled 3 toward you.

2. While still holding the lever 3 toward you, grasp the top of the seat and pull it toward you slightly.
3. Let go of lever 3 and pull the seat completely down.
4. Push down on the seat firmly. Try pulling it up to be sure it is locked into place.



5. Pull up on the release lever labeled 1 and then pull up on the seatback or the assist strap located on the outboard side of the seat until the seatback locks into the upright position.

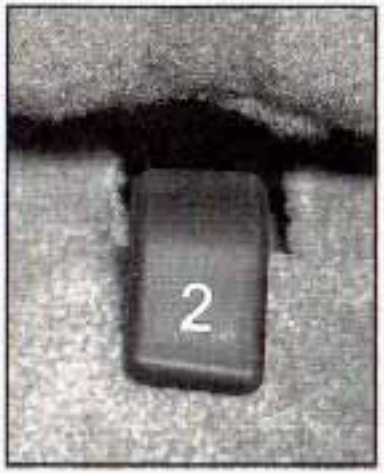
## Removing the 50/50 Split Bench Seats

To remove the 50/50 split bench seat, do the following:

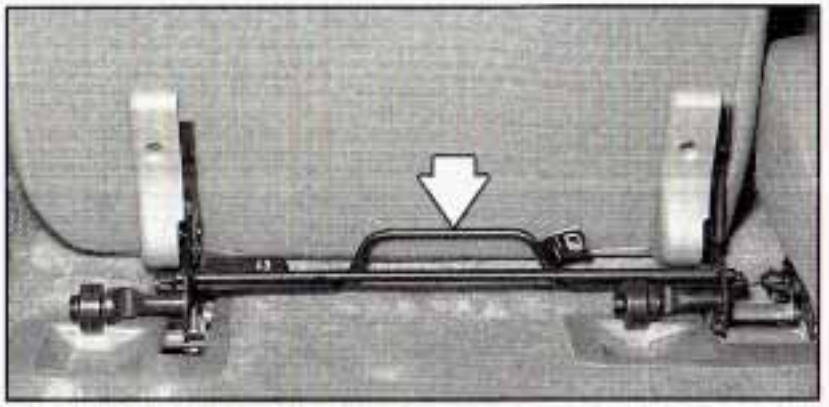
1. Open the liftgate.




2. Fold the seatback forward onto the seat cushion by using the lever labeled 1. The seat cannot be removed unless the seatback is folded.




3. To unlatch the rear of the seat from the floor, pull up on the release lever labeled 2, at the rear of the seat, and lift the rear of the seat up from the floor.



4. Squeeze the release handle while pulling the seat out.
5. While holding the rear of the seat up, roll the seat out of the vehicle.

## Replacing the 50/50 Split Bench Seat

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**If the seatback isn't locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always press rearward on the seatback to be sure it is locked.**

**⚠ CAUTION:**

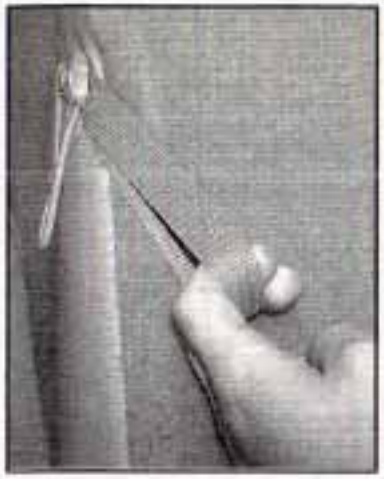
**A seat that isn't locked into place properly can move around in a collision or sudden stop. People in the vehicle could be injured. Be sure to lock the seat into place properly when installing it.**

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**A safety belt that is improperly routed, not properly attached, or twisted won't provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. After raising the rear seatback, always check to be sure that the safety belts are properly routed and attached, and are not twisted.**

To replace the 50/50 split bench, do the following:

1. While holding the rear of the seat up, slide the front wheels into the slots on the floor. The front latches should lock into place. If the latches do not lock, try tilting the rear of the seat upwards.



2. Once the latches are engaged, let the seat drop into place. Release the lever labeled 1 and pull the seatback up using the assist strap on the outboard side of the seat to return it to its upright position.

3. Push and pull on the seat to make sure it is locked into place. The seatback cannot be raised to the upright position unless the seat is secured to the floor.

## Bench Seat

If your vehicle has a full bench, the seatback can be folded and the seat can be tilted or removed from the vehicle.

## Folding the Seatback

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**If the seatback isn't locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always press rearward on the seatback to be sure it is locked.**

To fold the seatback on the bench seat, do the following:




Pull up on the release lever labeled 1 located on the rear of the seatback and push the seatback forward.

## Unfolding the Seatback




1. To return the seatback to an upright position, pull up on the release lever labeled 1 and then pull up on the seatback until it locks into the upright position.

2. Push and pull on the seatback to check that it is locked into place.

## Tilting the Full Bench Seat

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**If the seatback isn't locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**cause injury to the person sitting there. Always press rearward on the seatback to be sure it is locked.**

1. Fold the seatbacks forward using the instructions listed previously.




2. Unlatch the seat from the floor by pulling up on the lever labeled 2 located on the rear of the seat.

3. Lift the rear of the seat up from the floor and push it forward. You will not be able to unlatch the seat from the floor unless the seatback is folded down.

## ⚠ CAUTION:

**If the support rod isn't properly engaged, the folded third row seat could come loose in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to people and damage to your vehicle. Always be sure the support rod is properly engaged when the third row seat is folded forward.**

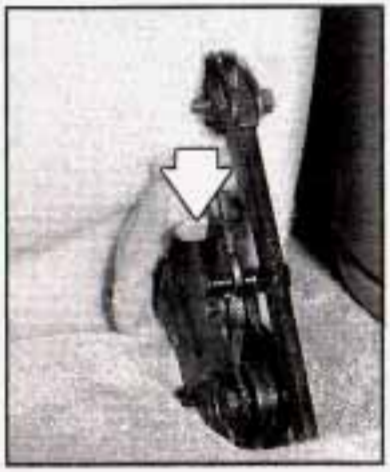


4. While holding the seat forward, pull the prop rod out from the retainer clips. Flip the prop rod (arrow) down until it latches into place.

The seat will now remain in the upright position.

## Returning the Seat to an Upright Position

To return the seatback to the upright position, do the following:



1. Pull the lever (arrow) on the prop rod bracket until the rod unlatches from the seat bracket.
2. Place the prop rod back into the storage position.
3. Pull the seat toward you and push firmly down until the seat latches in the floor.
4. Try pulling it up to be sure it is locked into place.
5. Pull up on the release lever labeled 1 and then pull up on the seatback until the seatback locks into the upright position.

## Removing the Bench Seat

To remove the bench seat, do the following:

1. Open the liftgate.




2. Fold the seatback forward onto the seat cushion by using the lever labeled 1. The seat cannot be removed unless the seatback is folded.




3. To unlatch the rear of the seat from the floor, pull up on the release lever labeled 2 at the rear of the seat and lift the rear of the seat up from the floor.



4. Pull on the release strap located in the lower middle of the seat to unlatch the seat from the floor and pull the seat out. Use one hand to pull the release strap and the other on the handle to pull the seat out.

5. While holding the rear of the seat up, roll the seat out of the vehicle.

## Replacing the Bench Seat

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**If the seatback isn't locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always press rearward on the seatback to be sure it is locked.**

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**A seat that isn't locked into place properly can move around in a collision or sudden stop. People in the vehicle could be injured. Be sure to lock the seat into place properly when installing it.**

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**A safety belt that is improperly routed, not properly attached, or twisted won't provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. After raising the rear seatback, always check to be sure that the safety belts are properly routed and attached, and are not twisted.**

To replace the bench seat, do the following:

1. While holding the rear of the seat up, slide the front wheels into the slots on the floor. The front latches should lock into place. If the latches do not lock, try tilting the rear of the seat upwards.
2. Once the latches are engaged, let the seat drop into place. Release the lever labeled 1 to return the seatback to its upright position.
3. Push and pull on the seat to make sure it is locked into place. The seatback cannot be raised to the upright position unless the seat is secured to the floor.

## Bucket Seats

If your vehicle has bucket seats, the seatbacks can be reclined and the seats can be folded to give you more cargo room.

## Reclining the Seatbacks

To recline the seatback, do the following:



1. Pull up the lever located under the seat cushion. Escalade lever shown, Escalade ESV lever similar.

2. Release the lever to lock the seatback where you want it. Pull the lever again without pushing on the seatback and the seatback will go to an upright position.

## Folding the Seatbacks

The seatbacks on the bucket seats may be folded forward to give you more cargo space.

To fold the seatbacks on the bucket seats, do the following:

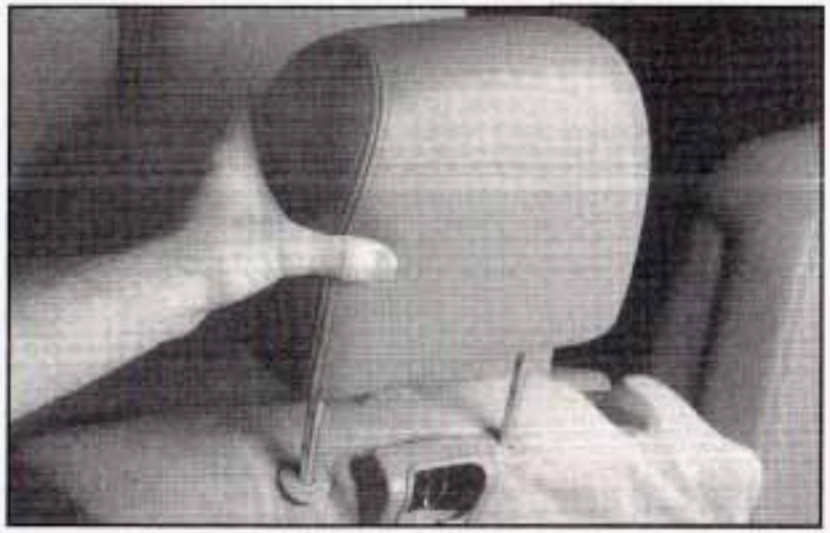


1. Pull up on the strap loop located at the rear of the seat cushion and pull the seat cushion up and fold it forward.



2. Pull the seatback release lever upward and pull the seatback up and fold it down until it is flat. Escalade lever shown, Escalade ESV lever similar.

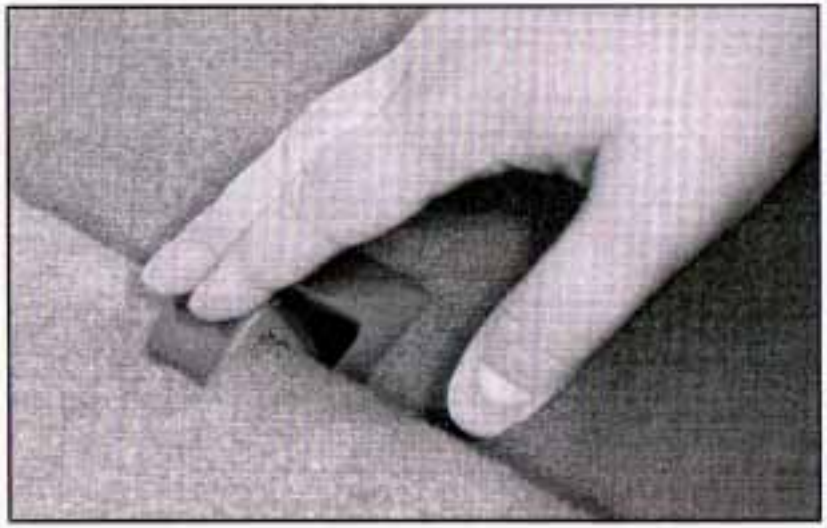
On the Escalade ESV models, you must first remove the headrest and store it on the top of the seat cushion as shown next.



Pull the headrest out from the seatback and slide the pins into the holes provided in the top of the seat cushion.

If the seatback cannot fold flat because it interferes with the cushion, try moving the front seat forward and/or bringing the front seatback more upright.

Once the seatbacks are folded down, on Escalade ESV models only, the rear seat footwell area will be exposed and will have to be covered by the load floor panel. To create a load floor, do the following:



1. Release the panels from the seatbacks by pushing forward on the latches.
2. Then fold the panels back to cover the rear seat footwell area.

## Returning the Seatbacks to an Upright Position

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**If the seatback isn't locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always press rearward on the seatback to be sure it is locked.**

To return the seatbacks to the upright position, do the following:

1. On Escalade ESV models, lift the load floor panels and latch them into the seatback.
2. Lift the seatback up and push it rearward all the way. On Escalade ESV models, move the headrest to the seatback.
3. Lower the seat cushion until it latches into position.
4. Pull forward on the seatback and up on the seat cushion to make sure the seat is securely in place.
5. On Escalade models, return the headrests to the upright position.

# Safety Belts

## Safety Belts: They Are for Everyone

This part of the manual tells you how to use safety belts properly. It also tells you some things you should not do with safety belts.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Don't let anyone ride where he or she can't wear a safety belt properly. If you are in a crash and you're not wearing a safety belt, your injuries can be much worse. You can hit things inside the vehicle or be ejected from it. You can be seriously injured or killed. In the same crash, you might not be, if you are buckled up. Always fasten your safety belt, and check that your passengers' belts are fastened properly too.**

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.**



Your vehicle has a light that comes on as a reminder to buckle up. See *Safety Belt Reminder Light on page 3-33.*

In most states and in all Canadian provinces, the law says to wear safety belts. Here's why: *They work.*

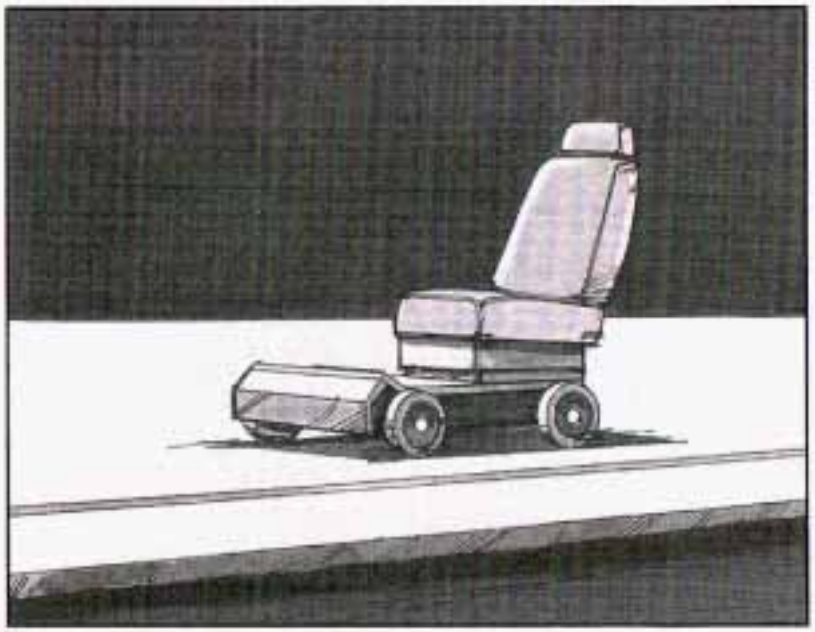
You never know if you'll be in a crash. If you do have a crash, you don't know if it will be a bad one.

A few crashes are mild, and some crashes can be so serious that even buckled up, a person wouldn't survive. But most crashes are in between. In many of them, people who buckle up can survive and sometimes walk away. Without belts they could have been badly hurt or killed.

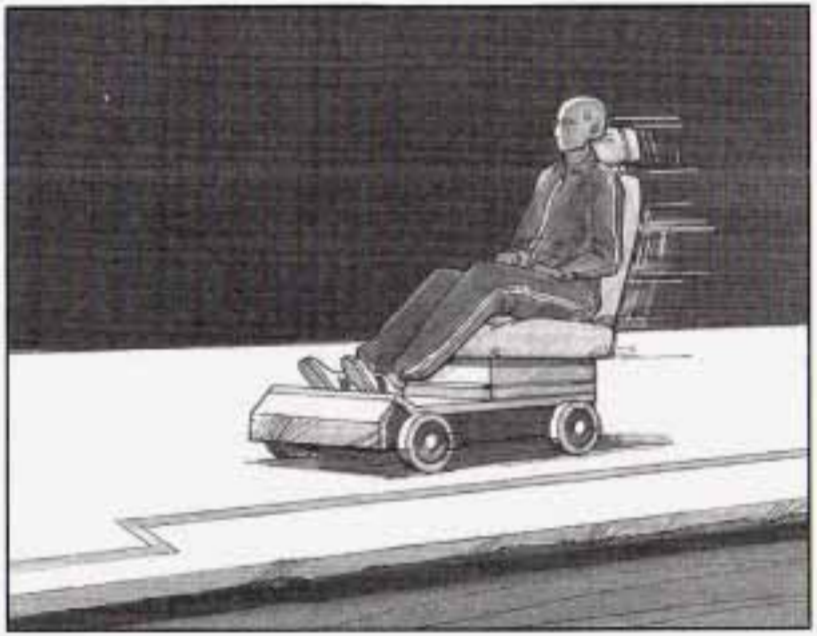
After more than 30 years of safety belts in vehicles, the facts are clear. In most crashes buckling up does matter... a lot!

## Why Safety Belts Work

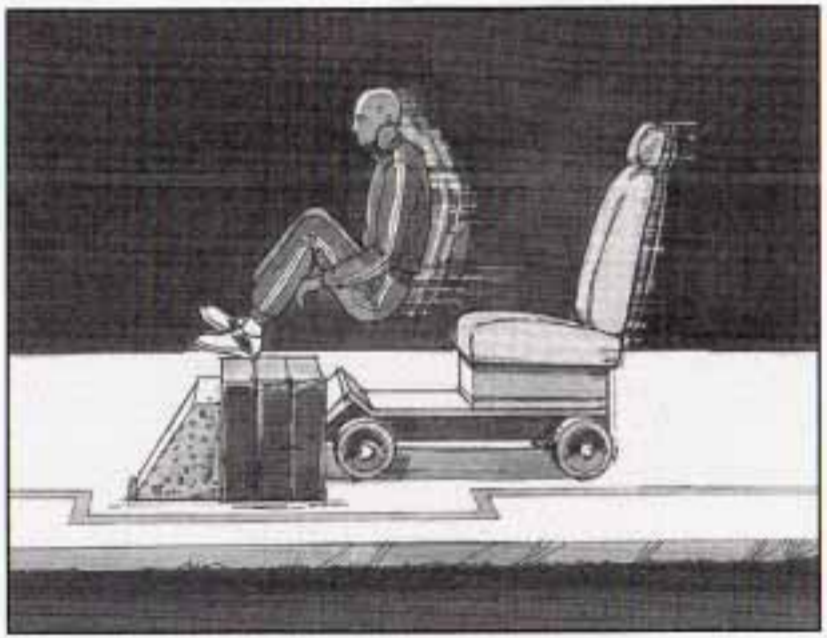
When you ride in or on anything, you go as fast as it goes.



Take the simplest vehicle. Suppose it's just a seat on wheels.



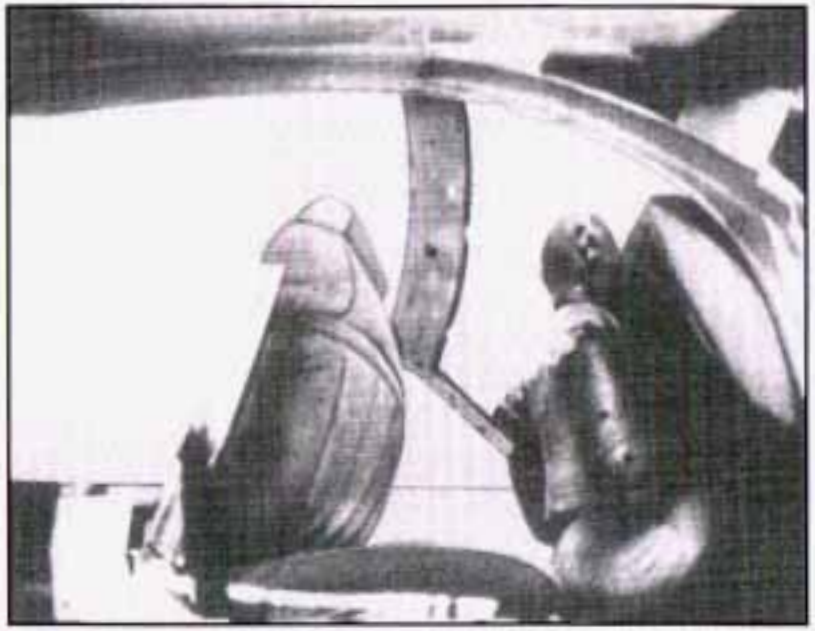
Put someone on it.



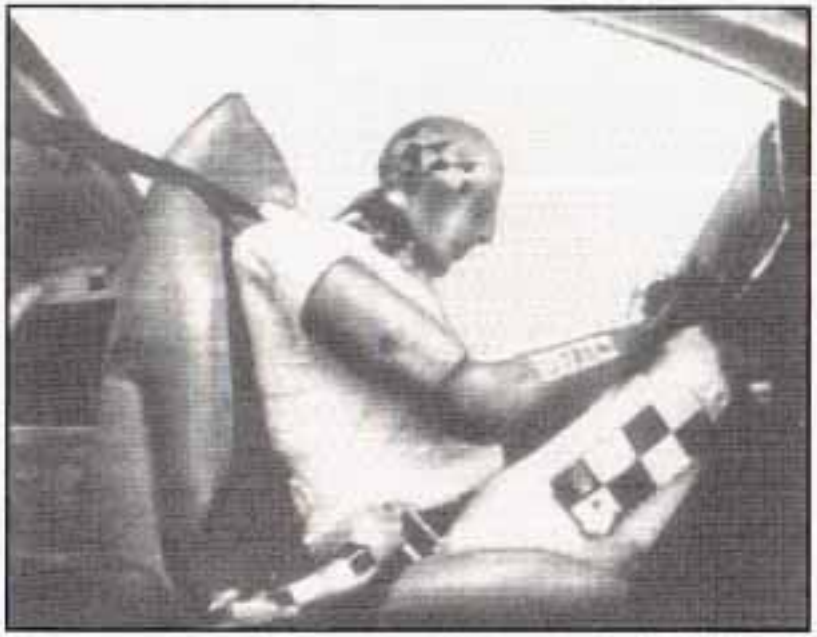
Get it up to speed. Then stop the vehicle. The rider doesn't stop.



The person keeps going until stopped by something. In a real vehicle, it could be the windshield...



or the instrument panel...



or the safety belts!

With safety belts, you slow down as the vehicle does. You get more time to stop. You stop over more distance, and your strongest bones take the forces. That's why safety belts make such good sense.

## Questions and Answers About Safety Belts

**Q: Won't I be trapped in the vehicle after an accident if I'm wearing a safety belt?**

**A:** You *could* be – whether you're wearing a safety belt or not. But you can unbuckle a safety belt, even if you're upside down. And your chance of being conscious during and after an accident, so you *can* unbuckle and get out, is *much* greater if you are belted.

**Q: If my vehicle has air bags, why should I have to wear safety belts?**

**A:** Air bags are in many vehicles today and will be in most of them in the future. But they are supplemental systems only; so they work *with* safety belts – not instead of them. Every air bag system ever offered for sale has required the use of safety belts. Even if you're in a vehicle that has air bags, you still have to buckle up to get the most protection. That's true not only in frontal collisions, but especially in side and other collisions.

**Q: If I'm a good driver, and I never drive far from home, why should I wear safety belts?**

**A:** You may be an excellent driver, but if you're in an accident – even one that isn't your fault – you and your passengers can be hurt. Being a good driver doesn't protect you from things beyond your control, such as bad drivers.

Most accidents occur within 25 miles (40 km) of home. And the greatest number of serious injuries and deaths occur at speeds of less than 40 mph (65 km/h).

Safety belts are for everyone.

## How to Wear Safety Belts Properly

This part is only for people of adult size.

Be aware that there are special things to know about safety belts and children. And there are different rules for smaller children and babies. If a child will be riding in your vehicle, see *Older Children on page 1-48* or *Infants and Young Children on page 1-50*. Follow those rules for everyone's protection.

First, you'll want to know which restraint systems your vehicle has.

We'll start with the driver position.

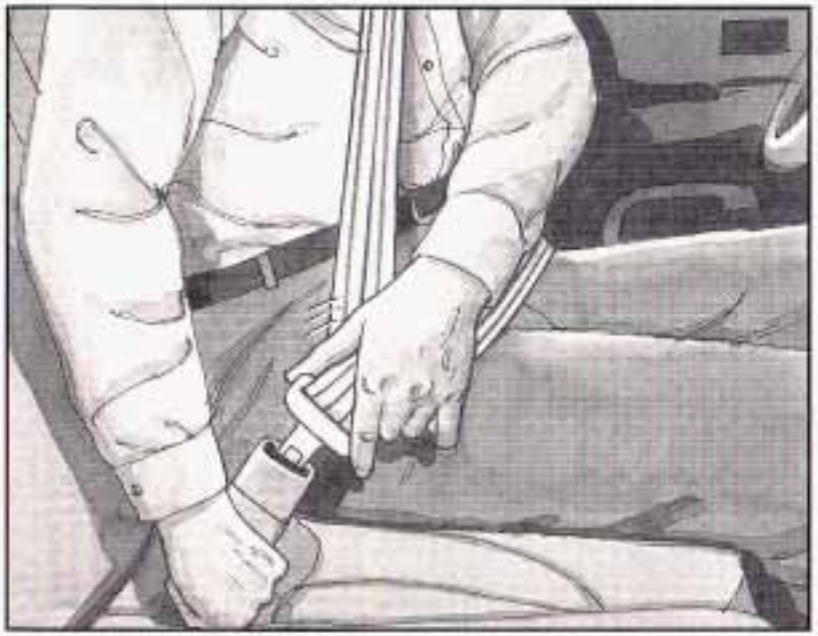
## Driver Position

This part describes the driver's restraint system.

## Lap-Shoulder Belt

The driver has a lap-shoulder belt. Here's how to wear it properly.

1. Close and lock the door.
2. Adjust the seat so you can sit up straight. To see how, see "Seats" in the Index.



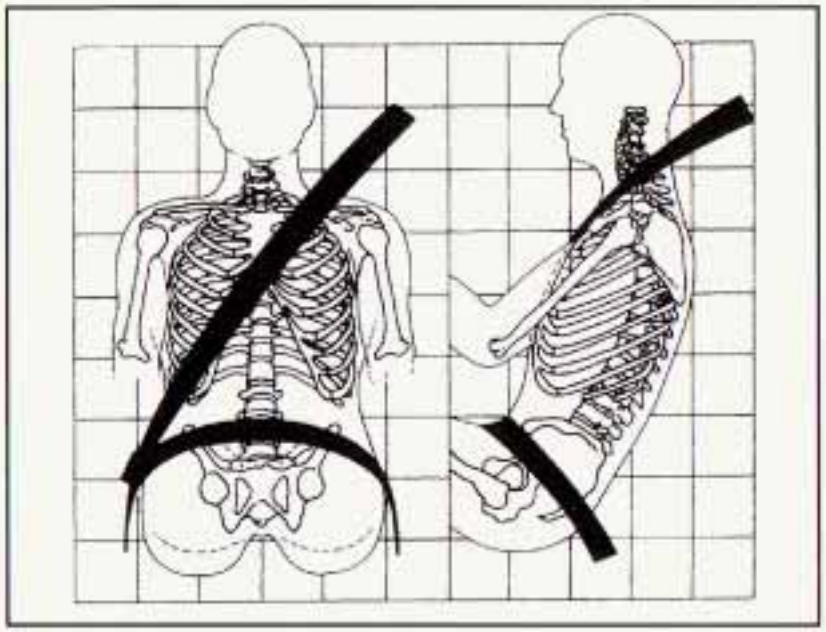
3. Pick up the latch plate and pull the belt across you. Don't let it get twisted.
4. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Pull up on the latch plate to make sure it is secure. If the belt isn't long enough, see *Safety Belt Extender on page 1-47*.

   Make sure the release button on the buckle is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if you ever had to.



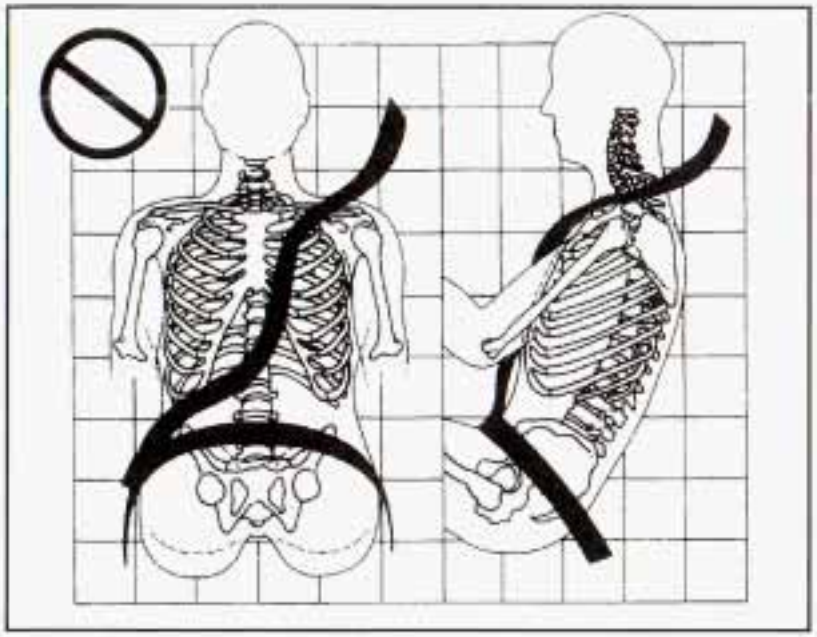
5. To make the lap part tight, pull down on the buckle end of the belt as you pull up on the shoulder belt.



The lap part of the belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs. In a crash, this applies force to the strong pelvic bones. And you'd be less likely to slide under the lap belt. If you slid under it, the belt would apply force at your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.

The safety belt locks if there's a sudden stop or a crash.

**Q:** What's wrong with this?

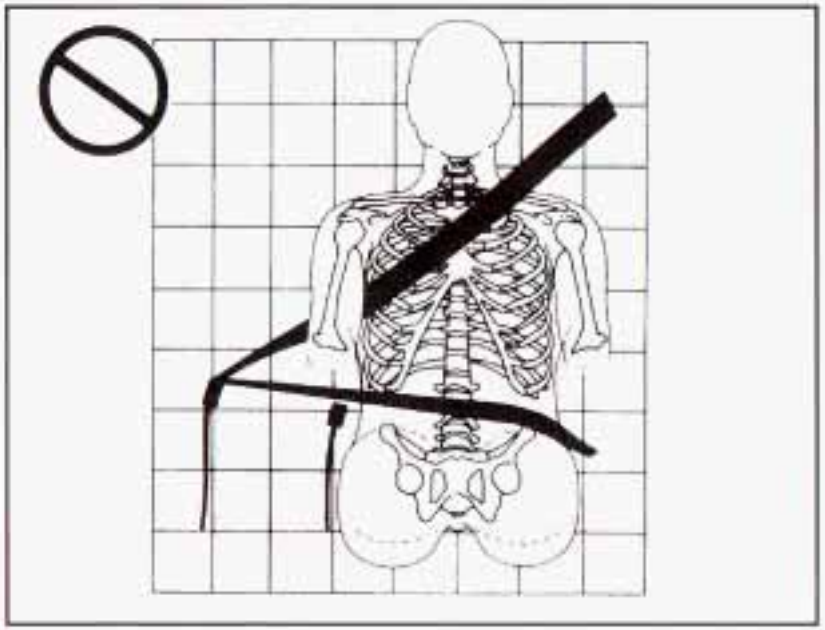


**A:** The shoulder belt is too loose. It won't give nearly as much protection this way.

## ⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously hurt if your shoulder belt is too loose. In a crash, you would move forward too much, which could increase injury. The shoulder belt should fit against your body.

**Q:** What's wrong with this?

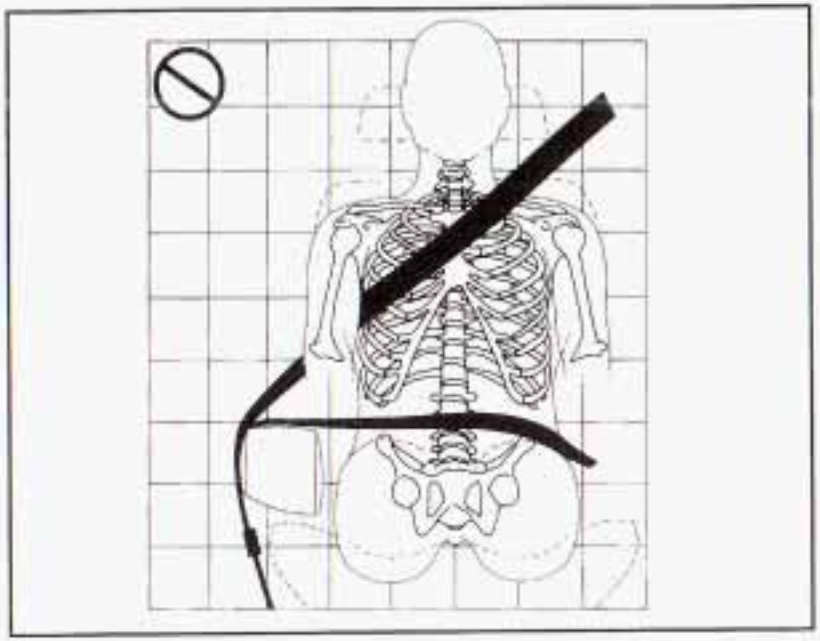


**A:** The belt is buckled in the wrong place.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

You can be seriously injured if your belt is buckled in the wrong place like this. In a crash, the belt would go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not at the pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries. Always buckle your belt into the buckle nearest you.

**Q:** What's wrong with this?

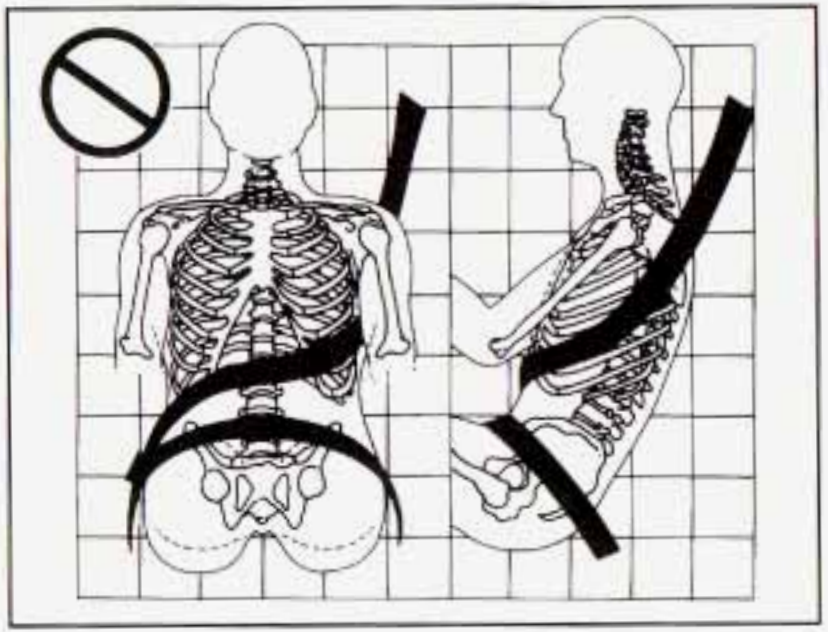


**A:** The belt is over an armrest.

## ⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously injured if your belt goes over an armrest like this. The belt would be much too high. In a crash, you can slide under the belt. The belt force would then be applied at the abdomen, not at the pelvic bones, and that could cause serious or fatal injuries. Be sure the belt goes under the armrests.

**Q:** What's wrong with this?

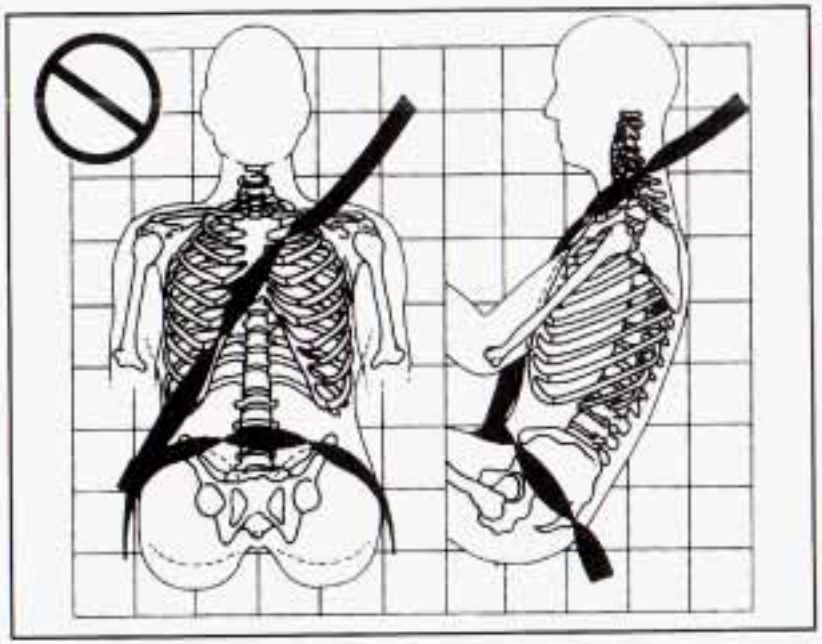


**A:** The shoulder belt is worn under the arm. It should be worn over the shoulder at all times.

## ⚠ CAUTION:

**You can be seriously injured if you wear the shoulder belt under your arm. In a crash, your body would move too far forward, which would increase the chance of head and neck injury. Also, the belt would apply too much force to the ribs, which aren't as strong as shoulder bones. You could also severely injure internal organs like your liver or spleen.**

**Q:** What's wrong with this?



**A:** The belt is twisted across the body.

## ⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously injured by a twisted belt. In a crash, you wouldn't have the full width of the belt to spread impact forces. If a belt is twisted, make it straight so it can work properly, or ask your dealer to fix it.

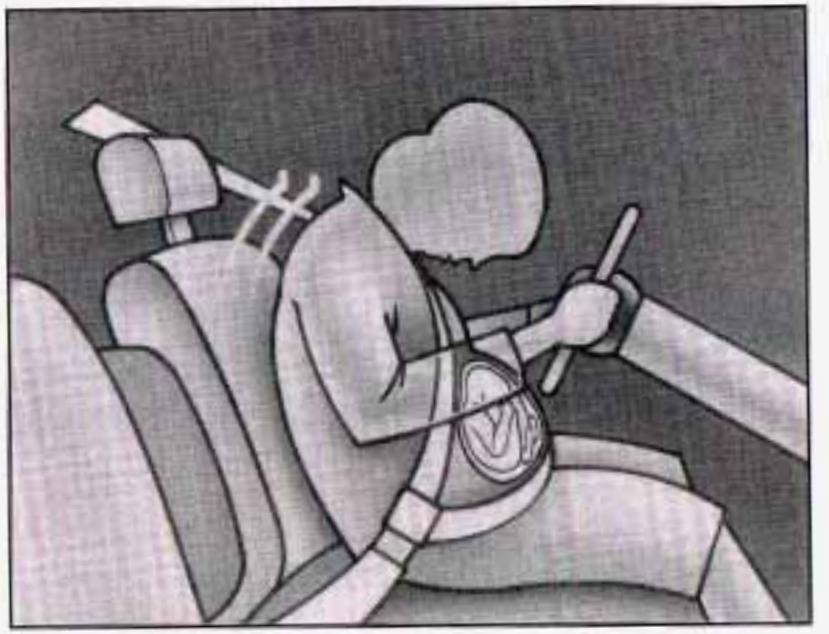


To unlatch the belt, just push the button on the buckle. The belt should go back out of the way.

Before you close the door, be sure the belt is out of the way. If you slam the door on it, you can damage both the belt and your vehicle.

## Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy

Safety belts work for everyone, including pregnant women. Like all occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they don't wear safety belts.



A pregnant woman should wear a lap-shoulder belt, and the lap portion should be worn as low as possible, below the rounding, throughout the pregnancy.

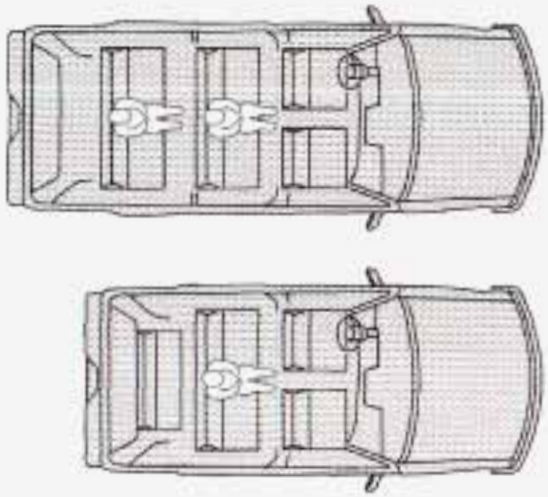
The best way to protect the fetus is to protect the mother. When a safety belt is worn properly, it's more likely that the fetus won't be hurt in a crash. For pregnant women, as for anyone, the key to making safety belts effective is wearing them properly.

## Right Front Passenger Position

To learn how to wear the right front passenger's safety belt properly, see *Driver Position on page 1-30.*

The right front passenger's safety belt works the same way as the driver's safety belt—except for one thing. If you ever pull the shoulder portion of the belt out all the way, you will engage the child restraint locking feature which may turn off the passenger's frontal air bag. If this happens unintentionally, just let the belt go back all the way and start again.

## Center Passenger Position



## Second Row – Lap-Shoulder Belt

When you sit in the center seat position in the second row you have a lap-shoulder belt which works the same way as the rear outside seat positions. To learn how to wear this belt, see "Lap-Shoulder Belt" under *Rear Seat Passengers on page 1-41.*

## Third Row – Lap Belt



When you sit in the center seating position in the third row, you have a lap safety belt, which has no retractor. To make the belt longer, tilt the latch plate and pull it along the belt.



To make the belt shorter, pull its free end as shown until the belt is snug. Buckle, position and release it the same way as the lap part of a lap-shoulder belt. If the belt isn't long enough, see *Safety Belt Extender on page 1-47*.

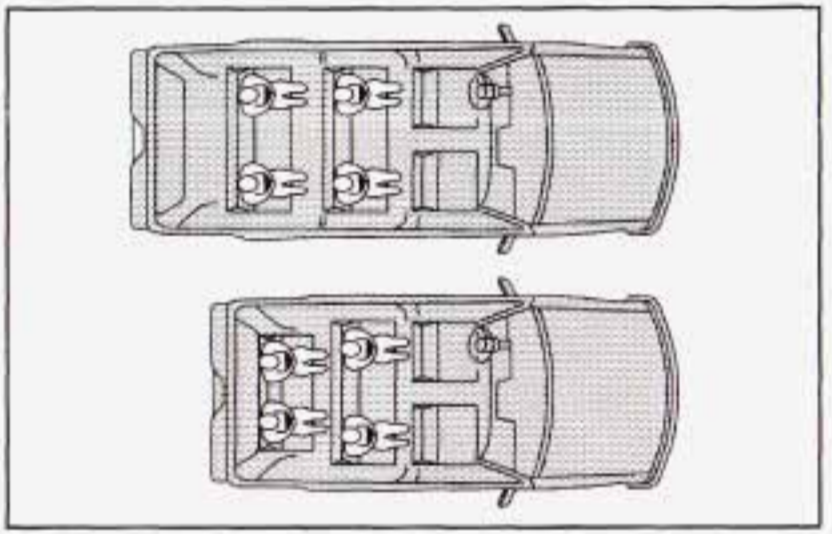
Make sure the release button on the buckle is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if you ever had to.

## Rear Seat Passengers

It's very important for rear seat passengers to buckle up! Accident statistics show that unbelted people in the rear seat are hurt more often in crashes than those who are wearing safety belts.

Rear passengers who aren't safety belted can be thrown out of the vehicle in a crash. And they can strike others in the vehicle who are wearing safety belts.

## Rear Seat Outside Passenger Positions



The positions next to the windows have lap-shoulder belts.

## Lap-Shoulder Belt

Here's how to wear a lap-shoulder belt properly.



1. Pick up the latch plate and pull the belt across you. Don't let it get twisted.
2. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Pull up on the latch plate to make sure it is secure.

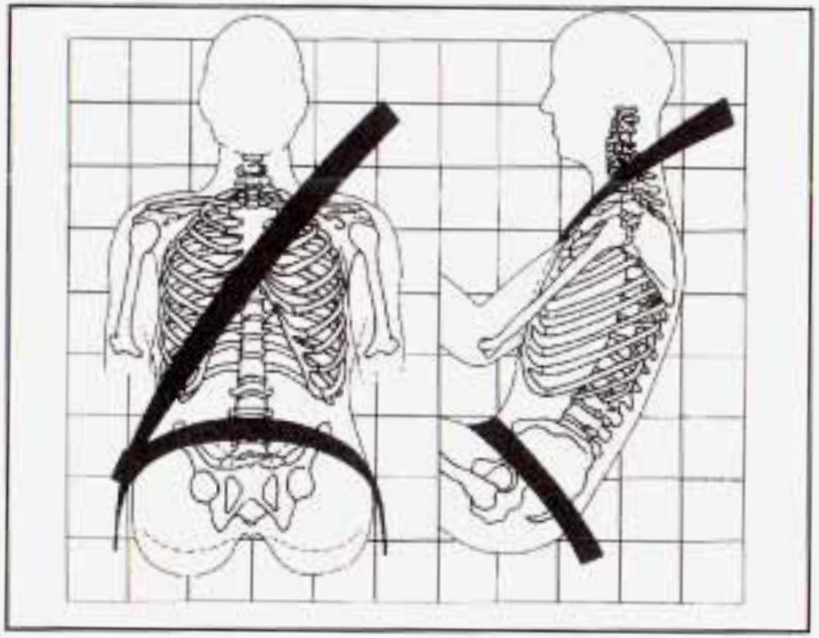
   When the shoulder belt is pulled out all the way, it will lock. If it does, let it go back all the way and start again.

   If the belt is not long enough, see *Safety Belt Extender on page 1-47.*

   Make sure the release button on the buckle is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if you ever had to.



3. To make the lap part tight, pull down on the buckle end of the belt as you pull up on the shoulder part.



The lap part of the belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs. In a crash, this applies force to the strong pelvic bones. And you'd be less likely to slide under the lap belt. If you slid under it, the belt would apply force at your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.

The safety belt locks if there's a sudden stop or a crash.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**You can be seriously hurt if your shoulder belt is too loose. In a crash, you would move forward too much, which could increase injury. The shoulder belt should fit against your body.**



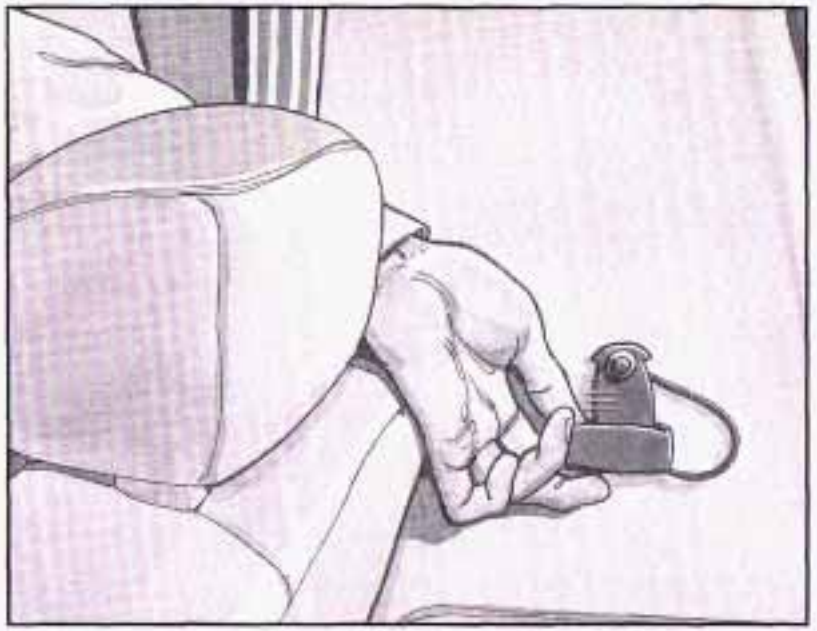
To unlatch the belt, just push the button on the buckle.

## Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides for Children and Small Adults

Your vehicle may have this feature already. If it doesn't you can get it from any GM dealer.

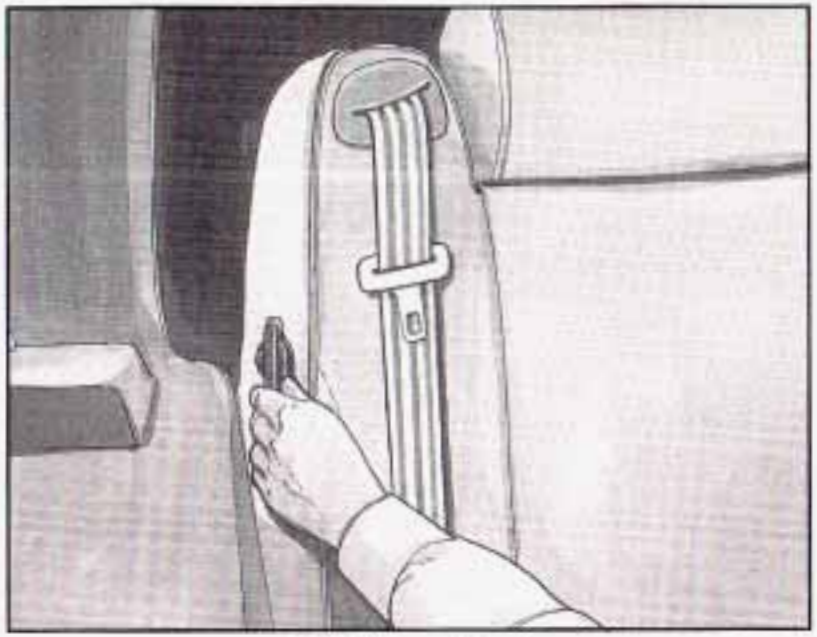
Rear shoulder belt comfort guides will provide added safety belt comfort for older children who have outgrown booster seats and for small adults. When installed on a shoulder belt, the comfort guide better positions the belt away from the neck and head.

There is one guide available for each outside passeger position in the rear seats. Here's how to install a comfort guide and use the safety belt:



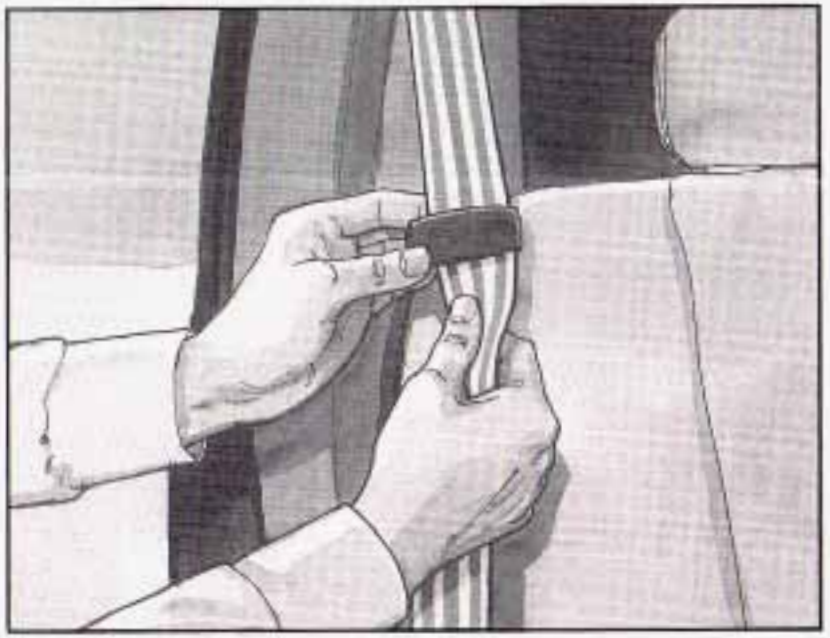
**Second Row Seat**

1. For the second row, remove the guide from its storage clip on the trim panel near the side of the seatback.



**Third Row Seat**

For the third row, remove the guide from its storage clip on the side of the seatback.



2. Place the guide over the belt and insert the two edges of the belt into the slots of the guide.
3. Be sure that the belt is not twisted and it lies flat. The guide must be on top of the belt.



**Second Row Seat**



**Third Row Seat**

4. Buckle, position and release the safety belt as described in *Rear Seat Passengers on page 1-41.* Make sure that the shoulder belt crosses the shoulder.

To remove and store the comfort guides, squeeze the belt edges together so that you can take them out of the guides.

## Safety Belt Extender

If the vehicle's safety belt will fasten around you, you should use it.

But if a safety belt isn't long enough to fasten, your dealer will order you an extender. It's free. When you go in to order it, take the heaviest coat you will wear, so the extender will be long enough for you. The extender will be just for you, and just for the seat in your vehicle that you choose. Don't let someone else use it, and use it only for the seat it is made to fit. To wear it, just attach it to the regular safety belt.

# Child Restraints

## Older Children



Older children who have outgrown booster seats should wear the vehicle's safety belts.

If you have the choice, a child should sit in a seat that has a lap-shoulder belt to get the additional restraint a shoulder belt can provide.

**Q: What is the proper way to wear safety belts?**

**A:** If possible, an older child should wear a lap-shoulder belt and get the additional restraint a shoulder belt can provide. The shoulder belt should not cross the face or neck. The lap belt should fit snugly below the hips, just touching the top of the thighs. It should never be worn over the abdomen, which could cause severe or even fatal internal injuries in a crash.

Accident statistics show that children are safer if they are restrained in the rear seat.

In a crash, children who are not buckled up can strike other people who are buckled up, or can be thrown out of the vehicle. Older children need to use safety belts properly.



**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Never do this.**

**Here two children are wearing the same belt. The belt can't properly spread the impact**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**forces. In a crash, the two children can be crushed together and seriously injured. A belt must be used by only one person at a time.**

**Q: What if a child is wearing a lap-shoulder belt, but the child is so small that the shoulder belt is very close to the child's face or neck?**

**A:** If the child is sitting in a rear seat outside position, move the child toward the center of the vehicle. See *Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides for Children and Small Adults on page 1-44*. If the child is sitting in the center position, move the child toward the safety belt buckle. In either case, be sure that the shoulder belt still is on the child's shoulder, so that in a crash the child's upper body would have the restraint that belts provide.

If the child is so small that the shoulder belt is still very close to the child's face or neck, you might want to place the child in a seat that has a lap belt, if your vehicle has one.



**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Never do this.**

**Here a child is sitting in a seat that has a lap-shoulder belt, but the shoulder part is**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**behind the child. If the child wears the belt in this way, in a crash the child might slide under the belt. The belt's force would then be applied right on the child's abdomen. That could cause serious or fatal injuries.**

Wherever the child sits, the lap portion of the belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the child's thighs. This applies belt force to the child's pelvic bones in a crash.

## Infants and Young Children

Everyone in a vehicle needs protection! This includes infants and all other children. Neither the distance traveled nor the age and size of the traveler changes the need, for everyone, to use safety restraints. In fact, the law in every state in the United States and in every Canadian province says children up to some age must be restrained while in a vehicle.

Every time infants and young children ride in vehicles, they should have the protection provided by appropriate restraints. Young children should not use the vehicle's adult safety belts alone, unless there is no other choice. Instead, they need to use a child restraint.



## ⚠ CAUTION:

People should never hold a baby in their arms while riding in a vehicle. A baby doesn't weigh much -- until a crash. During a crash a baby will become so heavy it is not possible to hold

CAUTION: (Continued)

## CAUTION: (Continued)

it. For example, in a crash at only 25 mph (40 km/h), a 12-lb. (5.5 kg) baby will suddenly become a 240-lb. (110 kg) force on a person's arms. A baby should be secured in an appropriate restraint.



## ⚠ CAUTION:

**Children who are up against, or very close to, any air bag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Air bags plus lap-shoulder belts offer outstanding protection for adults and older children, but not for young children and infants. Neither the vehicle's safety belt system nor its air bag system is designed for them. Young children and infants need the protection that a child restraint system can provide.**

**Q: What are the different types of add-on child restraints?**

A: Add-on child restraints, which are purchased by the vehicle's owner, are available in four basic types. Selection of a particular restraint should take into consideration not only the child's weight, height, and age but also whether or not the restraint will be compatible with the motor vehicle in which it will be used.

For most basic types of child restraints, there are many different models available. When purchasing a child restraint, be sure it is designed to be used in a motor vehicle. If it is, the restraint will have a label saying that it meets federal motor vehicle safety standards.

The restraint manufacturer's instructions that come with the restraint state the weight and height limitations for a particular child restraint. In addition, there are many kinds of restraints available for children with special needs.

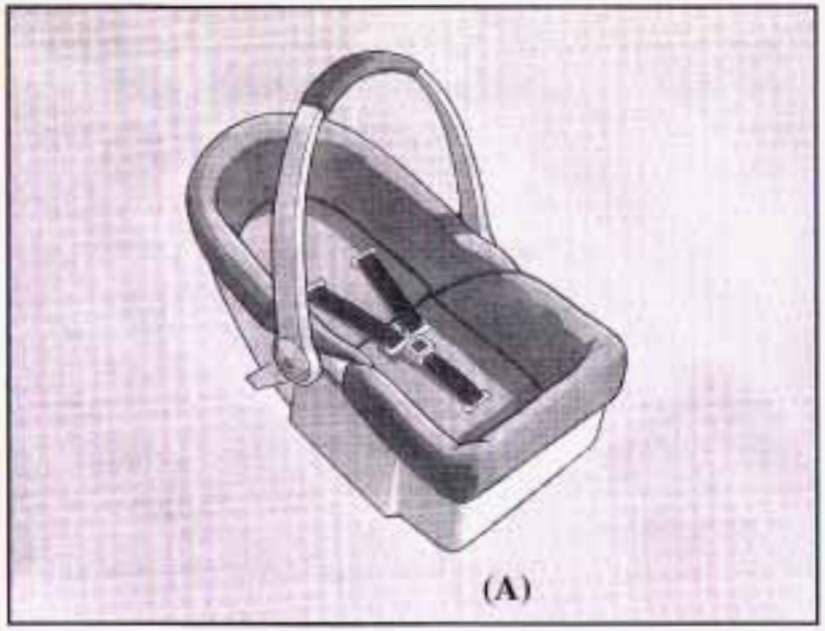
## ⚠ CAUTION:

Newborn infants need complete support, including support for the head and neck. This is necessary because a newborn infant's neck is weak and its head weighs so much compared with the rest of its body. In a crash, an infant in a rear-facing seat settles into the restraint, so the crash forces can be distributed across the strongest part of an infant's body, the back and shoulders. Infants always should be secured in appropriate infant restraints.

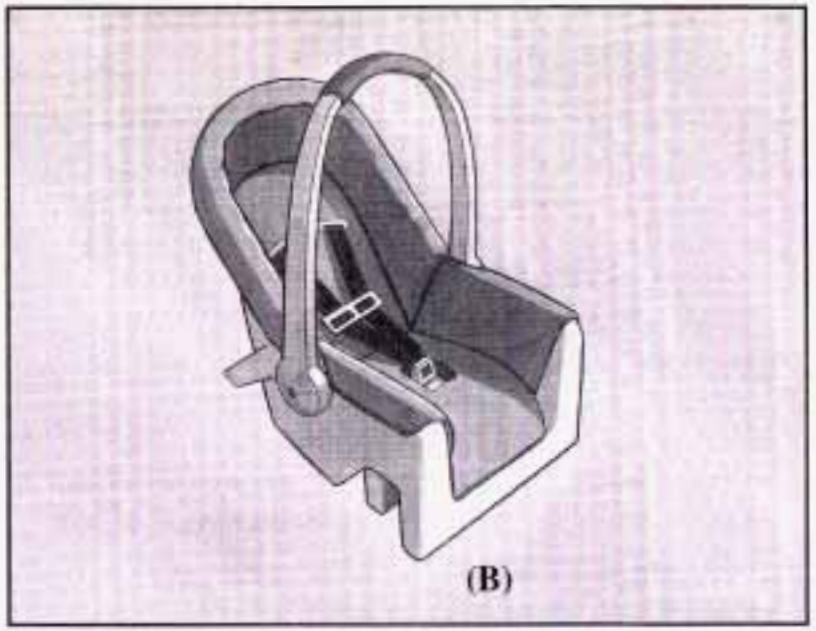
## ⚠ CAUTION:

The body structure of a young child is quite unlike that of an adult or older child, for whom the safety belts are designed. A young child's hip bones are still so small that the vehicle's regular safety belt may not remain low on the hip bones, as it should. Instead, it may settle up around the child's abdomen. In a crash, the belt would apply force on a body area that's unprotected by any bony structure. This alone could cause serious or fatal injuries. Young children always should be secured in appropriate child restraints.

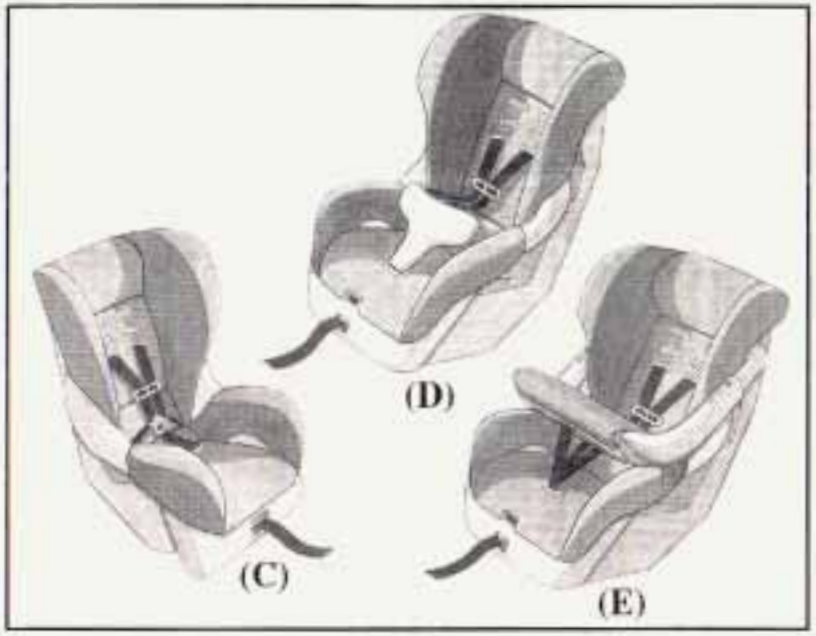
## Child Restraint Systems



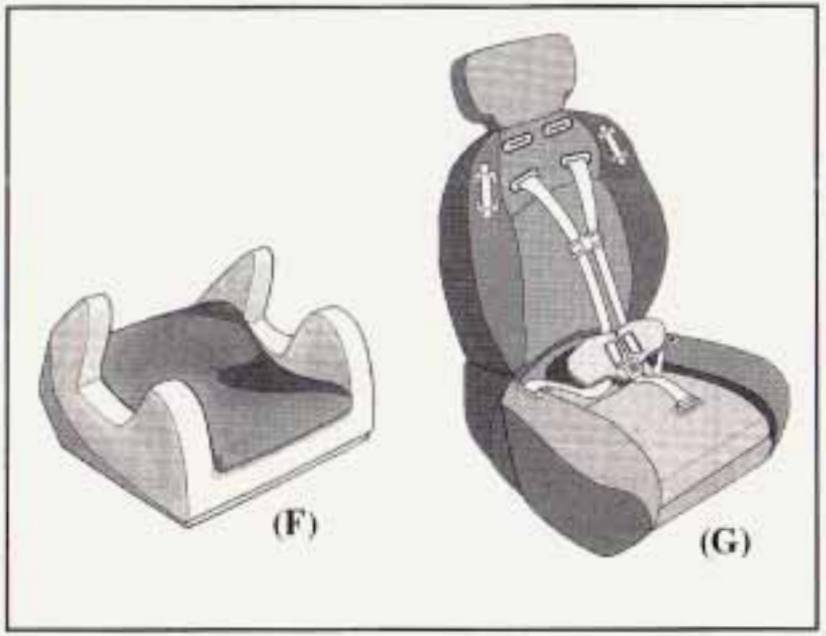

An infant car bed (A), a special bed made for use in a motor vehicle, is an infant restraint system designed to restrain or position a child on a continuous flat surface. Make sure that the infant's head rests toward the center of the vehicle.




A rear-facing infant seat (B) provides restraint with the seating surface against the back of the infant. The harness system holds the infant in place and, in a crash, acts to keep the infant positioned in the restraint.




A forward-facing child seat (C-E) provides restraint for the child's body with the harness and also sometimes with surfaces such as T-shaped or shelf-like shields.




A booster seat (F-G) is a child restraint designed to improve the fit of the vehicle's safety belt system. Some booster seats have a shoulder belt positioner, and some high-back booster seats have a five-point harness. A booster seat can also help a child to see out the window.

**Q: How do child restraints work?**

**A:** A child restraint system is any device designed for use in a motor vehicle to restrain, seat, or position children. A built-in child restraint system is a permanent part of the motor vehicle. An add-on child restraint system is a portable one, which is purchased by the vehicle's owner.

For many years, add-on child restraints have used the adult belt system in the vehicle. To help reduce the chance of injury, the child also has to be secured within the restraint. The vehicle's belt system secures the add-on child restraint in the vehicle, and the add-on child restraint's harness system holds the child in place within the restraint.

One system, the three-point harness, has straps that come down over each of the infant's shoulders and buckle together at the crotch. The five-point harness system has two shoulder straps, two hip straps and a crotch strap. A shield may take the place of hip straps. A T-shaped shield has shoulder straps that are attached to a flat pad which rests low against the child's body. A shelf- or armrest-type shield has straps that are attached to a wide, shelf-like shield that swings up or to the side.

When choosing a child restraint, be sure the child restraint is designed to be used in a vehicle. If it is, it will have a label saying that it meets federal motor vehicle safety standards.

Then follow the instructions for the restraint. You may find these instructions on the restraint itself or in a booklet, or both. These restraints use the belt system in your vehicle, but the child also has to be secured within the restraint to help reduce the chance of personal injury. When securing an add-on child restraint, refer to the instructions that come with the restraint which may be on the restraint itself or in a booklet, or both, and to this manual. The child restraint instructions are important, so if they are not available, obtain a replacement copy from the manufacturer.

## Where to Put the Restraint

Accident statistics show that children are safer if they are restrained in the rear rather than the front seat. General Motors, therefore, recommends that child restraints be secured in a rear seat including an infant riding in a rear-facing infant seat, a child riding in a forward-facing child seat and an older child riding in a booster seat. Never put a child in a rear-facing child restraint in the right front passenger seat unless your vehicle has the passenger sensing system and the passenger air bag status indicator shows off. Never put a rear facing child restraint in the right front passenger seat unless the air bag is off. Here's why:

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger's air bag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating air bag. Be sure the air bag is off before using a rear-facing child restraint in the right front seat position.**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**Even though the passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the passenger's frontal air bag if the system detects a rear-facing child restraint, no system is fail-safe, and no one can guarantee that an air bag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off. General Motors therefore recommends that rear-facing child restraints be secured in the rear seat whenever possible, even if the air bag is off.**

**If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.**

If your vehicle has the passenger sensing system and you need to secure a rear-facing child restraint in the right front passenger's seat, the passengers frontal air bag must be off. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-81* and *Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position on page 1-68* for more on this including important safety information.

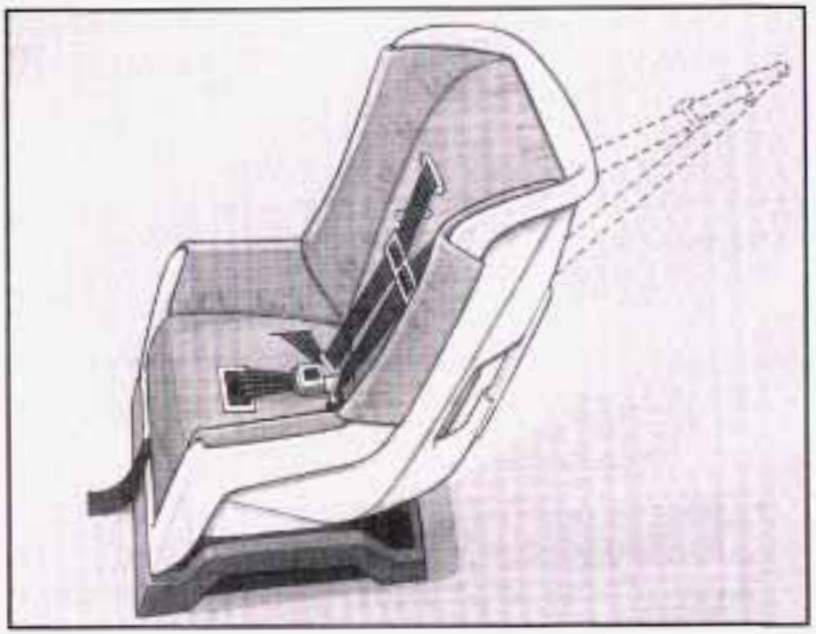
Wherever you install it, be sure to secure the child restraint properly.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in your vehicle – even when no child is in it.

## Top Strap

Some child restraints have a top strap, or "top tether." It can help restrain the child restraint during a collision. For it to work, a top strap must be properly anchored to the vehicle. Some top strap-equipped child restraints are designed for use with or without the top strap being anchored. Others require the top strap always to be anchored. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for your child restraint. If yours requires that the top strap be anchored, don't use the restraint unless it is anchored properly.

If the child restraint does not have a top strap, one can be obtained, in kit form, for many child restraints. Ask the child restraint manufacturer whether or not a kit is available.



In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top strap, and that the strap be anchored. In the United States, some child restraints also have a top strap. If your child restraint has a top strap, it should be anchored.

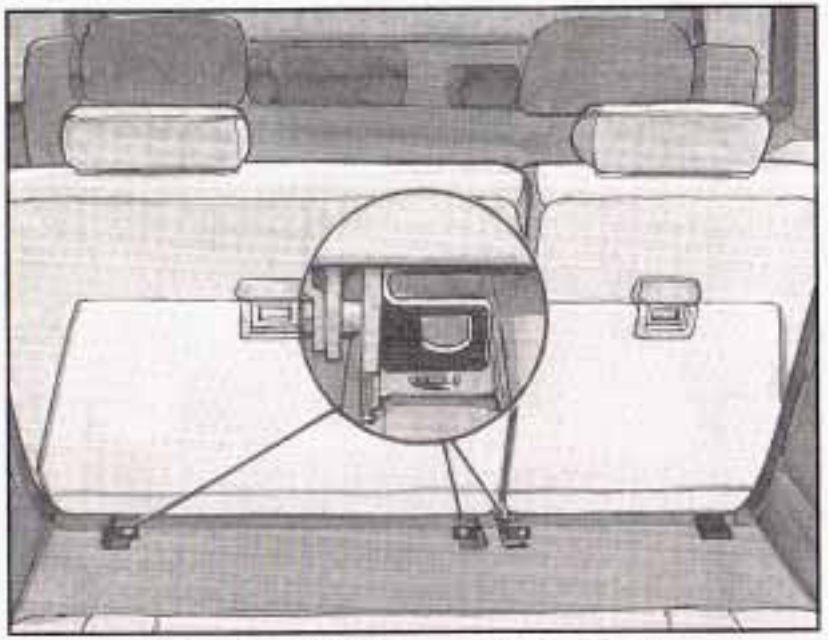
Anchor the top strap to one of the following anchor points. Be sure to use an anchor point located on the same side of the vehicle as the seating position where the child restraint will be placed.

Raise the head restraint and route the top strap under it. See *Head Restraints on page 1-6*

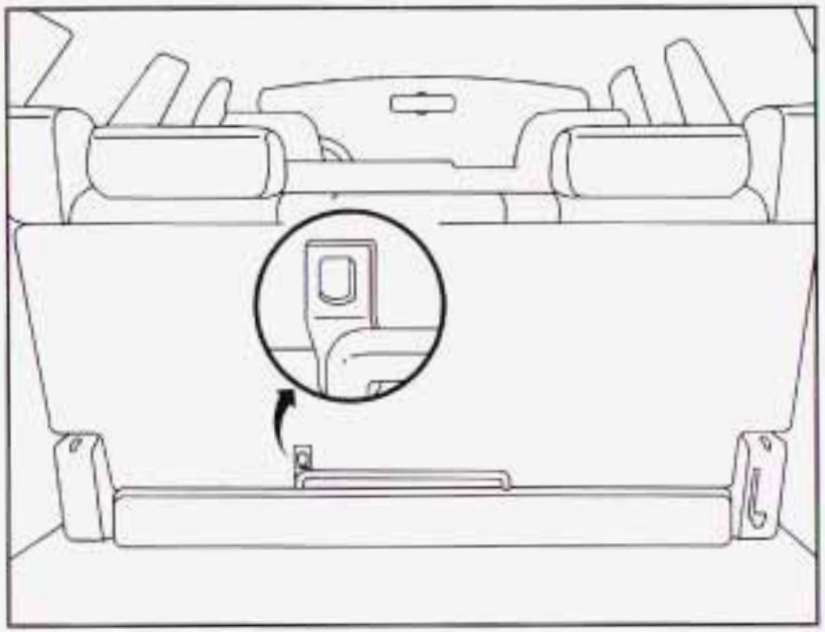
Once you have the top strap anchored, you'll be ready to secure the child restraint itself. Tighten the top strap when and as the child restraint manufacturer's instructions say.

## Top Strap Anchor Location

**Escalade ESV:** A child restraint with a top strap should only be used in the second or third row. Don't use a child restraint with a top strap in the front seat because there's no place to anchor the top strap.



**Escalade ESV Second Row Seat (Bucket Seats Similar)**

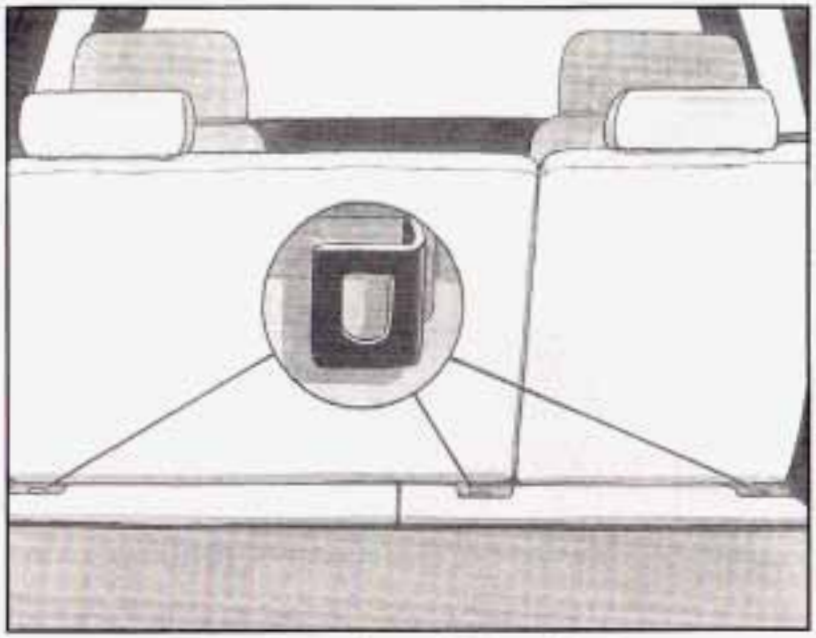


**Escalade ESV Third Row Bench Seat**

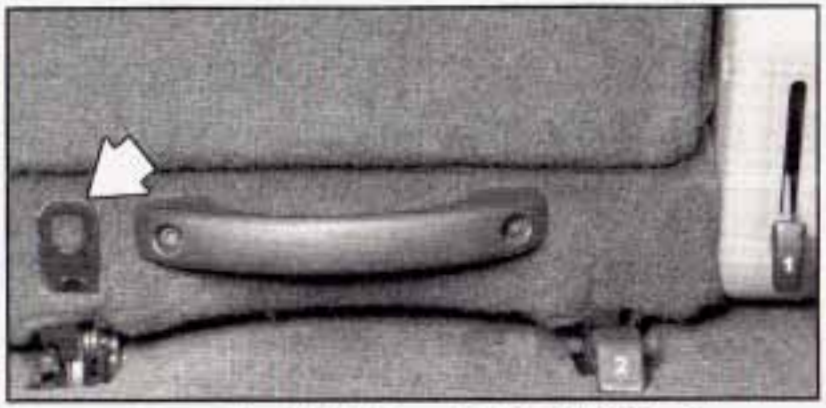
An anchor loop bracket for a top strap is located at the bottom rear of the seat cushion for each seating position in the second row, for the center seating position in the third row on bench seats.

**Escalade:** A child restraint with a top strap should only be used in the second row or third row. Don't use a child restraint with a top strap in the right front passenger's position, because there's no place to anchor the top strap.

An anchor loop bracket for a top strap is located at the bottom rear of the seat cushion for each seating position in the second row and in the outboard passenger position in the third row for 50/50 split seats.



Escalade Second Row Seat



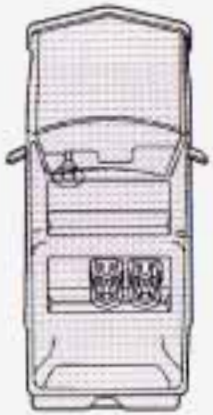
Escalade Third Row 50/50 Split Seat

## Lower Anchorages and Top Tethers for Children (LATCH System)

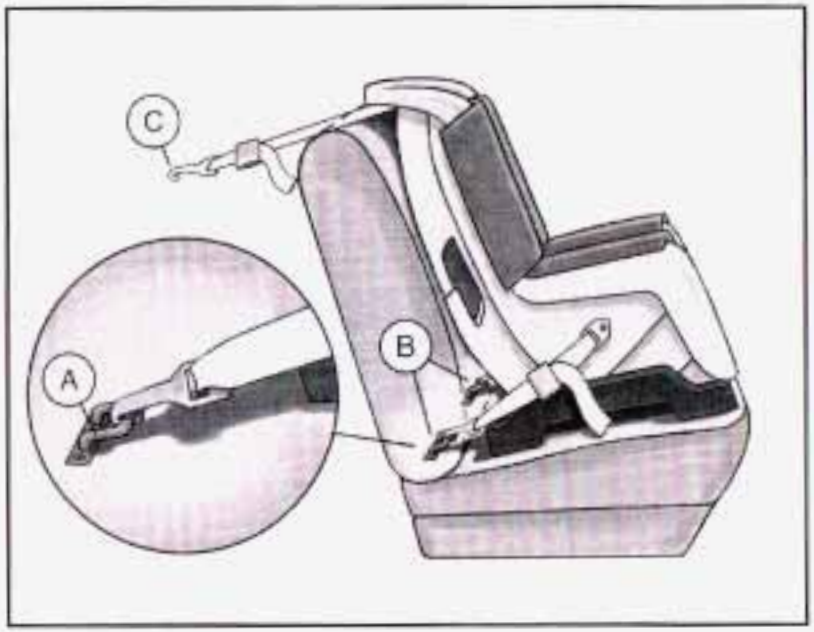
Your vehicle may have the LATCH system. If it does, you'll find anchors (A) in the second row seats, where the seatback meets the seat cushion.

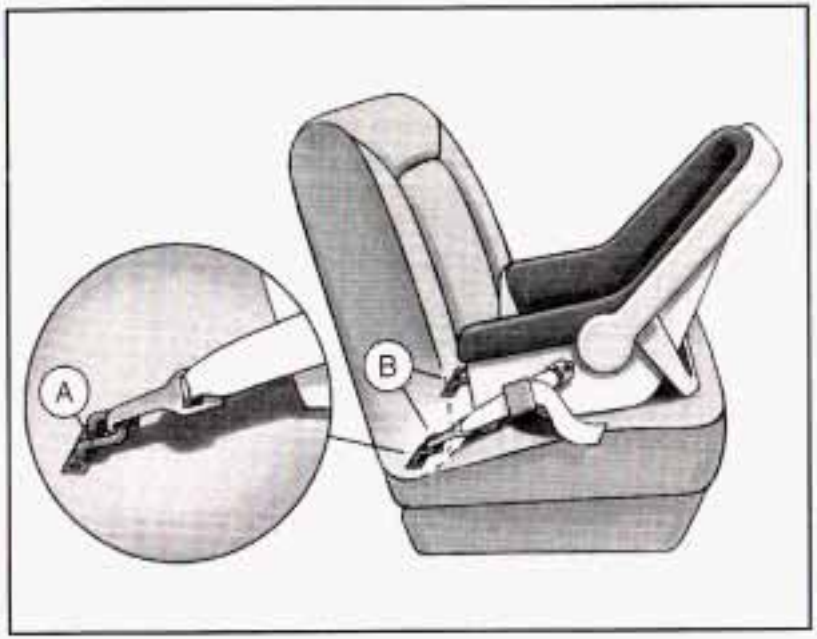
To assist you in locating the lower anchors for this child restraint system, each seating position with the LATCH system will have a visible metal anchorage point in the seat where the seatback meets the seat cushion.





In order to use the system, you need either a forward-facing child restraint that has attaching points (B) at its base and a top tether anchor (C), or a rear-facing child restraint that has attaching points (B), as shown here.






With this system, use the LATCH system instead of the vehicle's safety belts to secure a child restraint.

## ⚠ CAUTION:

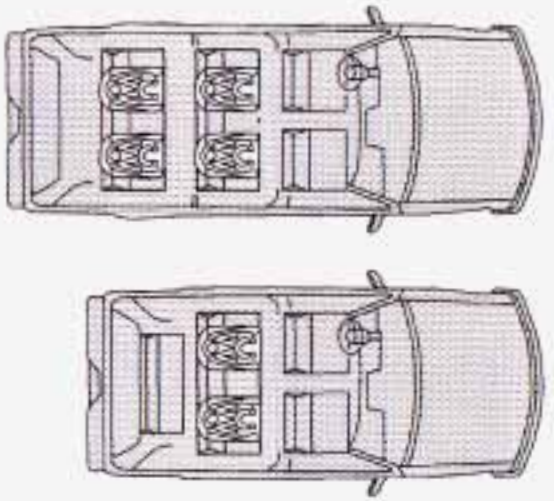
**If a LATCH-type child restraint isn't attached to its anchorage points, the restraint won't be able to protect the child correctly. In a crash, the child could be seriously injured or killed. Make sure that a LATCH-type child restraint is properly installed using the anchorage points, or use the vehicle's safety belts to secure the restraint. See "Securing a Child Restraint Designed for the LATCH System", "Securing a Child Restraint in a Rear Outside Seat Position", "Securing a Child Restraint in a Center Rear Seat Position", or "Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position" in the Index for information on how to secure a child restraint in your vehicle.**

## Securing a Child Restraint Designed for the LATCH System

1. Find the anchors for the seating position you want to use, where the bottom of the seatback meets the back of the seat cushion.
2. Put the child restraint on the seat.
3. Attach the anchor points on the child restraint to the anchors in the vehicle. The child restraint instructions will show you how.
4. If the child restraint is forward-facing, attach the top strap to the top strap anchor. See *Top Strap on page 1-58*. Tighten the top strap according to the child restraint instructions.
5. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

To remove the child restraint, simply unhook the top strap from the top tether anchor and then disconnect the anchor points.

## Securing a Child Restraint in a Rear Outside Seat Position



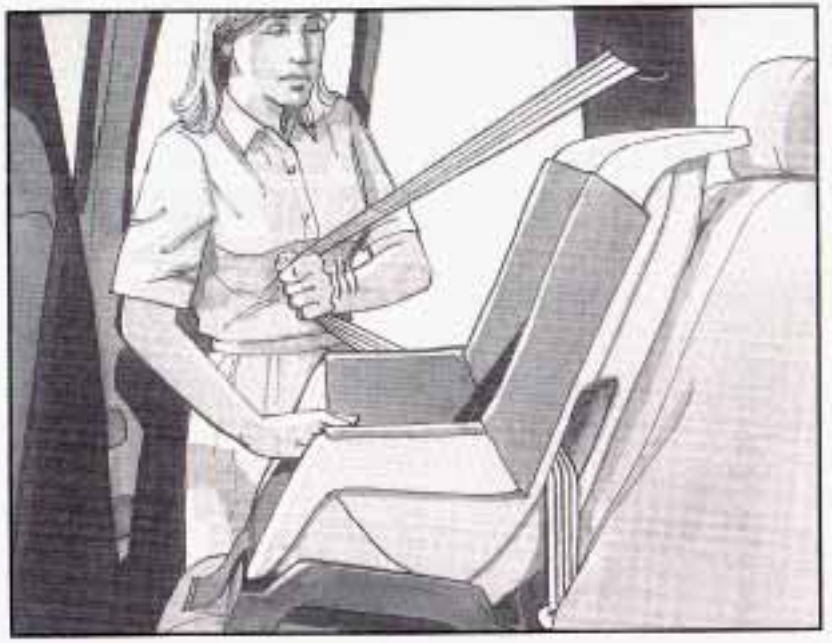
If your child restraint is equipped with the LATCH system, see *Lower Anchorages and Top Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 1-62*.

You'll be using the lap-shoulder belt. See *Top Strap on page 1-58* if the child restraint has one. Be sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint. Secure the child in the child restraint when and as the instructions say.

1. Put the restraint on the seat.
2. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.



3. Buckle the belt. Make sure the release button is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if you ever had to.



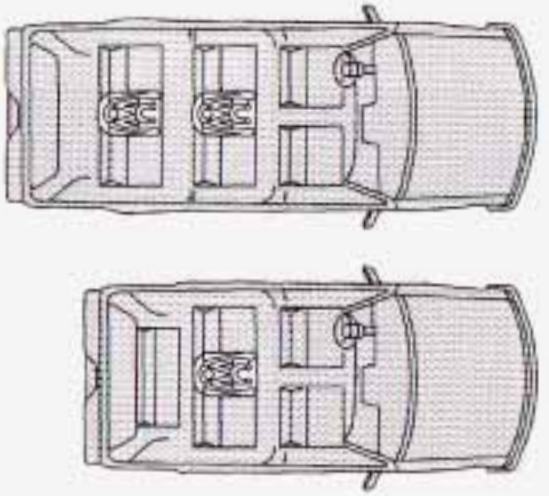
4. Pull the rest of the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock.



5. To tighten the belt, feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor while you push down on the child restraint. If you're using a forward-facing child restraint, you may find it helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.
6. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

To remove the child restraint, just unbuckle the vehicle's safety belt and let it go back all the way. The safety belt will move freely again and be ready to work for an adult or larger child passenger.

## Securing a Child Restraint in a Center Rear Seat Position



If your child restraint is equipped with the LATCH system, see *Lower Anchorages and Top Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 1-62.*

## Second Row

The center seat position in the second row has a lap-shoulder belt which works the same way as the safety belt in the rear outside seat positions. For instructions on how to secure a child restraint using a lap-shoulder belt see *Securing a Child Restraint in a Rear Outside Seat Position on page 1-64.*

## Third Row

The center seat position in the third row has a lap belt. Be sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint. Secure the child in the child restraint when and as the instructions say.

See *Top Strap on page 1-58* if the child restraint has one.



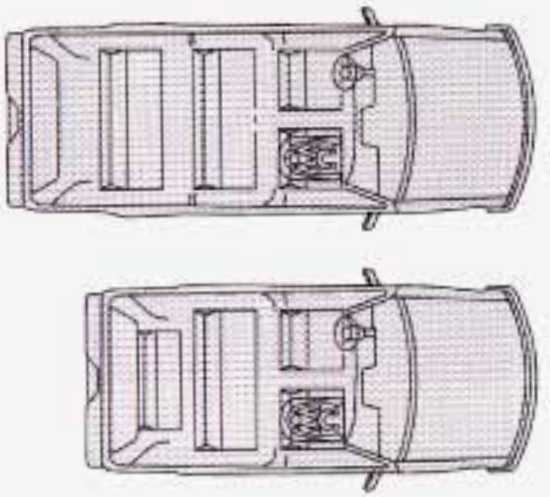
1. Make the belt as long as possible by tilting the latch plate and pulling it along the belt.
2. Put the restraint on the seat.
3. Run the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.



4. Buckle the belt. Make sure the release button is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if you ever had to.
5. To tighten the belt, pull its free end while you push down on the child restraint. If you're using a forward-facing child restraint, you may find it helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.
6. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

To remove the child restraint, just unbuckle the vehicle's safety belt. It will be ready to work for an adult or larger child passenger.

## Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position



Your vehicle has a right front passenger air bag. A rear seat is a safer place to secure a forward-facing child restraint. Unless your vehicle has the passenger sensing system, *never* put a rear-facing child restraint in this seat. Here's why:

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger's air bag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating air bag. Always secure a rear-facing child restraint in a rear seat unless the air bag is off.**

If your vehicle has the passenger sensing system and you need to secure a rear-facing child restraint in the right front passenger's seat, the passenger's air bag must be off. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-81* and *Passenger Air Bag Status Indicator on page 3-34* for more information on this including important safety information.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger's air bag inflates. This is because the back of the rear facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating air bag. Be sure the air bag is off before using a rear-facing child restraint in the right front seat position.**

**Even though the passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the passenger's frontal air bag if the system detects a rear-facing child restraint, no system is fail-safe, and no one can guarantee that an air bag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off. General Motors therefore recommends that rear-facing child restraints be secured in the rear seat whenever possible, even if the air bag is off.**

You'll be using the lap-shoulder belt. See *Top Strap on page 1-58* if the child restraint has one. Be sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint. Secure the child in the child restraint when and as the instructions say.

1. Because your vehicle has a right front passenger air bag, always move the seat as far back as it will go before securing a child restraint, if you need to secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat position. See *Power Seats on page 1-3.*

   If your vehicle has the passenger sensing system and you are using a rear-facing child restraint in this seat, make sure the frontal air bag is off. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-81.*

   When the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger's frontal air bag, the off indicator on the inside rearview mirror will be lit and stay lit when you turn the ignition to RUN or START.

2. Put the restraint on the seat.

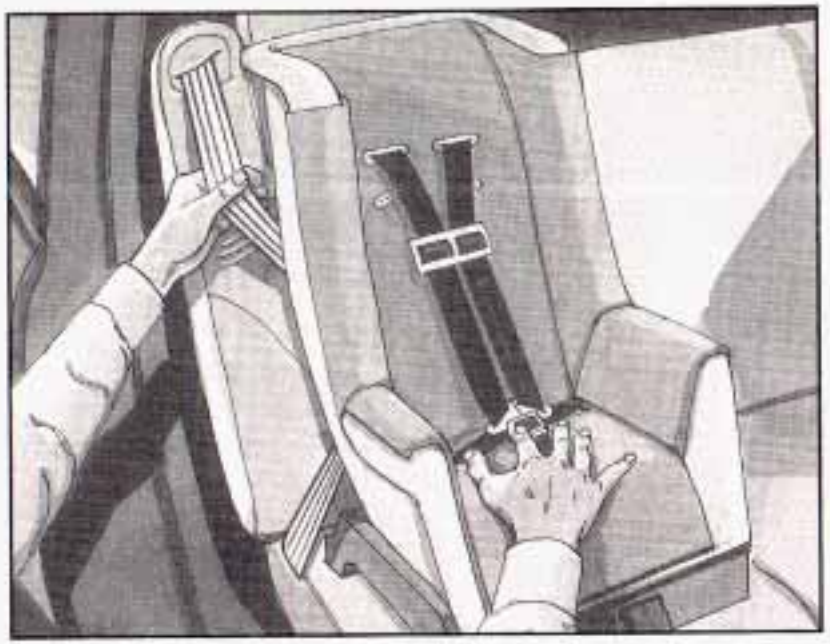
3. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.



4. Buckle the belt. Make sure the release button is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if you ever had to.



5. Pull the rest of the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock.



6. To tighten the belt, feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor while you push down on the child restraint. If you are using a forward-facing child restraint, you may find it helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt. You should not be able to pull more of the belt from the retractor once the lock has been set.

7. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.
8. If your vehicle has the passenger sensing system and you're using a rear-facing child restraint in this seat, check to be sure the right front passenger's frontal air bag is off before you begin to drive. If the air bag has been turned off the off indicator will light and stay lit when the key is turned to RUN or START.

   If the on indicator is lit, the passenger's frontal air bag has not been turned off. If this ever happens, turn the vehicle off, unbuckle the safety belt and perform the steps to install the rear-facing restraint again. After restarting the vehicle, if the air bag still doesn't turn off, install the infant restraint in a rear seat position of the vehicle and have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

To remove the child restraint, just unbuckle the vehicle's safety belt and let it go back all the way. The safety belt will move freely again and be ready to work for an adult or larger child passenger.

# Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)

This part explains the frontal and side impact Supplemental Restraint Systems (SRS) or air bag systems.

Your vehicle has four air bags – a frontal air bag for the driver, another frontal air bag for the right front passenger, a side impact air bag for the driver, and another side impact air bag for the right front passenger.

Frontal air bags are designed to help reduce the risk of injury from the force of an inflating frontal air bag. But these air bags must inflate very quickly to do their job and comply with federal regulations.

Here are the most important things to know about the air bag systems:

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**You can be severely injured or killed in a crash if you aren't wearing your safety belt — even if you have air bags. Wearing your safety belt during a crash helps reduce your chance of**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**hitting things inside the vehicle or being ejected from it. Air bags are designed to work with safety belts but don't replace them.**

**Frontal air bags for the driver and right front passenger are designed to deploy only in moderate to severe frontal and near frontal crashes. They aren't designed to inflate at all in rollover, rear or low-speed frontal crashes, or in many side crashes. And, for some unrestrained occupants, frontal air bags may provide less protection in frontal crashes than more forceful air bags have provided in the past.**

**The side impact air bags for the driver and right front passenger are designed to inflate only in moderate to severe crashes where something hits the side of your vehicle. They aren't designed to inflate in frontal, in rollover or in rear crashes.**

**Everyone in your vehicle should wear a safety belt properly — whether or not there's an air bag for that person.**

## ⚠ CAUTION:

Both frontal and side impact air bags inflate with great force, faster than the blink of an eye. If you're too close to an inflating air bag, as you would be if you were leaning forward, it could seriously injure you. Safety belts help keep you in position for air bag inflation before and during a crash. Always wear your safety belt, even with frontal air bags. The driver should sit as far back as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle. Front occupants should not lean on or sleep against the door.

## ⚠ CAUTION:

Anyone who is up against, or very close to, any air bag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Air bags plus lap-shoulder belts offer the best protection for adults, but not for young children and infants. Neither the vehicle's safety belt system nor its air bag system is designed for them. Young children and infants need the protection that a child restraint system can provide. Always secure children properly in your vehicle. To read how, see the part of this manual called "Older Children" or "Infants and Young Children".



There is a air bag readiness light on the instrument panel cluster, which shows the air bag symbol.

The system checks the air bag electrical system for malfunctions. The light tells you if there is an electrical problem. See *Air Bag Readiness Light on page 3-34* for more information.

## Where Are the Air Bags?



The driver's frontal air bag is in the middle of the steering wheel.



The right front passernger's frontal air bag is in the instrument panel on the passenger's side.



The driver's side impact air bag is in the side of the driver's seatback closest to the door.



The right front passenger's side impact air bag is in the side of the passenger's seatback closest to the door.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**If something is between an occupant and an air bag, the bag might not inflate properly or it might force the object into that person causing severe injury or even death. The path of an inflating air bag must be kept clear. Don't put anything between an occupant and an air bag, and don't attach or put anything on the steering wheel hub or on or near any other air bag covering. Don't let seat covers block the inflation path of a side impact air bag.**

## When Should an Air Bag Inflate?

The driver's and right front passenger's frontal air bags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe frontal or near-frontal crashes. But they are designed to inflate only if the impact speed is above the system's designed "threshold level."

In addition, your vehicle has "dual stage" frontal air bags, which adjust the amount of restraint according to crash severity. For moderate frontal impacts, these air bags inflate at a level less than full deployment. For more severe frontal impacts, full deployment occurs.

If the front of your vehicle goes straight into a wall that doesn't move or deform, the threshold level for the reduced deployment is about 10 to 16 mph (16 to 25 km/h), and the threshold level for a full deployment is about 20 to 25 mph (32 to 40 km/h). The threshold level can vary, however, with specific vehicle design, so that it can be somewhat above or below this range.

If your vehicle strikes something that will move or deform, such as a parked car, the threshold level will be higher. The driver's and right front passenger's frontal air bags are not designed to inflate in rollovers, rear impacts, or in many side impacts because inflation would not help the occupant.

Side impact air bags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe side crashes. A side impact air bag will inflate if the crash severity is above the system's designed "threshold level." The threshold level can vary with specific vehicle design. Side impact air bags are not designed to inflate in frontal or near-frontal impacts, rollovers or rear impacts, because inflation would not help the occupant. A side impact air bag will only deploy on the side of the vehicle that is struck.

In any particular crash, no one can say whether an air bag should have inflated simply because of the damage to a vehicle or because of what the repair costs were. For frontal air bags, inflation is determined by the angle of the impact and how quickly the vehicle slows down in frontal and near-frontal impacts. For side impact air bags, inflation is determined by the location and severity of the impact.

The air bag system is designed to work properly under a wide range of conditions, including off-road usage. Observe safe driving speeds, especially on rough terrain. As always, wear your safety belt. See *Operating Your All-Wheel-Drive Vehicle Off Paved Roads on page 4-17* for tips on off-road driving.

## Seat Position Sensors

Vehicle's with dual stage air bags are also equipped with special sensors which enable the sensing system to monitor the position of both the driver and passenger front seats. The seat position sensor provides information which is used to determine if the air bags should deploy at a reduced level or at full depoyment.

## What Makes an Air Bag Inflate?

In an impact of sufficient severity, the air bag sensing system detects that the vehicle is in a crash. For both frontal and side impact air bags, the sensing system triggers a release of gas from the inflator, which inflates the air bag. The inflator, the air bag and related hardware are all part of the air bag modules. Frontal air bag modules are located inside the steering wheel and instrument panel. For side impact air bags, the air bag modules are located in the seatback closest to the driver's and/or right front passenger's door.

## How Does an Air Bag Restrain?

In moderate to severe frontal or near frontal collisions, even belted occupants can contact the steering wheel or the instrument panel. In moderate to severe side collisions, even belted occupants can contact the inside of the vehicle. The air bag supplements the protection provided by safety belts. Air bags distribute the force of the impact more evenly over the occupant's upper body, stopping the occupant more gradually. But the frontal air bags would not help you in many types of collisions, including rollovers, rear impacts, and many side impacts, primarily because an occupant's motion is not toward the air bag. Side impact air bags would not help you in many types of collisions, including frontal or near frontal collisions, rollovers, and rear impacts, primarily because an occupant's motion is not toward those air bags. Air bags should never be regarded as anything more than a supplement to safety belts, and then only in moderate to severe frontal or near-frontal collisions for the driver's and right front passenger's frontal air bags, and only in moderate to severe side collisions for vehicles with a driver's and right front passenger's side impact air bag.

## What Will You See After an Air Bag Inflates?

After the air bag inflates, it quickly deflates, so quickly that some people may not even realize the air bag inflated. Some components of the air bag module will be hot for a short time. These components include the steering wheel hub for the driver's frontal air bag and the instrument panel for the right front passenger's frontal air bag. For side impact air bags, the side of the seatback closest to the driver's and/or right front passenger's door will be hot. The parts of the bag that come into contact with you may be warm, but not too hot to touch. There will be some smoke and dust coming from the vents in the deflated air bags. Air bag inflation doesn't prevent the driver from seeing or being able to steer the vehicle, nor does it stop people from leaving the vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**When an air bag inflates, there is dust in the air. This dust could cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**breathing trouble. To avoid this, everyone in the vehicle should get out as soon as it is safe to do so. If you have breathing problems but can't get out of the vehicle after an air bag inflates, then get fresh air by opening a window or a door. If you experience breathing problems following an air bag deployment, you should seek medical attention.**

In many crashes severe enough to inflate an air bag, windshields are broken by vehicle deformation. Additional windshield breakage may also occur from the right front passenger air bag.

- Air bags are designed to inflate only once. After an air bag inflates, you'll need some new parts for your air bag system. If you don't get them, the air bag system won't be there to help protect you in another crash. A new system will include air bag modules and possibly other parts. The service manual for your vehicle covers the need to replace other parts.

- Your vehicle is equipped with electronic frontal sensors which help the sensing system distinguish between a moderate and a more severe frontal impact. Your vehicle is also equipped with a crash sensing and diagnostic module, which records information about the frontal air bag system. The module records information about the readiness of the system and when the system commands are bag inflation. It records the status of the driver's safety belt usage in a crash in which the air bag deploys or a crash in which the air bag nearly deploys. The module also records speed, engine RPM, brake and throttle data.
- Let only qualified technicians work on your air bag systems. Improper service can mean that an air bag system won't work properly. See your dealer for service.

***Notice:*** **If you damage the covering for the driver's or the right front passenger's air bag, or the air bag covering on the driver's and right front passenger's seatback, the bag may not work properly. You may have to replace the air bag module in the steering wheel, both the air bag module and the instrument panel for the right front passenger's air bag, or both the air bag module and seatback for the driver's and right front passenger's side impact air bag. Do not open or break the air bag coverings.**

## Passenger Sensing System

If your rearview mirror has one of the indicators pictured in the following illustrations, your vehicle has a passenger sensing system. The indicator will be visible when you turn your ignition key to START or RUN. The words ON and OFF or the symbol for on and off, will be visible on the rearview mirror during the system check. When the system check is complete, either the word ON or the word OFF, or the symbol for on or the symbol for off will be visible. See *Passenger Air Bag Status Indicator on page 3-34*. If your rearview mirror doesn't have either of the indicators pictured, then your vehicle doesn't have the passenger sensing system.




**Passenger Air Bag Status Indicator – United States**



**Passenger Air Bag Status Indicator – Canada**

The passenger sensing system will turn off the right front passenger's frontal air bag under certain conditions. The driver's air bag and the side air bags are not part of the passenger sensing system.

The passenger sensing system works with sensors that are part of the right front passenger's seat and safety belt. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly-seated occupant and determine if the passenger's frontal air bag should be enabled (may inflate) or not.

Accident statistics show that children are safer if they are restrained in the rear rather than the front seat. General Motors, therefore, recommends that child restraints be secured in a rear seat including an infant riding in a rear-facing infant seat, a child riding in a forward-facing child seat and an older child riding in a booster seat. Never put a child in a rear-facing child restraint in the right front passenger seat unless your vehicle has the passenger sensing system and the passenger air bag status indicator shows off. Never put a rear-facing child restraint in the right front passenger seat unless the air bag is off.

## ⚠ CAUTION:

**A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger's air bag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating air bag. Be sure the air bag is off before using a rear-facing child restraint in the right front seat position.**

**Even though the passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the passenger's frontal air bag if the system detects a rear-facing child restraint, no sensing system is fail-safe, and no one can guarantee that an air bag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off. General Motors, therefore, recommends that rear-facing child restraints be secured in the rear seat whenever possible, even if the air bag is off.**

The passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the right front passenger's frontal air bag if:

- the right front passenger seat is unoccupied,
- the system determines that an infant is present in a rear-facing infant seat,
- the system determines that a small child is present in a forward-facing child restraint,
- the system determines that a small child is present in a booster seat,
- a right front passenger takes his/her weight off of the seat for a period of time.
- the right front passenger seat is occupied by a smaller person, such as a child who has outgrown child restraints.
- or if there is a critical problem with the air bag system or the passenger sensing system.

When the passenger sensing system has turned off the passenger's frontal air bag, the off indicator will light and stay lit to remind you that the air bag is off.

The passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the passenger's frontal air bag when a rear facing infant seat, a forward-facing child restraint or a booster seat is detected. If the child restraint has been installed and the on indicator is lit, turn the vehicle off, remove the child restraint from the vehicle and reinstall the restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's directions and refer to *Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position on page 1-68* of this manual. If after reinstalling the child restraint and restarting the vehicle, the on indicator is still lit, secure the child in the child restraint in a rear seat position in the vehicle and check with your dealer.

The passenger sensing system is designed to enable (may inflate) the right front passenger's frontal air bag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the right front passenger's seat. When the passenger sensing system has allowed the air bag to be enabled, the on indicator will light and stay lit to remind you that the air bag is active.

For some children who have outgrown child restraints and for very small adults, the passenger sensing system may or may not turn off the right front passenger's frontal air bag, depending upon the persons seating posture and body build. Everyone in your vehicle who has outgrown child restraints should wear a safety belt properly – whether or not there is an air bag for that person.

If a person of adult-size is sitting in the right front passenger's seat, but the off indicator is lit, it could be because that person isn't sitting properly in the seat. If this happens, turn the vehicle off and ask the person to place the seatback in the full upright position, then sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended. Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This will allow the system to detect that person and then enable the passenger's air bag.



**⚠ CAUTION:**

**If the air bag readiness light in the instrument panel cluster ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the air bag system. If this ever happens, have the**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**vehicle serviced promptly, because an adult-size person sitting in the right front passenger's seat may not have the protection of the frontal air bag. See "Air Bag Readiness Light" in the Index for more on this, including important safety information.**

Aftermarket equipment, such as seat covers, can affect how well the passenger sensing system operates. You may want to consider not using seat covers or other aftermarket equipment if your vehicle has the passenger sensing system.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Stowing of articles under the passenger's seat or between the passenger's seat cushion and seatback may interfere with the proper operation of the passenger sensing system.**

## Servicing Your Air Bag-Equipped Vehicle

Air bags affect how your vehicle should be serviced. There air bag system parts in several places around your vehicle. You don't want the system to inflate while someone is working on your vehicle. Your dealer and the service manual have information about servicing your vehicle and the air bag system. To purchase a service manual, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 7-10.*

### ⚠ CAUTION:

**For up to 10 minutes after the ignition key is turned off and the battery is disconnected, an air bag can still inflate during improper service. You can be injured if you are close to an air bag when it inflates. Avoid yellow connectors. They are probably part of the air bag system. Be sure to follow proper service procedures, and make sure the person performing work for you is qualified to do so.**

Air bag systems do not need regular maintenance.

## Adding Equipment to Your Air Bag-Equipped Vehicle

**Q: Is there anything I might add to the front or sides of the vehicle that could keep the air bags from working properly?**

**A:** Yes. If you add things that change your vehicle's frame, bumper system, front end or side sheet metal or height, they may keep the air bag system from working properly. Also, the air bag system may not work properly if you relocate any of the air bag sensors. If you have any questions about this, you should contact Customer Assistance before you modify your vehicle. The phone numbers and addresses for Customer Assistance are in Step Two of the Customer Satisfaction Procedure in this manual. See *Customer Satisfaction Procedure on page 7-2.*

# Restraint System Check

## Checking Your Restraint Systems

Now and then, make sure the safety belt reminder light and all your belts, buckles, latch plates, retractors and anchorages are working properly. Look for any other loose or damaged safety belt system parts. If you see anything that might keep a safety belt system from doing its job, have it repaired.

Torn or frayed safety belts may not protect you in a crash. They can rip apart under impact forces. If a belt is torn or frayed, get a new one right away.

Also look for any opened or broken air bag covers, and have them repaired or replaced. (The air bag system does not need regular maintenance.)

## Replacing Restraint System Parts After a Crash

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**A crash can damage the restraint systems in your vehicle. A damaged restraint system may not properly protect the person using it, resulting in serious injury or even death in a crash. To help make sure your restraint systems are working properly after a crash, have them inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.**

If you've had a crash, do you need new belts or LATCH system parts?

After a very minor collision, nothing may be necessary. But if the belts were stretched, as they would be if worn during a more severe crash, then you need new parts.

If the LATCH system was being used during a more severe crash, you may need new LATCH system parts.

If belts are cut or damaged, replace them. Collision damage also may mean you will need to have LATCH system, safety belt or seat parts repaired or replaced.

New parts and repairs may be necessary even if the belt or LATCH system wasn't being used at the time of the collision.

If an air bag inflates, you'll need to replace air bag system parts. See the part on the air bag system earlier in this section.

# Section 2 Features and Controls


**Keys** ..... 2-3
- Remote Keyless Entry System ..... 2-4
- Remote Keyless Entry System Operation ..... 2-5

**Doors and Locks** ..... 2-8
- Door Locks ..... 2-8
- Power Door Locks ..... 2-9
- Delayed Locking ..... 2-9
- Programmable Automatic Door Locks ..... 2-10
- Rear Door Security Locks ..... 2-12
- Lockout Protection ..... 2-12
- Liftgate/Liftglass ..... 2-13

**Windows** ..... 2-14
- Power Windows ..... 2-15
- Sun Visors ..... 2-15

**Theft-Deterrent Systems** ..... 2-16
- Content Theft-Deterrent ..... 2-16
- Passlock® ..... 2-17

**Starting and Operating Your Vehicle** ..... 2-18
- New Vehicle Break-In ..... 2-18
- Ignition Positions ..... 2-18
- Starting Your Engine ..... 2-19
- Adjustable Throttle and Brake Pedal ..... 2-20
- Engine Coolant Heater ..... 2-21
- Automatic Transmission Operation ..... 2-22
- Parking Brake ..... 2-24
- Shifting Into Park (P) ..... 2-25
- Shifting Out of Park (P) ..... 2-27
- Parking Over Things That Burn ..... 2-28
- Engine Exhaust ..... 2-28
- Running Your Engine While You Are Parked ..... 2-29

**Mirrors** ..... 2-30
- Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror with OnStar®, Compass and Temperature Display ..... 2-30
- Outside Power Mirrors ..... 2-33
- Outside Convex Mirror ..... 2-33
- Outside Heated Mirrors ..... 2-34
- Outside Automatic Dimming Mirror with Curb View Assist ..... 2-34

**OnStar® System** ..... 2-35

**HomeLink® Transmitter** ..... 2-37
- Programming the HomeLink® Transmitter ..... 2-37

# Section 2 Features and Controls


**Storage Areas** ..... 2-41
- Glove Box ..... 2-41
- Cupholder(s) ..... 2-41
- Center Console Storage Area ..... 2-41
- Luggage Carrier ..... 2-42
- Rear Storage Area ..... 2-43
- Rear Seat Armrest ..... 2-43
- Convenience Net ..... 2-43
- Cargo Cover ..... 2-44

**Sunroof** ..... 2-46

**Vehicle Personalization** ..... 2-47
- Memory Seat ..... 2-47

# Keys

## ⚠ CAUTION:

Leaving children in a vehicle with the ignition key is dangerous for many reasons. A child or others could be badly injured or even killed.

They could operate the power windows or other controls or even make the vehicle move.

Don't leave the keys in a vehicle with children.





Your vehicle has one double-sided key for the ignition, door locks and liftgate.

If you ever lose your keys, your dealer will be able to assist you with obtaining replacements.

In an emergency contact Cadillac Roadside Service®. See *Roadside Service on page 7-5* for more information.

If you ever lock your keys in your vehicle, you may be able to have your doors unlocked automatically with the OnStar® system if you have an active OnStar® subscription. For more information see *OnStar® System on page 2-35*.

## Remote Keyless Entry System

Your keyless entry system operates on a radio frequency subject to Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Rules and with Industry Canada.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

At times you may notice a decrease in range. This is normal for any remote keyless entry system. If the transmitter does not work or if you have to stand closer to your vehicle for the transmitter to work, try this:

- Check the distance. You may be too far from your vehicle. You may need to stand closer during rainy or snowy weather.
- Check the location. Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal. Take a few steps to the left or right, hold the transmitter higher, and try again.
- Check to determine if battery replacement is necessary. See "Battery Replacement" under *Remote Keyless Entry System Operation on page 2-5*.
- If you are still having trouble, see your dealer or a qualified technician for service.

## Remote Keyless Entry System Operation

You can lock and unlock your doors from about 3 feet (1 m) up to 100 feet (30 m) away using the remote keyless entry transmitter supplied with your vehicle.



**(Unlock):** Pressing this button once will unlock the driver's door. The interior lamps will come on. Pressing unlock again within three seconds will cause the remaining doors to unlock.

You can choose different feedback options for each press of the unlock button, such as having the vehicle's perimeter lamps come on and/or having the horn chirp. See *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-47* for more information.

**(Lock):** Pressing this button once will lock all of the doors. Pressing the button again within three seconds may cause the horn to chirp for lock confirmation. You can choose different feedback options for each press of the lock button, such as having the vehicle's perimeter lamps flash and/or having the horn chirp. See *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-47* for more information.

**(Panic):** When this button is pressed, the horn will sound and the headlamps and taillamps will flash for up to 30 seconds. This can be turned off by pressing the button again, or by waiting for 30 seconds, or by starting the vehicle.

## Matching Transmitter(s) to Your Vehicle

Each remote keyless entry transmitter is coded to prevent another transmitter from unlocking your vehicle. If a transmitter is lost or stolen, a replacement can be purchased through your dealer. Remember to bring any remaining transmitters with you when you go to your dealer. When the dealer matches the replacement transmitter to your vehicle, any remaining transmitters must also be matched. Once your dealer has coded the new transmitter, the lost transmitter will not unlock your vehicle. Each vehicle can have a maximum of four transmitters matched to it.

## Battery Replacement

Under normal use, the battery in your remote keyless entry transmitter should last about two years.

You can tell the battery is weak if the transmitter won't work at the normal range in any location. If you have to get close to your vehicle before the transmitter works, it's probably time to change the battery.

***Notice:*** **When replacing the battery, use care not to touch any of the circuitry. Static from your body transferred to these surfaces may damage the transmitter.**

To replace the battery in the keyless entry transmitter, do the following:



1. Insert a thin object, such as a coin, in the slot between the covers of the transmitter housing near the key ring hole. Remove the bottom by twisting the coin.
2. Remove and replace the battery with a three-volt CR2032 or equivalent battery, positive (+) side up.
3. Align the covers and snap them together.
4. Check the operation of the transmitter.

# Doors and Locks

## Door Locks

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Unlocked doors can be dangerous.**

- **Passengers — especially children — can easily open the doors and fall out of a moving vehicle. When a door is locked, the handle won't open it. You increase the chance of being thrown out of the vehicle in a crash if the doors aren't locked. So, wear safety belts properly and lock the doors whenever you drive.**
- **Young children who get into unlocked vehicles may be unable to get out. A child can be overcome by extreme heat and can suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Always lock your vehicle whenever you leave it.**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

- **Outsiders can easily enter through an unlocked door when you slow down or stop your vehicle. Locking your doors can help prevent this from happening.**

There are several ways to lock and unlock your vehicle.

To unlock the door from the outside, use the keyless entry system or the key.



To unlock the door from the inside, slide the manual lever forward. To lock the door, slide the manual lever rearward.

## Power Door Locks



The power door lock switches are located on the driver's and front passenger's armrests.

**(Lock):** Remove the ignition key and press the lock symbol to lock all of the doors.

**(Unlock):** To unlock the doors, press the unlock symbol.

## Delayed Locking

When locking the doors with the power lock switch or the keyless entry transmitter and a door or the liftgate is open, the delayed locking feature will delay locking the doors and tailgate until five seconds after the last door is closed. You will hear three chimes to signal that the delayed locking feature is in use.

Pressing the power lock switch or the lock button on the keyless entry transmitter twice will override the delayed locking feature and immediately lock all the doors.

You can turn the delayed locking feature off or back on again by doing the following:

1. Press and hold the power door lock switch in the lock position.
2. Press unlock twice on the remote keyless entry transmitter.

This feature will not operate if the key is in the ignition.

## Programmable Automatic Door Locks

Your vehicle is equipped with an automatic lock/unlock feature which enables you to program your vehicle's power door locks. You can program this feature through the Driver Information Center (DIC), or by the following method.

### Programmable Locking Feature

The following is the list of available programming options:

**Mode 1:** All doors lock when the transmission is shifted into gear.

**Mode 2:** All doors lock when the vehicle speed is greater than 8 mph (13 km/h).

**Mode 3:** No automatic door locking.

The automatic door locks were pre-programmed at the factory to lock all the doors when the transmission is shifted into gear. The following instructions detail how to program your door locks differently than the factory setting. Choose one of the three programming options listed above before entering the program mode.

To enter the program mode, do the following:

1. Begin with the ignition off. Then pull the turn signal/multifunction lever toward you and hold it there while you perform the next step.
2. Turn the key to RUN and LOCK twice. Then, with the key in LOCK, release the turn signal/multifunction lever. Once you do this, you will hear the lock switch lock and unlock, the horn will chirp twice, and a 30 second program timer will begin. You are now ready to program the automatic door locks.
3. Select one of the three programming options listed previously, and press the lock side of the power door lock switch to cycle through the lock options. You will have 30 seconds to begin programming. If you exceed the 30 second limit, the locks will automatically lock and unlock and the horn will chirp twice to indicate that you have left the program mode. If this occurs, repeat the procedure beginning with Step 1 to re-enter the programming mode.

You can exit the program mode any time by turning the ignition to RUN (the locks will automatically lock and unlock and the horn will chirp twice to indicate that you are leaving the program mode). If the lock/unlock switches are not pressed while in the programming mode, the current auto lock/unlock setting will not be modified.

See your dealer for more information.

## Programmable Unlocking Feature

The following is the list of available programming options:

**Mode 1:** Driver's door unlocks when the transmission is shifted into PARK (P).

**Mode 2:** All doors unlock when the transmission is shifted into PARK (P).

**Mode 3:** All doors unlock when the key is removed from the ignition.

**Mode 4:** No automatic door unlock.

The automatic door locks were pre-programmed at the factory to unlock the driver's door once the transmission is shifted to PARK (P). The following instructions detail how to program your door locks differently than the factory setting. Choose one of the four programming options listed above before entering the program mode.

To enter the program mode, do the following:

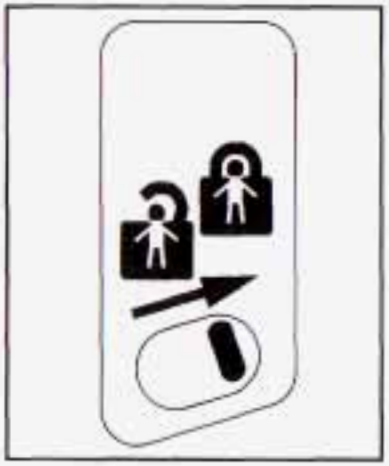
1. Begin with the ignition off. Then pull the turn signal/multifunction lever toward you and hold it there while you perform the next step.
2. Turn the key to RUN and LOCK twice. Then, with the key in LOCK, release the turn signal/multifunction lever. Once you do this, you will hear the lock switch lock and unlock, the horn will chirp twice, and a 30-second program timer will begin.
3. You are now ready to program the automatic door locks. Select one of the four programming options listed previously, and press the unlock side of the power door lock switch to cycle through the unlocking options. You will have 30 seconds to begin programming. If you exceed the 30-second limit, the locks will automatically lock and unlock and the horn will chirp twice to indicate that you have left the program mode. If this occurs, repeat the procedure beginning with Step 1 to re-enter the programming mode.

You can exit the program mode any time by turning the ignition to RUN. The locks will automatically lock and unlock and the horn will chirp twice to indicate that you are leaving the program mode. If the lock/unlock switches are not pressed while in the programming mode, the current auto lock/unlock setting will not be modified.

See your dealer for more information.

## Rear Door Security Locks

With this feature, you can lock the rear doors so they can't be opened from the inside by passengers.



This feature is located on the inside edge of the rear doors.

To use one of the locks, do the following:

1. Open one of the rear doors.
2. Move the lever forward to engage the rear door security lock.
3. Close the door.
4. Do the same thing to the other rear door.

The rear doors or your vehicle cannot be opened from the inside when this feature is in use. If you want to open the rear door while the security lock is engaged, unlock the door and open the door from the outside. Move the lever rearward to disengage the child security lock feature.

## Lockout Protection

This feature protects you from locking your key in the vehicle when the key is in the ignition and a door is open.

If the power lock switch is pressed when a door is open and the key is in the ignition, all of the doors will lock and then the driver's door will unlock.

## Liftgate/Liftglass

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**It can be dangerous to drive with the liftgate or liftglass open because carbon monoxide (CO) gas can come into your vehicle. You can't see or smell CO. It can cause unconsciousness and even death. If you must drive with the liftgate open or if electrical wiring or other cable connections must pass through the seal between the body and the liftgate or liftglass:**

- **Make sure all other windows are shut.**
- **Turn the fan on your heating or cooling system to its highest speed and select the control setting that will force outside air into your vehicle. See "Comfort Controls" in the Index.**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

- **If you have air outlets on or under the instrument panel, open them all the way. See "Engine Exhaust" in the Index.**

To open from the outside, insert the key into the lock and turn it counterclockwise to unlock the glass and liftgate.

The liftgate glass can be opened using the pushbutton on the liftgate after the doors have been unlocked. This can be done by using either the power door locks or the remote keyless entry system.

To open the entire liftgate, lift the handle located in the center of the door.

To lock from the outside, insert the key into the lock button and turn clockwise. All doors will lock. You may also use the remote keyless entry system or the power door locks to lock the liftgate and liftgate glass.

# Windows

**⚠ CAUTION:**

Leaving children in a vehicle with the windows closed is dangerous. A child can be overcome by the extreme heat and can suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Never leave a child alone in a vehicle, especially with the windows closed in warm or hot weather.



## Power Windows



The controls for the power windows are located on the armrest on each of the side doors. The switches operate the windows when the ignition is in RUN, ACCESSORY or when Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active. See "Retained Accessory Power" under *Ignition Positions on page 2-18*.

The driver's door has a switch for each of the passenger's windows as well.

Press the top of the switch to lower the window. Pull up the top of the switch to raise the window.

### Express-Down Windows

The driver's and front passenger's window switches have an express-down feature that allows you to lower the window without continuously pressing the switch. Press the top of the window switch down briefly to activate the feature. Lightly tap the switch to open the window slightly. The express-down feature can be interrupted at any time by pulling up on the top of the switch.

### Lockout Switch

Press the lockout switch to prevent passengers from operating the power windows. A small light in the lockout switch will come on to show that the switch has been activated. Press the lockout switch again to return to normal operation.

## Sun Visors

To block out glare, you can swing down the visors. You can also swing them out to help block glare at the front and side windows.

### Illuminated Visor Vanity Mirrors

Pull the sunvisor down and lift the mirror cover to turn on the lamps.

# Theft-Deterrent Systems

Vehicle theft is big business, especially in some cities. Although your vehicle has a number of theft-deterrent features, we know that nothing we put on it can make it impossible to steal.

## Content Theft-Deterrent

Your vehicle is equipped with a content theft-deterrent alarm system.



With this system, the security light in the instrument panel cluster will flash as you open the door if your ignition is off.

This light reminds you to activate the theft-deterrent system. Here's how to do it:

1. Open the door.
2. Lock the door with the power door lock switch or the remote keyless entry transmitter. The security light should come on and stay on.
3. Close all doors. The security light should go off after about 30 seconds. The alarm is not armed until the security light goes off.

If a locked door is opened without the key or the remote keyless entry transmitter, the alarm will go off. The headlamps and parking lamps will flash for two minutes, and the horn will sound for 30 seconds, then will turn off to save the battery power. You can choose different feedback options for the alarm. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 3-47.*

Remember, the theft-deterrent system won't activate if you lock the doors with a key or use the manual door lock. It activates only if you use a power door lock switch with the door open, or with the remote keyless entry transmitter. You should also remember that you can start your vehicle with the correct ignition key if the alarm has been set off.

Here's how to avoid setting off the alarm by accident:

- If you don't want to activate the theft-deterrent system, the vehicle should be locked with the door key *after* the doors are closed.
- Always unlock a door with a key, or use the remote keyless entry transmitter. Unlocking a door any other way will set off the alarm.

If you set off the alarm by accident, unlock any door with the key. You can also turn off the alarm by pressing unlock on the remote keyless entry transmitter. The alarm won't stop if you try to unlock a door any other way.

## Testing the Alarm

The alarm can be tested by following these steps:

1. From inside the vehicle, lower the driver's window and open the driver's door.
2. Activate the system by locking the doors with the power door lock switch while the door is open, or with the remote keyless entry transmitter.
3. Get out of the vehicle, close the door and wait for the security light to go out.
4. Then reach in through the window, unlock the door with the manual door lock and open the door. This should set off the alarm.

While the alarm is set, the power door unlock switch is not operational.

If the alarm does not sound when it should but the headlamps flash, check to see if the horn works. The horn fuse may be blown. To replace the fuse, see *Fuses and Circuit Breakers on page 5-100.*

If the alarm does not sound or the headlamps do not flash, the vehicle should be serviced by your dealer.

## Passlock®

Your vehicle is equipped with the Passlock® theft-deterrent system.

Passlock® is a passive theft-deterrent system. Passlock® enables fuel if the ignition lock cylinder is turned with a valid key. If a correct key is not used or the ignition lock cylinder is tampered with, the fuel system is disabled and the vehicle will not start.

During normal operation, the security light will turn off approximately five seconds after the key is turned to RUN.

If the engine stalls and the security light flashes, wait about 10 minutes until the light stops flashing before trying to restart the engine. Remember to release the key from START as soon as the engine starts.

If the engine does not start after three tries, the vehicle needs service.

If the engine is running and the security light comes on, you will be able to restart the engine if you turn the engine off. However, your Passlock® system is not working properly and must be serviced by your dealer. Your vehicle is not protected by Passlock® at this time. You may also want to check the fuse. See *Fuses and Circuit Breakers on page 5-100.* See your dealer for service.

In an emergency, call the Roadside Assistance Center. See *Roadside Service on page 7-5.*

# Starting and Operating Your Vehicle

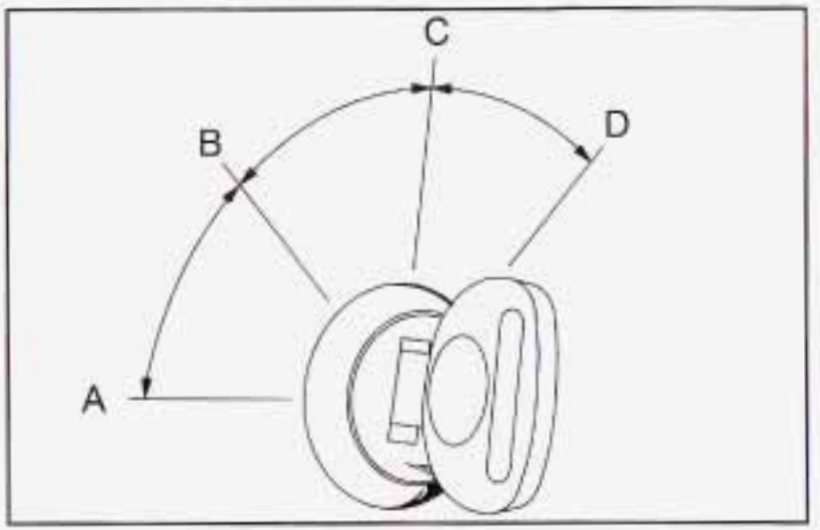
## New Vehicle Break-In

*Notice:* Your vehicle doesn't need an elaborate "break-in." But it will perform better in the long run if you follow these guidelines:

- Keep your speed at 55 mph (88 km/h) or less for the first 500 miles (805 km).
- Don't drive at any one speed — fast or slow — for the first 500 miles (805 km). Don't make full-throttle starts.
- Avoid making hard stops for the first 200 miles (322 km) or so. During this time your new brake linings aren't yet broken in. Hard stops with new linings can mean premature wear and earlier replacement. Follow this breaking-in guideline every time you get new brake linings.
- Don't tow a trailer during break-in. See "Towing a Trailer" in the Index for more information.

## Ignition Positions

With your key in the ignition switch you can turn it to four different positions.




**A (LOCK):** This position locks your ignition and transmission. It's a theft-deterrent feature. You will only be able to remove your key when the ignition is turned to LOCK.

***Notice:*** **If your key seems stuck in LOCK and you can't turn it, be sure you are using the correct key; if so, is it all the way in? Turn the key only with your hand. Using a tool to force it could break the key or the ignition switch. If none of these works, then your vehicle needs service.**

**B (ACCESSORY):** This position allows you to use things like the radio, power windows and the windshield wipers when the engine is off.

**C (RUN):** This position is for driving.

**D (START):** This position starts your engine.

## Retained Accessory Power (RAP)

The Retained Accessory Power (RAP) feature will allow certain features on your vehicle to continue to work for up to 10 minutes after the ignition key is turned to LOCK.

## Starting Your Engine

Move your shift lever to PARK (P) or NEUTRAL (N). Your engine won't start in any other position – that's a safety feature. To restart when you're already moving, use NEUTRAL (N) only.

***Notice:*** **Don't try to shift to PARK (P) if your vehicle is moving. If you do, you could damage the transaxle. Shift to PARK (P) only when your vehicle is stopped.**

1. With your foot off the accelerator pedal, turn the ignition key to START. When the engine starts, let go of the key. The idle speed will go down as your engine gets warm.

***Notice:*** **Holding your key in START for longer than 15 seconds at a time will cause your battery to be drained much sooner. And the excessive heat can damage your starter motor. Wait about 15 seconds between each try to help avoid draining your battery or damaging your starter.**

2. If it doesn't start within 10 seconds, push the accelerator pedal all the way to the floor, while you hold the ignition key in START. When the engine starts, let go of the key and let up on the accelerator pedal. Wait about 15 seconds between each try.

When starting your engine in very cold weather (below 0°F or −18°C), do this:

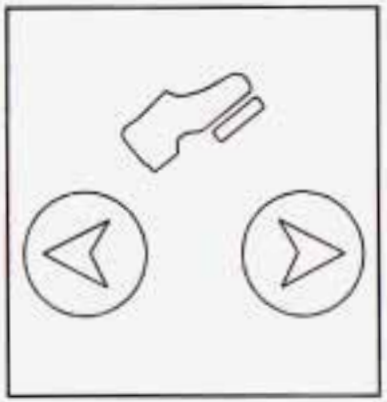
1. With your foot off the accelerator pedal, turn the ignition key to START and hold it there up to 15 seconds. When the engine starts, let go of the key.
2. If your engine still won't start (or starts but then stops), it could be flooded with too much gasoline. Try pushing your accelerator pedal all the way to the floor and holding it there as you hold the key in START for about three seconds. When the engine starts, let go of the key and accelerator. If the vehicle starts briefly but then stops again, do the same thing, but this time keep the pedal down for five or six seconds. This clears the extra gasoline from the engine.

***Notice:*** **Your engine is designed to work with the electronics in your vehicle. If you add electrical parts or accessories, you could change the way the engine operates. Before adding electrical equipment, check with your dealer. If you don't, your engine might not perform properly.**

## Adjustable Throttle and Brake Pedal

If your vehicle has this feature, you can change the position of the throttle and brake pedals. This feature is designed for shorter drivers, since the pedals cannot move farther away from the standard position, but can move forward for better pedal reach. This feature can be programmed to work with the memory function (if equipped) on your vehicle. See *Memory Seat on page 2-47.*

The vehicle must be in PARK (P) for this feature to operate.

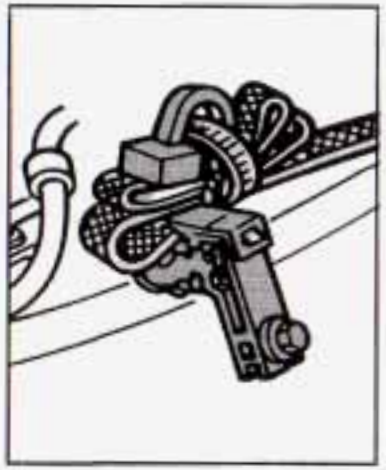


The buttons used to adjust the pedals are located on the driver's side door panel.

Press the button closest to you to move the pedals closer to your body. Press the button farthest from you to move the pedals away from your body.

## Engine Coolant Heater

Your vehicle may be equipped with an engine coolant heater.



In very cold weather, 0°F (−18°C) or colder, the engine coolant heater can help. You'll get easier starting and better fuel economy during engine warm-up.

Usually, the coolant heater should be plugged in a minimum of four hours prior to starting your vehicle. At temperatures above 32°F (0°C), use of the coolant heater is not required.

## To Use the Engine Coolant Heater

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Open the hood and unwrap the electrical cord. The cord is located on the driver's side of the engine compartment, near the power steering fluid reservoir.
3. Plug it into a normal, grounded 110-volt AC outlet.

### ⚠ CAUTION:

**Plugging the cord into an ungrounded outlet could cause an electrical shock. Also, the wrong kind of extension cord could overheat and cause a fire. You could be seriously injured. Plug the cord into a properly grounded three-prong 110-volt AC outlet. If the cord won't reach, use a heavy-duty three-prong extension cord rated for at least 15 amps.**

4. Before starting the engine, be sure to unplug and store the cord as it was before to keep it away from moving engine parts. If you don't, it could be damaged.

How long should you keep the coolant heater plugged in? The answer depends on the outside temperature, the kind of oil you have, and some other things. Instead of trying to list everything here, we ask that you contact your dealer in the area where you'll be parking your vehicle. The dealer can give you the best advice for that particular area.

## Automatic Transmission Operation

Your vehicle has an electronic shift position indicator within the instrument panel cluster.

There are several different positions for your shift lever.

**PARK (P):** This position locks your drive wheels. It's the best position to use when you start your engine because your vehicle can't move easily.

### ⚠ CAUTION:

**It is dangerous to get out of your vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in PARK (P) with the parking brake firmly set. Your vehicle can roll.**

**Don't leave your vehicle when the engine is running unless you have to. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure your vehicle won't move, even when you're on fairly level ground, always set your parking brake and move the shift lever to PARK (P). See "Shifting Into Park (P)" in the Index. If you're pulling a trailer, see "Towing a Trailer" in the Index.**

**REVERSE (R):** Use this gear to back up.

***Notice:*** **Shifting to REVERSE (R) while your vehicle is moving forward could damage your transmission. Shift to REVERSE (R) only after your vehicle is stopped.**

To rock your vehicle back and forth to get out of snow, ice or sand without damaging your transmission, see *If You Are Stuck: In Sand, Mud, Ice or Snow on page 4-44.*

**NEUTRAL (N):** In this position, your engine doesn't connect with the wheels. To restart when you're already moving, use NEUTRAL (N) only. Also, use NEUTRAL (N) when your vehicle is being towed.

### ⚠ CAUTION:

**Shifting into a drive gear while your engine is "racing" (running at high speed) is dangerous. Unless your foot is firmly on the brake pedal, your vehicle could move very rapidly. You could lose control and hit people or objects. Don't shift into a drive gear while your engine is racing.**

***Notice:*** **Damage to your transmission caused by shifting out of PARK (P) or NEUTRAL (N) with the engine racing isn't covered by your warranty.**

**DRIVE (D):** This position is for normal driving. If you need more power for passing, and you're:

- Going less than about 35 mph (55 km/h), push your accelerator pedal about halfway down.
- Going about 35 mph (55 km/h) or more, push the accelerator all the way down.

You'll shift down to the next gear and have more power.

DRIVE (D) can be used when towing a trailer, carrying a heavy load, driving on steep hills or for off-road driving. You may want to shift the transmission to THIRD (3) or, if necessary, a lower gear selection if the transmission shifts too often.

**THIRD (3):** This position is also used for normal driving, however, it offers more power and lower fuel economy than DRIVE (D).

**SECOND (2):** This position gives you more power but lower fuel economy. You can use SECOND (2) on hills. It can help control your speed as you go down steep mountain roads, but then you would also want to use your brakes off and on.

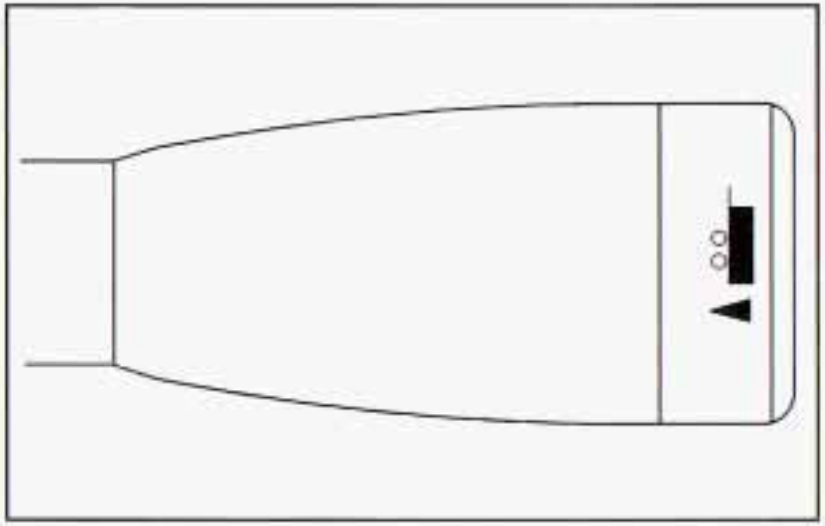
If you manually select SECOND (2) the transmission will drive in second gear. You may use this feature for reducing the speed of the rear wheels when you are trying to start your vehicle from a stop on slippery road surfaces.

**FIRST (1):** This position gives you even more power, but lower fuel economy than SECOND (2). You can use it on very steep hills, or in deep snow or mud. If the shift lever is put in FIRST (1) while the vehicle is moving forward, the transmission won't shift into first gear until the vehicle is going slowly enough.

***Notice:*** **If your wheels won't turn, don't try to drive. This might happen if you were stuck in very deep sand or mud or were up against a solid object. You could damage your transmission. Also, if you stop when going uphill, don't hold your vehicle there with only the accelerator pedal. This could overheat and damage the transmission. Use your brakes or shift into PARK (P) to hold your vehicle in position on a hill.**

On cold days, approximately 32°F (0°C) or colder, your transmission is designed to shift differently until the engine reaches normal operating temperature. This is intended to improve heater performance.

## Tow/Haul Mode Selector Button



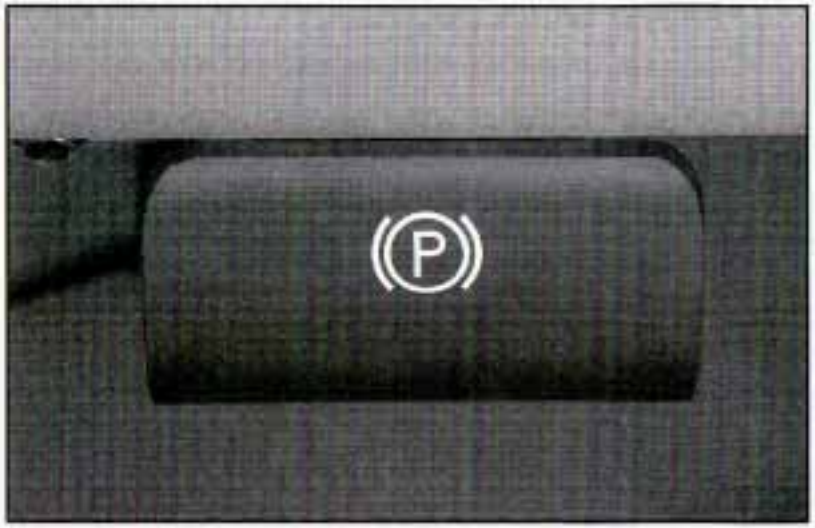
Your vehicle is equipped with a tow/haul mode. The button for this feature is located on the end of the column shift lever. You can use this feature to assist when towing or hauling a heavy load. See "Tow/Haul Mode" under *Towing a Trailer on page 4-50* for more information.

The tow/haul mode also interacts with the Road Sensing Suspension (RSS) feature to enhance the ride when trailering or with a loaded vehicle. See *Road Sensing Suspension on page 4-9*.

## Parking Brake

To set the parking brake, hold the regular brake pedal down with your right foot. Push down the parking brake pedal with your left foot.

A chime will activate and the warning light will flash when the parking brake is applied and the vehicle is moving at least 3 mph (5 km/h) for at least three seconds.




To release the parking brake, hold the regular brake pedal down. Pull the bottom edge of the lever, located above the parking brake pedal, with the parking brake symbol, to release the parking brake.

If the ignition is on when the parking brake is released, the brake system warning light will go off.

***Notice:*** **Driving with the parking brake on can cause your rear brakes to overheat. You may have to replace them, and you could also damage other parts of your vehicle.**

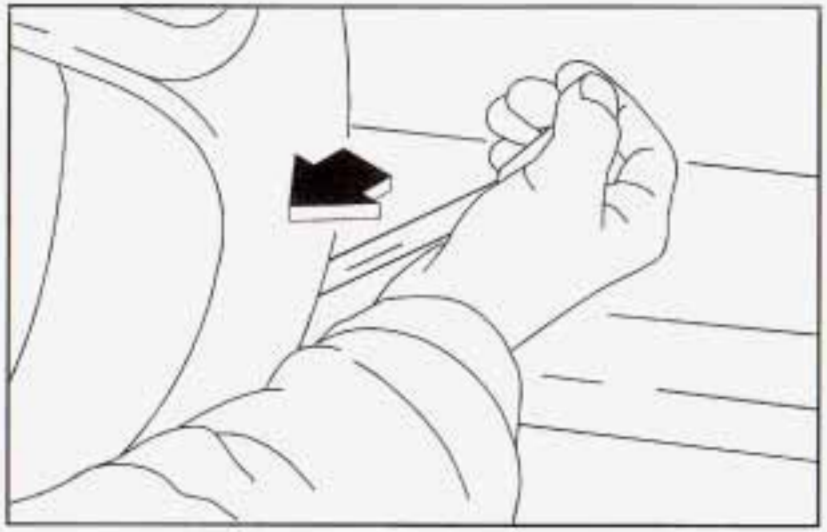
If you are towing a trailer and are parking on any hill, see *Towing a Trailer on page 4-50*.

## Shifting Into Park (P)

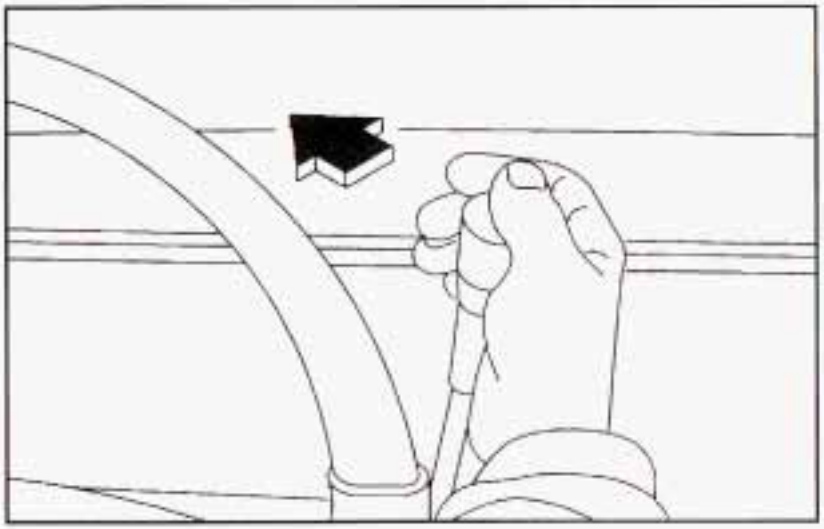
### ⚠ CAUTION:

**It can be dangerous to get out of your vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in PARK (P) with the parking brake firmly set. Your vehicle can roll. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure your vehicle won't move, even when you're on fairly level ground, use the steps that follow. If you're pulling a trailer, see "Towing a Trailer" in the Index.**

1. Hold the brake pedal down with your right foot and set the parking brake.
2. Move the shift lever into PARK (P) like this:



- Pull the shift lever toward you.



- Move the lever up as far as it will go.

3. Turn the ignition key to LOCK.
4. Remove the key and take it with you. If you can leave your vehicle with the ignition key in your hand, your vehicle is in PARK (P).

## Leaving Your Vehicle With the Engine Running

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**It can be dangerous to leave your vehicle with the engine running. Your vehicle could move suddenly if the shift lever is not fully in PARK (P) with the parking brake firmly set. And, if you leave the vehicle with the engine running, it could overheat and even catch fire. You or others could be injured. Don't leave your vehicle with the engine running.**

If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, be sure your vehicle is in PARK (P) and the parking brake is firmly set before you leave it. After you move the shift lever into PARK (P), hold the regular brake pedal down. Then, see if you can move the shift lever away from PARK (P) without first pulling it toward you. If you can, it means that the shift lever wasn't fully locked into PARK (P).

## Torque Lock

If you are parking on a hill and you don't shift your vehicle into PARK (P) properly, the weight of the vehicle may put too much force on the parking pawl in the transmission. You may find it difficult to pull the shift lever out of PARK (P). This is called torque lock. To prevent torque lock, set the parking brake and then shift into PARK (P) properly before you leave the driver's seat. To find out how, see *Shifting Into Park (P) on page 2-25.*

When you are ready to drive, move the shift lever out of PARK (P) before you release the parking brake.

If torque lock does occur, you may need to have another vehicle push yours a little uphill to take some of the pressure from the parking pawl in the transmission, so you can pull the shift lever out of PARK (P).

## Shifting Out of Park (P)

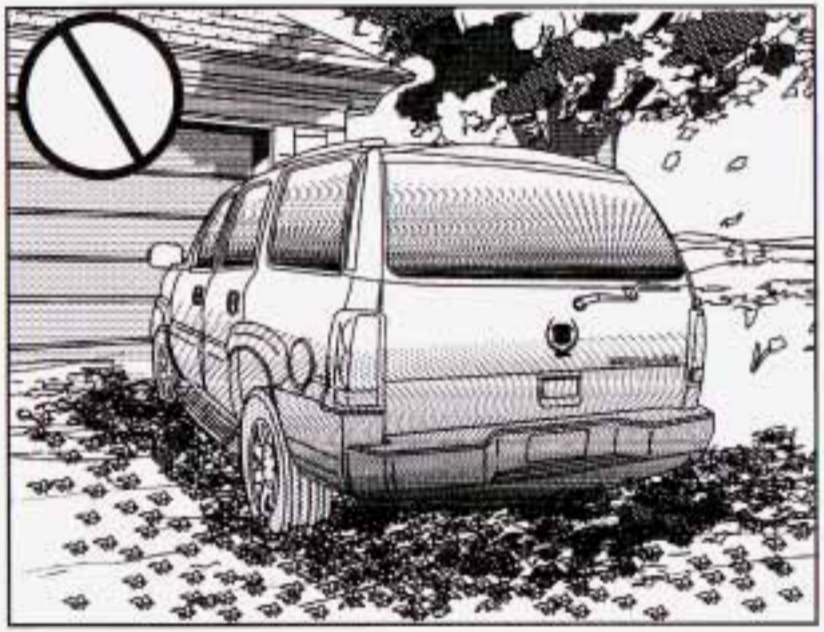
Your vehicle has an automatic transmission shift lock control system. You have to fully apply your regular brakes before you can shift from PARK (P) when the ignition is in RUN. See *Automatic Transmission Operation on page 2-22.*

If you cannot shift out of PARK (P), ease pressure on the shift lever and push the shift lever all the way up into PARK (P) as you maintain brake application. Then, move the shift lever into the gear you want.

If you ever hold the brake pedal down but still can't shift out of PARK (P), try this:

1. Turn the key to LOCK.
2. Apply and hold the brake until the end of Step 4.
3. Shift the vehicle to NEUTRAL (N).
4. Start the vehicle and then shift to the drive gear you want.
5. Have the system fixed as soon as you can.

## Parking Over Things That Burn



**⚠ CAUTION:**

Things that can burn could touch hot exhaust parts under your vehicle and ignite. Don't park over papers, leaves, dry grass or other things that can burn.

## Engine Exhaust

**⚠ CAUTION:**

Engine exhaust can kill. It contains the gas carbon monoxide (CO), which you can't see or smell. It can cause unconsciousness and death.

You might have exhaust coming in if:

- Your exhaust system sounds strange or different.
- Your vehicle gets rusty underneath.
- Your vehicle was damaged in a collision.
- Your vehicle was damaged when driving over high points on the road or over road debris.
- Repairs weren't done correctly.
- Your vehicle or exhaust system had been modified improperly.

If you ever suspect exhaust is coming into your vehicle:

- Drive it only with all the windows down to blow out any CO; and
- Have your vehicle fixed immediately.

## Running Your Engine While You Are Parked

It's better not to park with the engine running. But if you ever have to, here are some things to know.

### ⚠ CAUTION:

**Idling the engine with the climate control system off could allow dangerous exhaust into your vehicle. See the earlier Caution under "Engine Exhaust."**

**Also, idling in a closed-in place can let deadly carbon monoxide (CO) into your vehicle even if the fan is at the highest setting. One place this can happen is a garage. Exhaust — with CO — can come in easily. NEVER park in a garage with the engine running.**

**Another closed-in place can be a blizzard. See "Winter Driving" in the Index.**

### ⚠ CAUTION:

**It can be dangerous to get out of your vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in PARK (P) with the parking brake firmly set. Your vehicle can roll. Don't leave your vehicle when the engine is running unless you have to. If you've left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure your vehicle won't move, even when you're on fairly level ground, always set your parking brake and move the shift lever to PARK (P).**

Follow the proper steps to be sure your vehicle won't move. See *Shifting Into Park (P) on page 2-25.*

If you're pulling a trailer, see *Towing a Trailer on page 4-50.*

# Mirrors

## Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror with OnStar®, Compass and Temperature Display

Your vehicle may have this feature. When on, an electrochromic mirror automatically dims to the proper level to minimize glare from lights behind you after dark.



The mirror also includes a duel display in the upper right corner of the mirror face. The compass reading and the outside temperature will both appear in the display at the same time.

⏻ **(On/Off):** This is the on/off button.

## Temperature and Compass Display

Press the on/off button, located to the far left, briefly to turn the comp/temp display on or off.

If the display reads CAL, you will need to calibrate the compass. For more information on calibration, see below.

To adjust between Fahrenheit and Celsius do the following:

1. Press and hold the on/off button for approximately four seconds until either a flashing °F, or °C appears.
2. Press the button again to change the display to the desired unit of measurement. After approximately four seconds of inactivity, the new unit will be locked in and the compass/temperature display will return.

## Electrochromic Mirror Operation

The electrochromic (self dimming) mirror function is turned on automatically each time the ignition is started. To operate the electrochromic mirror do the following:

1. Make sure the green indicator light, located to the left of the on/off button, is lit. If it's not, press and hold the on/off button for approximately six seconds until the green light comes on, indicating that the mirror is in electrochromic (self dimming) mode.

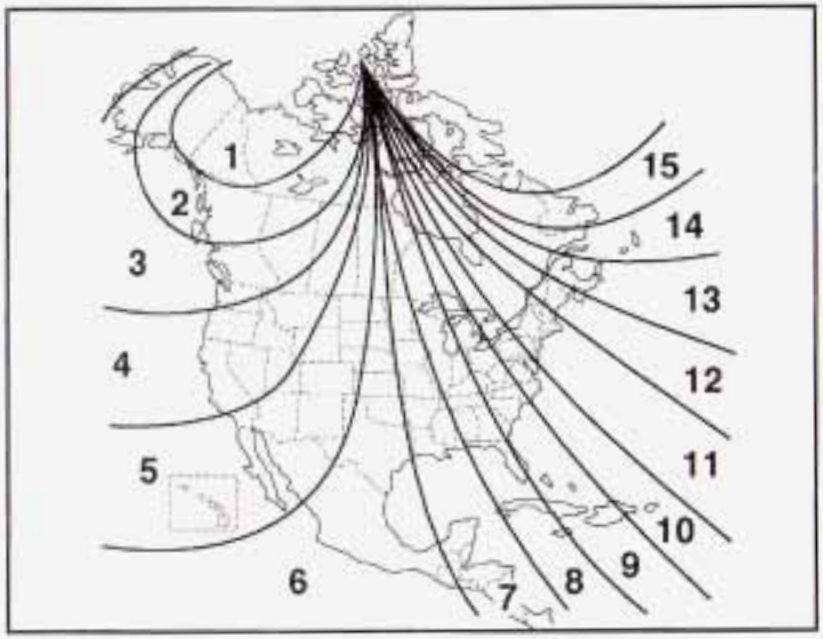
2. Turn off the electrochromic mirror function by pressing and holding the on/off button for approximately six seconds until the green indicator light turns off.

## Compass Variance

The mirror is set in zone eight upon leaving the factory. It will be necessary to adjust the compass to compensate for compass variance if you live outside of zone eight. Under certain circumstances, as during a long distance cross-country trip, it will be necessary to adjust for compass variance. Compass variance is the difference between earth's magnetic north and true geographic north. If not adjusted to account for compass variance, your compass could give false readings.

To adjust for compass variance do the following:

1. Find your current location and variance zone number on the following zone map.




2. Press and hold the on/off button until a Z and a zone number appears in the display. The compass is now in zone mode.
3. Keep pressing the on/off button until the desired zone number appears in the display. Release the button. After approximately four seconds of inactivity, the new zone number will be locked in and the comp/temp display will return.
4. Calibrate the compass as described below.

## Compass Calibration

The compass may need calibration if one of the following occurs:

- After approximately five seconds, the display does not show a compass heading (N for North, for example), there may be a strong magnetic field interfering with the compass. Such interference may be caused by a magnetic antenna mount, magnetic note pad holder or a similar magnetic item.
- The compass does not display the correct heading and the compass zone variance is set correctly.

In order to calibrate, CAL must be displayed in the mirror compass windows. If CAL is not displayed, push the on/off button for approximately 12 seconds or until CAL is displayed.

The compass can be calibrated by driving the vehicle in circles at 5 mph (8 km/h) or less until the display reads a direction.

## Passenger Air Bag Indicator

Your vehicle may be equipped with a passenger air bag indicator, on the mirror glass, just above the buttons. If your vehicle has this feature, the mirror will display the word ON, or an air bag symbol in Canada, when the passenger air bag is enabled. For more information, see *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-81.*

## Cleaning the Mirror

When cleaning the mirror, use a paper towel or similar material dampened with glass cleaner. Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror as that may cause the liquid cleaner to enter the mirror housing.

## Outside Power Mirrors



The controls are located on the driver's door armrest.

Move the upper selector switch to the left or right to choose the mirror you want to adjust; then press the dots located on the four-way control pad to adjust the mirror.

To fold or unfold the mirrors, move the selector switch, located above the mirror control, to the middle position. The mirror control will illuminate. Press the right or left side of the mirror control to fold or unfold the mirrors. You may notice the mirror glass adjust as the mirrors fold in; this is normal. The mirror glass will reposition itself once the mirrors are unfolded.

If the mirrors are accidently manually folded in, unfold them using the mirror controls. Do not unfold them manually.

The mirrors also include a memory function which works in conjunction with the memory seats. See *Memory Seat on page 2-47* for more information.

## Outside Convex Mirror

Your passenger's side mirror is convex. A convex mirror's surface is curved so you can see more from the driver's seat.

### ⚠ CAUTION:

**A convex mirror can make things (like other vehicles) look farther away than they really are. If you cut too sharply into the right lane, you could hit a vehicle on your right. Check your inside mirror or glance over your shoulder before changing lanes.**

## Outside Heated Mirrors

You vehicle may have this feature.



When you press this button, a defogger warms the heated driver's and passenger's outside rearview mirrors to help clear them of ice, snow and condensation.

Your vehicle's rear window defogger will also operate when you press this button. See "Rear Window Defogger" under *Electronic Climate Control System on page 3-22* for more information.

## Outside Automatic Dimming Mirror with Curb View Assist

The driver's outside mirror will adjust for the glare of the headlamps behind you. See *Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror with OnStar®, Compass and Temperature Display on page 2-30.*

Your vehicle's mirrors will also be capable of performing the curb view assist mirror function. This feature will cause the passenger's and/or driver's mirror to tilt to a preselected position when the vehicle is in REVERSE (R). This feature may be useful in allowing you to view the curb when you are parallel parking.

When the vehicle is shifted out of REVERSE (R) and a short delay has occurred, the passenger's and/or driver's mirror will return to its original position.

To change the preselected tilt position, adjust the mirrors to the desired position while the vehicle is in REVERSE (R). When the vehicle is shifted out of REVERSE (R), this new position is saved in memory as the tilt position.

This feature can be enabled/disabled through the Driver Information Center. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 3-47* for more information.

# OnStar® System



OnStar® uses global positioning system (GPS) satellite technology, wireless communications, and state of the art call centers to provide you with a wide range of safety, security, information and convenience services. An OnStar® subscription plan is included in the price of your vehicle. You can easily upgrade or extend your OnStar® services to meet your personal needs.

A complete OnStar® user's guide and the terms and conditions of the OnStar® Subscription Service Agreement are included in your OnStar® equipped vehicle's glove box literature. For more information, visit www.onstar.com, contact OnStar® at 1-888-4-ONSTAR (1-888-466-7827), or press the blue OnStar® button to speak to an OnStar® advisor 24 hours a day, 7 days a week.

## OnStar® Services

OnStar® provides a number of service plans to closely meet your needs. Some of the services currently provided by OnStar® are:

- Automatic Notification of Air Bag Deployment
- Emergency Services
- Roadside Assistance Stolen Vehicle Tracking
- AccidentAssist
- Remote Door Unlock
- Remote Diagnostics
- OnStar® MED-NET (Requires separate activation and annual fee on some plans)
- Online and Personal Concierge Services
- Route Support
- RideAssist
- Information and Convenience Services

## OnStar® Personal Calling

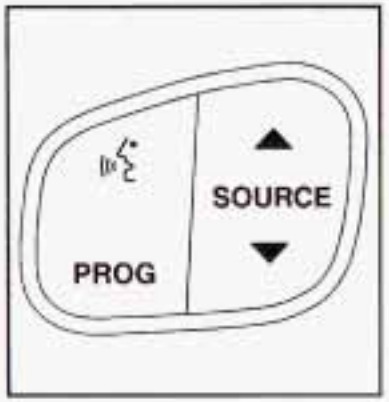
With OnStar® Personal Calling, you have a safer way to stay connected while driving. It's a hands-free wireless phone that's integrated into your vehicle. You can place calls nationwide using voice-activated dialing with no contracts, no roaming charges and no access fees. To find out more about OnStar® Personal Calling, refer to the OnStar® owner's guide in your vehicle's glove box, or call OnStar® at 1-888-4-ONSTAR (1-888-466-7827).

## OnStar® Virtual Advisor

With OnStar® Virtual Advisor you can listen to your favorite news, entertainment and information topics, such as traffic and weather reports, stock quotes and sports scores. You listen to your e-mail through your vehicle's speakers, and reply with your hands on the wheel and your eyes on the road.

A completed Subscription Service Agreement is required prior to delivery of OnStar® services and prepaid calling minutes are also required for OnStar® Personal Calling and OnStar® Virtual Advisor use. Terms and conditions of the Subscription Service Agreement can be found at www.onstar.com.

## OnStar® Steering Wheel Controls




: If your vehicle is equipped with the steering wheel control buttons you can use them to interact with the OnStar® system.

See the OnStar® manual provided with your vehicle for more information.

# HomeLink® Transmitter



HomeLink®, a combined universal transmitter and receiver, provides a way to replace up to three hand-held transmitters used to activate devices such as gate operators, garage door openers, entry door locks, security systems and home lighting. Additional HomeLink® information can be found on the internet at www.homelink.com or by calling 1-800-355-3515.

If your vehicle is equipped with the HomeLink® Transmitter, it complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes and modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

## Programming the HomeLink® Transmitter

Do not use the HomeLink® Transmitter with any garage door opener that does not have the "stop and reverse" feature. This includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982.

Keep the original transmitter for use in other vehicles as well as for future HomeLink® programming. It is also recommended that upon the sale of the vehicle, the programmed HomeLink® buttons should be erased for security purposes. Refer to "Erasing HomeLink® Buttons" or, for assistance, contact HomeLink® on the internet at: www.homelink.com or by calling 1-800-355-3515.

Be sure that people and objects are clear of the garage door or gate operator you are programming. When programming a garage door, it is advised to park outside of the garage.

It is recommended that a new battery be installed in your hand-held transmitter for quicker and more accurate transmission of the radio frequency.

Your vehicle's engine should be turned off while programming the transmitter. Follow these steps to program up to three channels:

1. Press and hold down the two outside buttons, releasing only when the indicator light begins to flash, after 20 seconds. Do not hold down the buttons for longer than 30 seconds and do not repeat this step to program a second and/or third transmitter to the remaining two HomeLink® buttons.
2. Position the end of your hand-held transmitter about 1 to 3 inches (3 to 8 cm) away from the HomeLink® buttons while keeping the indicator light in view.
3. Simultaneously press and hold both the desired button on HomeLink® and the hand-held transmitter button. Do not release the buttons until Step 4 has been completed.

   Some entry gates and garage door openers may require you to substitute Step 3 with the procedure noted in "Gate Operator and Canadian Programming" later in this section.
4. The indicator light will flash slowly at first and then rapidly after HomeLink® successfully receives the frequency signal from the hand-held transmitter. Release both buttons.
5. Press and hold the newly-trained HomeLink® button and observe the indicator light.

   If the indicator light stays on constantly, programming is complete and your device should activate when the HomeLink® button is pressed and released.

   To program the remaining two HomeLink® buttons, begin with Step 2 under "Programming HomeLink®." Do not repeat Step 1 as this will erase all of the programmed channels.

   If the indicator light blinks rapidly for two seconds and then turns to a constant light, continue with Steps 6 through 8 following to complete the programming of a rolling-code equipped device (most commonly, a garage door opener).
6. At the garage door opener receiver (motor-head unit) in the garage, locate the "Learn" or "Smart" button. This can usually be found where the hanging antenna wire is attached to the motor-head unit.
7. Firmly press and release the "Learn" or "Smart" button. The name and color of the button may vary by manufacturer.

   You will have 30 seconds to start Step 8.

8. Return to the vehicle. Firmly press and hold the programmed HomeLink® button for two seconds, then release. Repeat the press/hold/release sequence a second time, and depending on the brand of the garage door opener (or other rolling code device), repeat this sequence a third time to complete the programming.

   HomeLink® should now activate your rolling code equipped device.

To program the remaining two HomeLink® buttons, begin with Step 2 of "Programming HomeLink®." Do not repeat Step 1.

## Gate Operator and Canadian Programming

Canadian radio-frequency laws require transmitter signals to "time out" or quit after several seconds of transmission. This may not be long enough for HomeLink® to pick up the signal during programming. Similarly, some U.S. gate operators are manufactured to "time out" in the same manner.

If you live in Canada, or you are having difficulty programming a gate operator by using the "Programming HomeLink®" procedures (regardless of where you live), replace Step 3 under "Programming HomeLink®" with the following:

Continue to press and hold the HomeLink® button while you press and release every two seconds (cycle) your hand-held transmitter until the frequency signal has been successfully accepted by HomeLink®. The indicator light will flash slowly at first and then rapidly. Proceed with Step 4 under "Programming HomeLink®" to complete.

## Using HomeLink®

Press and hold the appropriate HomeLink® button for at least half of a second. The indicator light will come on while the signal is being transmitted.

## Erasing HomeLink® Buttons

To erase programming from the three buttons do the following:

1. Press and hold down the two outside buttons until the indicator light begins to flash, after 20 seconds.
2. Release both buttons. Do not hold for longer than 30 seconds.

HomeLink® is now in the train (learning) mode and can be programmed at any time beginning with Step 2 under "Programming HomeLink®."

Individual buttons can not be erased, but they can be reprogrammed. See "Reprogramming a Single HomeLink® Button" next.

## Reprogramming a Single HomeLink® Button

To program a device to HomeLink® using a HomeLink® button previously trained, follow these steps:

1. Press and hold the desired HomeLink® button. Do not release the button.
2. The indicator light will begin to flash after 20 seconds. While still holding the HomeLink® button, proceed with Step 2 under "Programming HomeLink®."

## Resetting Defaults

To reset HomeLink® to default settings do the following:

1. Hold down the two outside buttons for about 20 seconds until the indicator light begins to flash.
2. Continue to hold both buttons until the HomeLink® indicator light turns off.
3. Release both buttons.

For questions or comments, contact HomeLink® at 1-800-355-3515, or on the internet at www.homelink.com.

# Storage Areas

## Glove Box

To open your glove box, lift up the latch and pull the door open.

## Cupholder(s)

Your vehicle is equipped with cupholders for the front and rear passengers.

The cupholders are located in the center console for the front passengers and on the rear of the center console for the rear passengers.

To use the front cupholders, press down on the access door and release. The door will then open. Push the door back down to close it.

To use the rear cupholders, pull down on the door located on the back of the console.

## Center Console Storage Area

Your vehicle has a console compartment between the bucket seats.

To open it, press the button on the side of the console and swing the console lid open.

The console may be equipped with an accessory power outlet inside. See *Accessory Power Outlets on page 3-20*.

The rear of the console also has a cupholder that swings down for the rear seat passengers to use.

## Luggage Carrier

You can load things on top of your vehicle with this feature.

The luggage carrier has slats and siderails attached to the roof and crossrails which can be moved back and forth to help secure cargo. Tie the load to the siderails or siderail supports.

***Notice:*** **Loading cargo that weighs more than 200 lbs. (91 kg) on the luggage carrier may damage your vehicle. When you carry large things, never let them hang over the rear or the sides of your vehicle. Load your cargo so that it rests on the slats and does not scratch or damage the vehicle. Put the cargo against the side rails and fasten it securely to the luggage carrier. Put the main weight as far forward as you can.**

Don't exceed the maximum vehicle capacity when loading your vehicle. For more information on vehicle capacity and loading, see *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-48.*

To prevent damage or loss of cargo as you're leaving, check now and then to make sure the luggage and cargo are still securely fastened.

Be sure the cargo is properly loaded.

- If small heavy objects are placed on the roof, place the load in the area over the rear wheels (behind the rear side door on ESV models). If you need to, cut a piece of 3/8 inch plywood to fit inside the crossrails and siderails to spread the load. If plywood is used, tie it to the siderail supports.
- Tie the load to the crossrails or the siderail supports. Use the crossrails only to keep the load from sliding. To move the crossrails, loosen the release knob at each end. Slide the crossrail to the desired position balancing the force side to side. Tighten the release knobs and slide the crossrail back and forth slightly to be sure it is securely in place.
- If you need to carry long items, move the crossrails as far apart as they will go. Tie the load to the crossrails and the siderails or siderail supports. Do not tie the load so tightly that the crossrails or siderails are damaged.
- For the purpose of wind noise reduction, locate the front crossrail approximately 18 to 24 inches (46 to 58 cm) rearward of the front supports.
- After moving a crossrail, be sure it is securely locked into the siderail.

Your vehicle has a Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL) located above the rear glass. If items are loaded on the roof of the vehicle, care should be taken not to block or damage the CHMSL unit.

## Rear Storage Area

Your vehicle has a storage compartment located in the rear cargo area of the vehicle in the driver's side trim panel.

To open the compartment on standard models, press in on the release latch and swing the compartment door open.

To open the compartment on extended models, pull the latch to access the compartment.

## Rear Seat Armrest

Your vehicle's second row seat may have an armrest/storage compartment.

Pull the loop at the top of the armrest up and then out to lower the armrest.

To open the compartment, push the button on the front of the armrest and pull the top open.

## Convenience Net

The convenience net (if equipped) in the rear of your vehicle helps to keep small loads, like grocery bags, in place during sharp turns or quick stops and starts.

The net is not designed for larger, heavier items.

To install the net, attach the hooks to the raised cargo tie downs. Then, attach the cord loops to the button retainers in the side trim.

You can unhook the net so that it will lie flat when you're not using it.

## Cargo Cover

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**An improperly stored cargo cover could be thrown about the vehicle during a collision or sudden maneuver. You or others could be injured. If you remove the cover, always store it in the proper storage location. When you put it back, always be sure that is securely reattached.**

If you have a cargo cover, you can use it to cover items in the cargo area of your vehicle.

To use the cover, do the following:

1. Pull the cover handle toward the rear of the vehicle.
2. Latch the cover posts into the retaining sockets on the cargo area trim panels.

To return the cover to the retracted position, do the following:

1. Pull up on the cover handle to release the cover posts from the retaining sockets.
2. Let the cover move forward to the full retracted position.

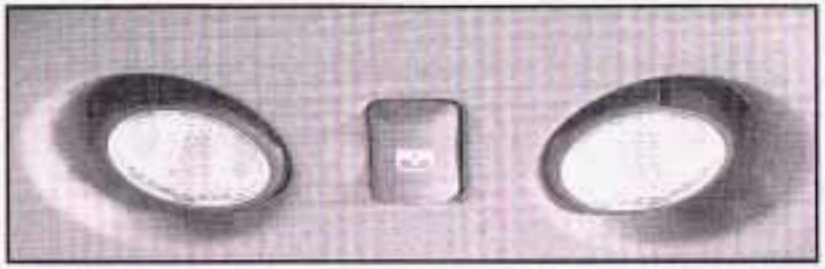
To remove the cover from the vehicle, do the following:

1. Let the cover go all the way into the holder.
2. Then, grasping the passenger's side cover endcap, push the cover endcap toward the driver's side of the vehicle. The endcap should lock in the compressed position.
3. Lift the cover up on the passenger's side, swing the cover rearward and take it out of the vehicle.

To put the cover in the vehicle, do the following:

1. Make sure the cover slot in the holder faces rearward with the round surface facing down.
2. Then, hold the cover at an angle and place the cover holder tab into the slot in the driver's side trim panel.
3. Move the other end of the cover forward and hold it next to the passenger's side trim panel slot.
4. Push the button on top of the passenger's side endcap. This will allow the cover to extend into the trim slot.
5. Lightly pull on the cover holder to make sure it is secure. On some models there are two slots. The slots furthest forward allow the cover to be used if the third seat is removed or folded down.

# Sunroof



Your vehicle may be equipped with a power sliding sunroof. To open or close your sunroof, the ignition needs to be on or RAP needs to be active. See "Retained Accessory Power" under *Ignition Positions on page 2-18*.

Press and release the rear side of the button located in the front overhead console to express-open the glass panel and sunshade. To close the glass panel, press and hold the front of the button. The glass will not be fully seated unless the button is held until the glass stops moving. With the sunroof closed, press the forward side of the button to open the sunroof to the vent position.

The sunroof is also equipped with a sunshade which you can pull forward to block sun rays.

If a hand, arm, or other object is blocking the sunroof glass panel as it is closing, the glass panel will stop at the obstruction. After the obstruction is removed, the glass panel can be closed or opened.

Use care not to leave the sunroof open for long periods of time as debris may collect in the tracks.

If the battery has been recharged, disconnected or is not working, you may need to reprogram the sunroof. To do this, start the vehicle and press the forward side of the sunroof button until the glass panel moves to a fully closed position. Release, and press again to move to the vent position which occurs when the sunroof is fully tilted rearward. This will reset the memory and enable the sunroof to function properly.

# Vehicle Personalization

## Memory Seat




If your vehicle has this feature, then the controls for the memory function are located on the driver's door.

These buttons are used to program and recall memory settings for the driver's seat, throttle and brake pedals, both the driver's and passenger's outside mirror, and the radio station presets. The settings for these features can be personalized for both driver 1 and driver 2. Driver 1 or driver 2 corresponds to the memory buttons labeled 1 and 2 on the driver's door and the numbers on the back of the remote keyless entry transmitters.

To store your memory seat, throttle and brake pedals, mirrors and radio presets, do the following:

1. Adjust the driver's seat (including the seatback recliner, lumbar, and side wing area), throttle and brake pedals, both of the outside mirrors, and the radio station presets to your preference.
2. Press and hold the 1 or 2 (for driver 1 or 2) button of the memory control for three seconds. A double chime will sound to let you know that the position has been stored.

To repeat the procedure for a second driver, follow the preceding steps, but press the other numbered memory control button.

Each time button 1 or 2 is pressed and released while the vehicle is in PARK (P), a single chime will sound and the memory position will be recalled.

If you use the unlock button on the remote keyless entry transmitter to enter your vehicle, the preset driver's seat, throttle and brake pedal, mirror positions and the radio station presets will be recalled if programmed to do so through the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-47.*
The numbers on the back of the transmitters, 1 or 2, correspond to the numbers on the memory controls.

The seat, throttle and brake pedals and mirror positions can also be recalled when placing the key in the ignition if programmed to do so through the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-47.*

To stop recall movement of the memory seat feature at any time, press one of the memory buttons or power seat controls.

## Easy Exit Seat

The controls for this memory function are located on the driver's door.

**(Easy Exit Seat):** This button is used to program and recall the desired driver's seat position when exiting/entering the vehicle. The seat position, can be personalized for both driver 1 and driver 2.

To store the seat exit position for driver 1 or 2, do the following:

1. Select the desired driver number by pressing and releasing the 1 or 2 button or by pressing the unlock button on the number 1 or 2 remote keyless entry transmitter. The seat will move to the stored memory position.
2. Adjust the seat to the desired exit position.
3. Press and hold the exit button of the memory control for three seconds. A double chime will sound to let you know that the position has been stored for the identified driver (1 or 2).

To use the seat exit position, do one of the following:

- Press the exit button on the memory control.
- Or, if this feature is enabled (active) in the DIC, then removing the key from the ignition will cause the seat to move to the exit position.

# Section 3 Instrument Panel


**Instrument Panel Overview** ..... 3-4
- Hazard Warning Flashers ..... 3-5
- Other Warning Devices ..... 3-6
- Horn ..... 3-6
- Tilt Wheel ..... 3-6
- Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever ..... 3-7
- Exterior Lamps ..... 3-13
- Interior Lamps ..... 3-16
- Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) ..... 3-18
- Accessory Power Outlets ..... 3-20
- Ashtrays and Cigarette Lighter ..... 3-21
- Analog Clock ..... 3-21

**Climate Controls** ..... 3-22
- Electronic Climate Control System ..... 3-22
- Outlet Adjustment ..... 3-27
- Rear Climate Control System ..... 3-28
- Climate Controls Personalization ..... 3-30

**Warning Lights, Gages and Indicators** ..... 3-31
- Instrument Panel Cluster ..... 3-32
- Speedometer and Odometer ..... 3-33
- Tachometer ..... 3-33
- Safety Belt Reminder Light ..... 3-33
- Air Bag Readiness Light ..... 3-34
- Passenger Air Bag Status Indicator ..... 3-34
- Charging System Light ..... 3-36
- Voltmeter Gage ..... 3-37
- Brake System Warning Light ..... 3-37
- Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Light ..... 3-38
- Traction Off Light ..... 3-39
- Engine Coolant Temperature Gage ..... 3-39
- Transmission Temperature Gage ..... 3-40
- Malfunction Indicator Lamp ..... 3-41
- Oil Pressure Gage ..... 3-43
- Security Light ..... 3-44
- Cruise Control Light ..... 3-45
- Tow/Haul Mode Light ..... 3-45
- Fuel Gage ..... 3-45
- Low Fuel Warning Light ..... 3-46

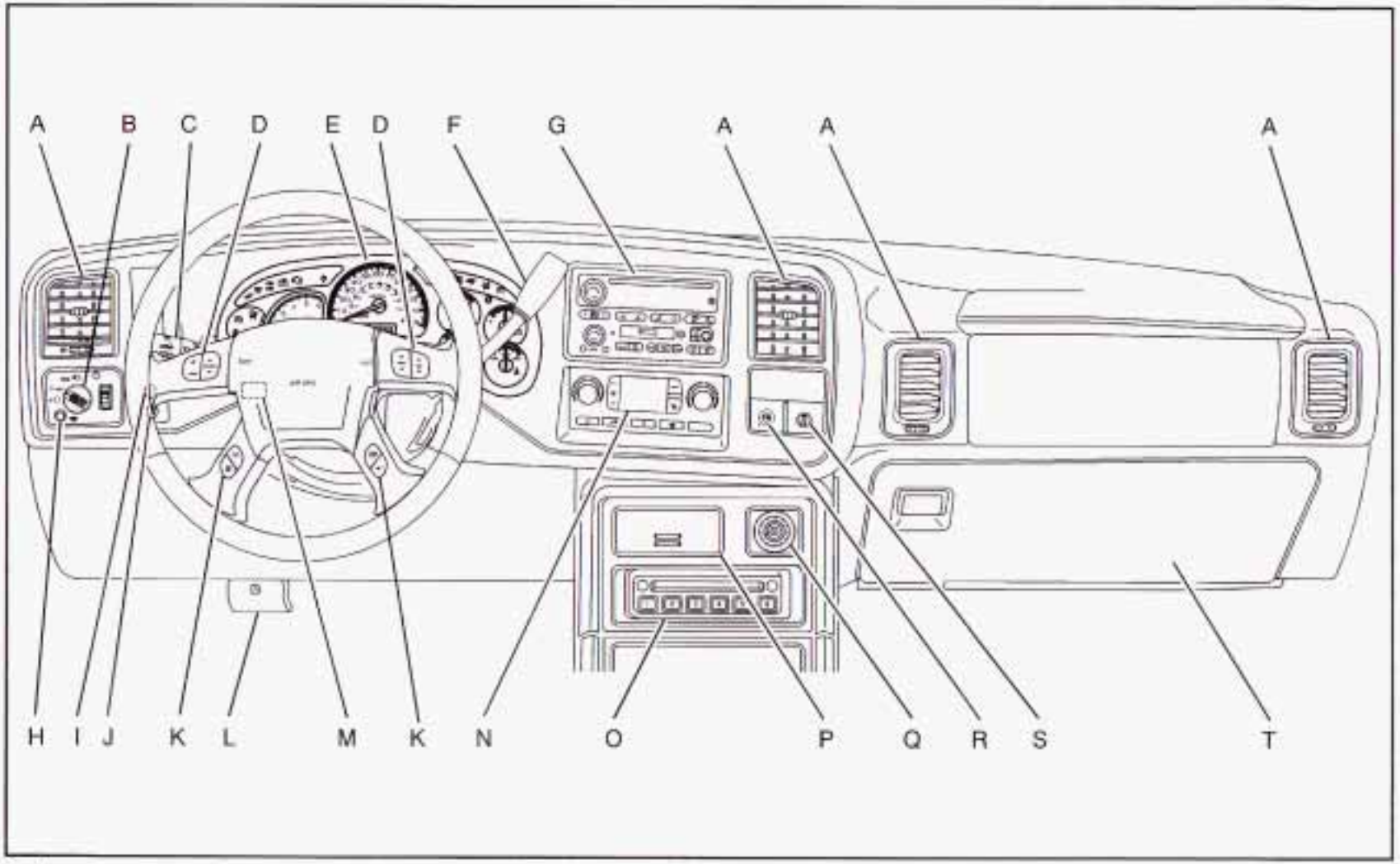
**Driver Information Center (DIC)** ..... 3-47
- DIC Operation and Displays ..... 3-47
- DIC Warnings and Messages ..... 3-56

# Section 3 Instrument Panel


**Audio System(s)** ..... 3-64
- Setting the Time ..... 3-64
- Radio with Cassette and CD ..... 3-65
- Rear Seat Entertainment System ..... 3-80
- Rear Seat Audio (RSA) ..... 3-91
- CD Changer ..... 3-93
- Theft-Deterrent Feature ..... 3-95
- Audio Steering Wheel Controls ..... 3-96
- DVD Distortion ..... 3-96
- Understanding Radio Reception ..... 3-97
- Care of Your Cassette Tape Player ..... 3-97
- Care of Your CDs and DVDs ..... 3-98
- Care of Your CD Changer ..... 3-98
- Care of Your CD and DVD Player ..... 3-98
- Cleaning the Video Screen ..... 3-99
- Diversity Antenna System ..... 3-99
- XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System ..... 3-99

## NOTES

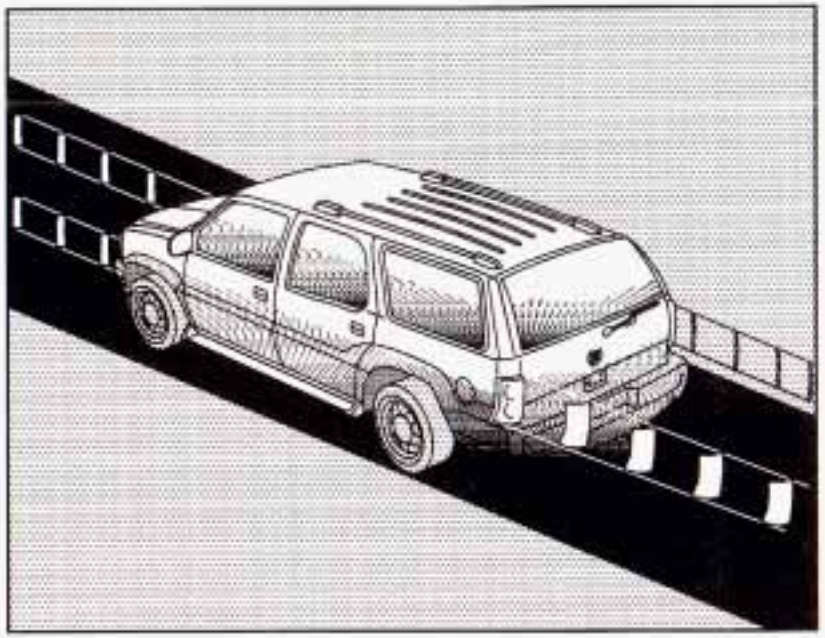
# Instrument Panel Overview



The main components of your instrument panel are the following:

A. Air Outlets
B. Exterior Lamps Control
C. Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever
D. OnStar® and Radio Steering Wheel Buttons
E. Instrument Panel Cluster
F. Shift Lever/Tow/Haul Selector Button
G. Audio System
H. Dome Override Button
I. Rear Wiper Washer
J. Fog Lamps Button
K. Driver Information Center (DIC) Buttons
L. Parking Brake Release
M. Tilt Lever
N. Comfort Control System
O. Compact Disc Changer
P. Storage Area
Q. Clock
R. Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist Button
S. StabiliTrak® Button
T. Glove Box

## Hazard Warning Flashers



Your hazard warning flashers let you warn others. They also let police know you have a problem. Your front and rear turn signal lamps will flash on and off.

But they won't flash if you're braking.



The hazard warning flasher button is located on the top of the steering column.

Your hazard warning flashers work no matter what position your key is in, and even if the key isn't in.

Press the button to make the front and rear turn signal lamps flash on and off. To turn the flashers off, press the button until the first click and release.

When the hazard warning flashers are on, your turn signals won't work.

## Other Warning Devices

If you carry reflective triangles, you can use them to warn others. Set one up at the side of the road about 300 feet (100 m) behind your vehicle.

## Horn

To sound the horn, press the center pad on the steering wheel.

## Tilt Wheel

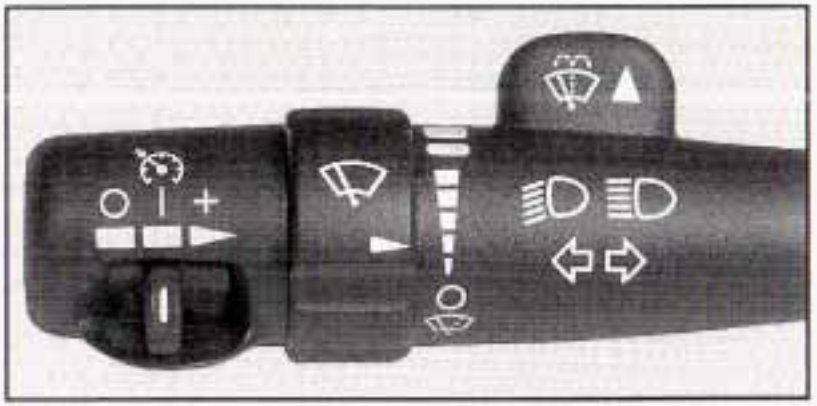
The tilt steering wheel allows you to adjust the steering wheel before you drive. You can raise it to the highest level to give your legs more room when you enter and exit the vehicle.



The tilt lever is located on the driver's side of the steering column under the turn signal lever.

To tilt the wheel, hold the steering wheel and pull the lever. Move the steering wheel to a comfortable level, then release the lever to lock the wheel in place.

## Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever



The lever on the left side of the steering column includes the following:

- Turn and Lane Change Signals
- Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer
- Flash-to-Pass
- Windshield Wipers
- Windshield Washer
- Cruise Control

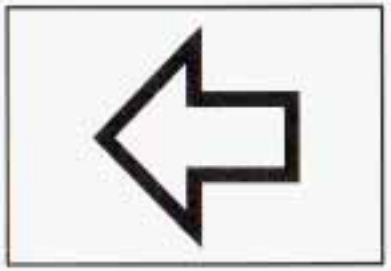
For information on the exterior lamps, see *Exterior Lamps on page 3-13.*

## Turn and Lane Change Signals

The turn signal has two upward (for right) and two downward (for left) positions. These positions allow you to signal a turn or a lane change.

To signal a turn, move the lever all the way up or down. When the turn is finished, the lever will return automatically.

To signal a lane change, just raise or lower the lever until the arrow starts to flash. Hold it there until you complete your lane change. The lever will return by itself when you release it.



An arrow on the instrument panel cluster will flash in the direction of the turn or lane change.

As you signal a turn or a lane change, if the arrows flash more quickly than normal, a signal bulb may be burned out and other drivers won't see your turn signal.

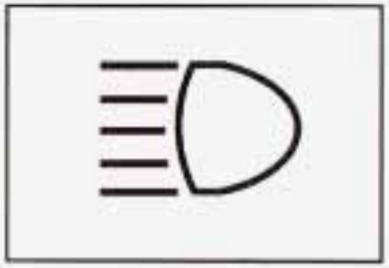
If a bulb is burned out, replace it to help avoid an accident. If the arrows don't go on at all when you signal a turn, check for burned-out bulbs and a blown fuse (see *Fuses and Circuit Breakers on page 5-100*).

## Turn Signal On Chime

If your turn signal is left on for more than 3/4 of a mile (1.2 km), a chime will sound at each flash of the turn signal and the message TURN SIGNAL ON will also appear in the DIC. To turn the chime and message off, move the turn signal lever to the off position.

## Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer

**(Headlamp High/Low Beam Changer):** To change the headlamps from low to high beam, push the lever toward the instrument panel. To return to low-beam headlamps, pull the multifunction lever toward you. Then release it.



When the high beams are on, this indicator light on the instrument panel cluster will also be on.

## Flash-to-Pass

This feature lets you use your high-beam headlamps to signal a driver in front of you that you want to pass. It works even if your headlamps are in the automatic position.

To use it, pull the turn signal lever toward you, then release it.

If your headlamps are in the automatic position or on low beam, your high-beam headlamps will turn on. They'll stay on as long as you hold the lever toward you. The high-beam indicator on the instrument panel cluster will come on. Release the lever to return to normal operation.

## Windshield Wipers

You control the windshield wipers by turning the band with the wiper symbol on it.

**(Mist):** For a single wiping cycle, turn the band to mist. Hold it there until the wipers start. Then let go. The wipers will stop after one wipe. If you want more wipes, hold the band on mist longer.

**(Delay):** You can set the wiper speed for a long or short delay between wipes. This can be very useful in light rain or snow. Turn the band to choose the delay time. The closer to the top of the lever, the shorter the delay.

**(Low Speed):** For steady wiping at low speed, turn the band away from you to the first solid band past the delay settings. For high-speed wiping, turn the band further, to the second solid band past the delay settings. To stop the wipers, move the band to off.

**(High Speed):** For high-speed wiping, turn the band further, to the second solid band past the delay settings.

**(Off):** To stop the wipers, move the band to off.

Be sure to clear ice and snow from the wiper blades before using them. If they're frozen to the windshield, carefully loosen or thaw them. If your blades do become worn or damaged, get new blades or blade inserts.

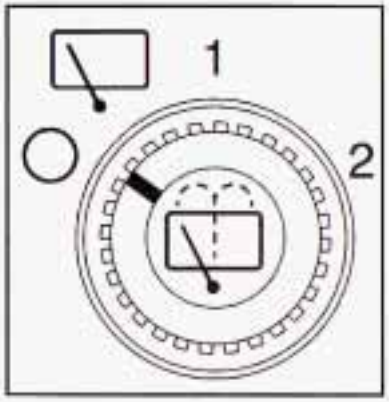
## Windshield Washer

**(Washer Fluid):** There is a paddle marked with the windshield washer symbol at the top of the multifunction lever. To spray washer fluid on the windshield, push the paddle. The wipers will clear the window and then either stop or return to your preset speed.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**In freezing weather, don't use your washer until the windshield is warmed. Otherwise the washer fluid can form ice on the windshield, blocking your vision.**

## Rear Window Washer/Wiper




This knob is located on the instrument panel to the left of the steering wheel.

To turn the rear wiper on, turn the knob to either 1 or 2. For long delayed wiping, turn the knob to 1. For short delayed wiping, turn the knob to 2

○ **(Off):** To turn the wiper off, turn the knob to this symbol.

**(Washer Fluid):** To wash the window, press the knob with this symbol.

The rear window washer uses the same fluid bottle as the windshield washer. However, the rear window washer will run out of fluid before the windshield washer. If you can wash your windshield but not your rear windows, check the fluid level.

## Cruise Control



○ **(Off):** This position turns the system off.

| **(On):** This position activates the system.

**+ (Resume/Accelerate):** Push the lever to this symbol to make the vehicle accelerate or resume to a previously set speed.

**(Set):** Press this button to set the speed.

With cruise control, you can maintain a speed of about 25 mph (40 km/h) or more without keeping your foot on the accelerator. This can really help on long trips. Cruise control does not work at speeds below about 25 mph (40 km/h).

If you apply your brakes, the cruise control will shut off.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

- Cruise control can be dangerous where you can't drive safely at a steady speed. So, don't use your cruise control on winding roads or in heavy traffic.
- Cruise control can be dangerous on slippery roads. On such roads, fast changes in tire traction can cause needless wheel spinning, and you could lose control. Don't use cruise control on slippery roads.

## Setting Cruise Control

**⚠ CAUTION:**

If you leave your cruise control on when you're not using cruise, you might hit a button and go into cruise when you don't want to. You could

CAUTION: (Continued)

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

be startled and even lose control. Keep the cruise control switch off until you want to use cruise control.

1. Move the cruise control switch to on.
2. Get up to the speed you want.
3. Press in the set button at the end of the lever and release it.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.



The CRUISE light on the instrument panel will illuminate when the cruise control is engaged.

## Resuming a Set Speed

Suppose you set your cruise control at a desired speed and then you apply the brake. This, of course, disengages the cruise control. But you don't need to reset it.

Once you're going about 25 mph (40 km/h) or more, you can move the cruise control switch briefly from on to resume/accelerate.

You'll go right back up to your chosen speed and stay there.

If you hold the switch at resume/accelerate the vehicle will keep going faster until you release the switch or apply the brake. So unless you want to go faster, don't hold the switch at resume/accelerate.

## Increasing Speed While Using Cruise Control

There are two ways to go to a higher speed:

- Use the accelerator pedal to get to the higher speed. Press the SET button at the end of the lever, then release the button and the accelerator pedal. You'll now cruise at the higher speed.
- Move the cruise switch from on to resume/accelerate. Hold it there until you get up to the speed you want, and then release the switch. To increase your speed in very small amounts, move the switch briefly to resume/accelerate. Each time you do this, your vehicle will go about 1 mph (1.6 km/h) faster.

## Reducing Speed While Using Cruise Control

- Press in the button at the end of the lever until you reach the lower speed you want, then release it.
- To slow down in very small amounts, briefly press the set button. Each time you do this, you'll go about 1 mph (1.6 km/h) slower.

## Passing Another Vehicle While Using Cruise Control

Use the accelerator pedal to increase your speed. When you take your foot off the pedal, your vehicle will slow down to the cruise control speed you set earlier.

## Using Cruise Control on Hills

How well your cruise control will work on hills depends upon your speed, load and the steepness of the hills. When going up steep hills, you may want to step on the accelerator pedal to maintain your speed. When going downhill, you may have to brake or shift to a lower gear to keep your speed down. Of course, applying the brake takes you out of cruise control. Many drivers find this to be too much trouble and don't use cruise control on steep hills.

## Ending Cruise Control

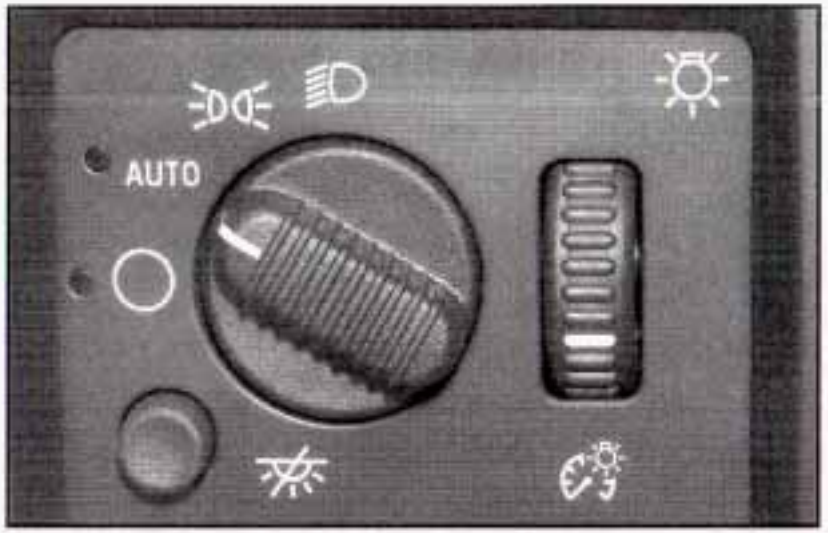
There are four ways to turn off the cruise control:

- Step lightly on the brake pedal,
- move the cruise control switch to off, or
- shift the transmission to NEUTRAL (N).
- If your vehicle has the Stabilitrak® feature, cruise control will deactivate if road conditions cause Stabilitrak® to activate.

## Erasing Speed Memory

When you turn off the cruise control or the ignition, your cruise control set speed memory is erased.

# Exterior Lamps




The control on the driver's side of your instrument panel operates the exterior lamps.

The exterior lamp control has four positions:

**AUTO:** Turn the control to this position to put the system into automatic headlamp mode. The Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) will also be activated if it is light enough outside. A light near the symbol will be lit when in this mode.

**(Off):** Turn the control to this position and release it to turn off all exterior lamps including the DRLs. A light near the symbol will be lit when in this mode. To turn the lamps back on when in this mode, turn the switch to the headlamp mode. The off mode will cancel when the vehicle is turned off. This mode is not available for vehicles first sold in Canada.

**(Parking Lamps):** Turn the control to this position to turn on the parking lamps, together with the following:

- Parking Lamps
- Sidemarker Lamps
- Taillamps
- License Plate Lamps
- Instrument Panel Lights

**(Headlamps):** Turn the control to this position to turn on the headlamps, together with the previously listed lamps and lights.

When the vehicle is turned off and the headlamps are in AUTO, the headlamps may automatically remain on for a set time. You can change this delay time using the DIC. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 3-47.*

You can switch your headlamps from low to high-beam by pushing the turn signal/multifunction lever toward the instrument panel.

## Automatic Headlamp System

When it is dark enough outside and the headlamp switch is in AUTO, your automatic headlamp system will turn on your headlamps at the normal brightness along with other lamps such as the taillamps, sidemarker, parking lamps, roof marker lamps and the instrument panel lights. The radio lights will also be dim.

To turn off the automatic headlamp system, turn the exterior lamps switch to the off position and then release.

Your vehicle has a light sensor located on the top of the instrument panel. Be sure it is not covered, or the system will be on whenever the ignition is on.

The system may also turn on your headlamps when driving through a parking garage, heavy overcast weather or a tunnel. This is normal.

There is a delay in the transition between the daytime and nighttime operation of the Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) and the automatic headlamp systems so that driving under bridges or bright overhead street lights does not affect the system. The DRL and automatic headlamp system will only be affected when the light sensor sees a change in lighting lasting longer than the delay.

If you start your vehicle in a dark garage, the automatic headlamp system will come on immediately. Once you leave the garage, it will take approximately one minute for the automatic headlamp system to change to DRL if it is light outside. During that delay, your instrument panel cluster may not be as bright as usual. Make sure your instrument panel brightness control is in the full bright position. See "Instrument Panel Brightness" under *Interior Lamps on page 3-16*.

## Lamps On Reminder

If a door is open, a reminder chime will sound when your headlamps or parking lamps are manually turned on and your key is out of the ignition. To turn off the chime, turn the headlamp switch to off or AUTO and then back on. In the automatic mode, the headlamps turn off once the ignition is in LOCK and the headlamps on at exit delay ends (if enabled in the DIC).

## Daytime Running Lamps

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day. DRL can be helpful in many different driving conditions, but they can be especially helpful in the short periods after dawn and before sunset. Fully functional daytime running lamps are required on all vehicles first sold in Canada.

The DRL system will come on when the following conditions are met:

- The ignition is on,
- the exterior lamps control is in AUTO,
- the transmission is not in PARK (P), and
- the light sensor determines it is daytime.

When the DRL are on, only your DRL lamps will be on. The taillamps, sidemarker and other lamps won't be on. The instrument panel won't be lit up either.

When it begins to get dark, the automatic headlamp system will switch from DRL to the headlamps.

As with any vehicle, you should turn on the regular headlamp system when you need it.

## Puddle Lamps

Your vehicle is equipped with puddle lamps to help you see the area near the base of the front doors when it is dark out. The puddle lamps will illuminate when a door is opened or when you press the unlock button on the keyless entry transmitter. The lamps will time out or turn off once the engine is started.

## Fog Lamps

Use the fog lamps for better vision in foggy or misty conditions. Your parking lamps and/or low-beam headlamps must be on for your fog lamps to work.



The fog lamp button is located on the left side of your instrument panel.

Press the button to turn the fog lamps on while the headlamps or parking lamps are on. Press the button again to turn them off. An indicator light will glow near the button when the fog lamps are on.

Remember, fog lamps alone will not give off as much light as your headlamps. Never use your fog lamps in the dark without turning on the headlamps.

The fog lamps will go off whenever your high-beam headlamps come on. When the high beams go off, the fog lamps will come on again.

The fog lamps will be cancelled after the ignition is turned off. If you still want to use the fog lamps after you restart the vehicle, you will need to press the fog lamp button again.

# Interior Lamps

## Instrument Panel Brightness

The thumbwheel for this feature is located next to the exterior lamps control.

**(Instrument Panel Lights):** Turn the thumbwheel, located next to the exterior lamps control, up or down to brighten or dim the instrument panel lights and the radio display. This will only work if the headlamps or parking lamps are on.

To turn on the dome lamps, with the vehicle doors closed, turn the thumbwheel all the way up.

## Dome Lamps

The dome lamps will come on when you open a door and will slowly dim to off when all doors are closed.

You can also turn the dome lamps on by turning the thumbwheel, located next to the exterior lamp control, all the way up. In this position, the dome lamps will remain on whether a door is opened or closed.

**(Dome Override):** Press this button, located below the exterior lamp control, to set the dome lamps to come on automatically when a door is opened, or remain off. To turn the lamps off, press the button into the in position. With the button in this position, the dome lamps will remain off when the doors are open. To return the lamps to automatic operation, press the button again and return it to the out position. With the button in this position, the dome lamps will come on when you open a door.

## Entry Lighting

Your vehicle is equipped with an illuminated entry feature.

When a door is opened, the dome lamps and puddle lamps will come on if the dome override button is in the out position. If the dome override button is pressed in, the lamps will not come on.

## Exit Lighting

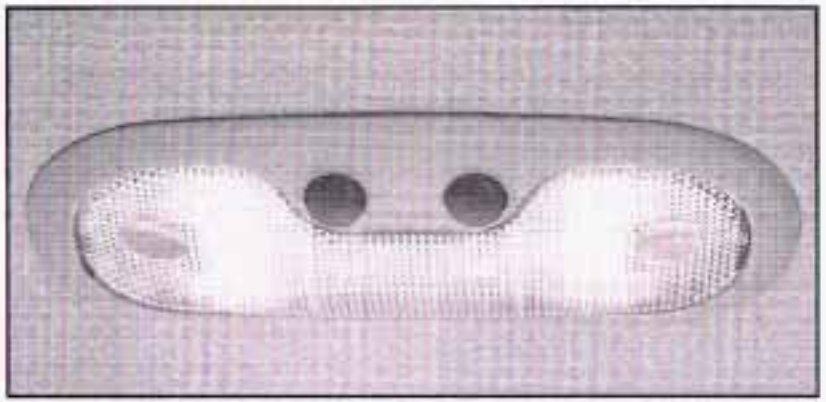
With exit lighting, the interior lamps will come on when you remove the key from the ignition. The lamps will not come on if the dome override button is pressed in.

## Reading Lamps



If your vehicle has reading lamps, press the button located next to the lamp to turn it on. The lamps can be adjusted to point in the direction you want.

Press the button again to turn the lamp off.



Your vehicle may also have reading lamps in other locations. To turn on or off, press the button located next to the lamp. The lamps are fixed and cannot be adjusted.

## Battery Run-Down Protection

This feature shuts off the dome, reading, glove box and underhood lamps if they are left on for more than 20 minutes when the ignition is in lock. This will keep your battery from running down.

## Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA)

Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist can help you to determine how close an object is to your rear bumper within a given area, making parking easier.



The URPA display is located inside the vehicle, on the passenger's side rear upper trim panel. It has three color-coded lights that can be seen through the rearview mirror or by turning around.



URPA can be disabled by pressing the URPA on/off button located near the climate control system and radio.

## ⚠ CAUTION:

**If children, someone on a bicycle, or pets are behind your vehicle, URPA won't tell you they are there. You could strike them and they could be injured or killed. Whether or not you are using URPA, check carefully behind your vehicle and then watch closely whenever you back up.**

## How the System Works

URPA comes on automatically when the shift lever is moved into REVERSE (R) and the vehicle speed is less than 3 mph (5 km/h). When the system comes on, the three lights on the display will illuminate to let you know that the system is working. URPA senses how close your vehicle is to an object. The distance is determined by the four ultrasonic sensors located on the rear bumper. When you shift into REVERSE (R) and an object is detected, the following will occur in sequence depending on the distance from the object:

- At 5 feet (1.5 m) a chime will sound and one amber light will be lit;
- at 40 inches (1.0 m) both amber lights will be lit;
- at 20 inches (0.5 m) a continuous chime will sound and all three lights (amber/amber/red) will be lit; and
- at 1 foot (0.3 m) a continuous chime will sound and all three lights (amber/amber/red) will flash.

URPA can detect objects 3 inches (7.6 cm) and wider, and at least 10 inches (25.4 cm) tall, but it cannot detect objects that are above the center of the Cadillac crest badge on the liftgate. In order for the rear sensors to recognize an object, it must be within operating range.

### If the URPA Display Flashes Red

If the URPA system is not functioning properly, the display will flash red, indicating that there is a problem. The light will also flash red while driving if any of the following conditions exist:

- A trailer or trailer-hitch ball mount is attached to your vehicle.
- A bicycle or object is on the back of, or hanging out the cargo area.
- If your vehicle is moving in REVERSE (R) at a speed greater than 3 mph (5 km/h).

The light will continue to flash until the trailer or the object is removed and your vehicle is driven forward at least 15 mph (25 km/h).

It may also flash red if the ultrasonic sensors are not kept clean.

So be sure to keep your rear bumper free of mud, dirt, snow, ice and slush or materials such as paint or the system may not work properly. If after cleaning the rear bumper and driving forward at least 15 mph (25 km/h), the display continues to flash red, see your dealer. For cleaning instructions, see *Cleaning the Outside of Your Vehicle on page 5-93.*

Other conditions that may affect system performance include things like the vibrations from a jackhammer or the compression of air brakes on a very large truck.

As always, drivers should use care when backing up a vehicle. Always look behind you, being sure to check for other vehicles, obstructions and blind spots.

## Accessory Power Outlets

With accessory power outlets you can plug in auxiliary electrical equipment such as a cellular telephone or CB radio.

Your vehicle is equipped with many accessory power outlets.

One outlet is located in the center console. Press the button on the side of the console door to access the outlet.

There may also be accessory power outlets located on the back of the center console above the cupholder and in the rear cargo area on the passenger side.

Do not try to put the cigarette lighter in any of the accessory outlets.

***Notice:*** **Adding some electrical equipment to your vehicle can damage it or keep other things from working as they should. This wouldn't be covered by your warranty. Check with your dealer before adding electrical equipment, and never use anything that exceeds the amperage rating.**

Certain power accessory plugs may not be compatible with the accessory power outlets and could result in blown vehicle or adapter fuses. If you experience a problem, see your dealer for additional information on the accessory power plugs.

***Notice:*** **Power outlets are designed for accessory plugs only. Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug. Improper use of the power outlet can cause damage not covered by your warranty.**

## Ashtrays and Cigarette Lighter

The front ashtray and lighter are located in the center console near the cupholders. Press on the access door to open it and use the ashtray and lighter.

***Notice:*** **Don't put papers or other flammable items into your ashtrays. Hot cigarettes or other smoking materials could ignite them, causing a damaging fire.**

To remove the ashtray, pull it from the center console. Slide it back in and push down to be sure it is secure.

To use the cigarette lighter, push it in all the way, and let go. When it's ready, it will pop back out by itself.

***Notice:*** **Don't hold a cigarette lighter in with your hand while it is heating. If you do, it won't be able to back away from the heating element when it's ready. That can make it overheat, damaging the lighter and the heating element.**

## Analog Clock

To adjust the clock, do the following:

1. Locate the adjustment button to the lower left corner of the clock.
2. Push and hold the adjustment button to spin the clock hands. Release the button *before* you get to the desired time.
3. Push and release the button to increase the time by one minute increments until the desired time is reached.

# Climate Controls

## Electronic Climate Control System

With this system, you can control the heating, cooling and ventilation in your vehicle. Your vehicle also has a flow-through ventilation system described later in this section.



You can select different comfort control settings for the driver and passengers.

### Driver's Side Temperature Knob

The driver's side knob is used to adjust the temperature of the air coming through the system on the driver's side. The temperature can be adjusted even if the system is turned off. This is possible since outside air will always flow through the system as the vehicle is moving forward unless it is set to recirculation mode. See "Recirculation" later in this section.

Turn the knob counterclockwise or clockwise to lower or increase the cabin temperature. The display will show the temperature setting decreasing or increasing and an arrow pointing to the driver will be displayed under and to the left of the temperature setting.

### Passenger's Side Temperature Knob

The passenger's side knob can be used to change the temperature of the air coming through the system on the passenger's side of the vehicle. The temperature can be adjusted even if the system is turned off. This is possible since outside air will always flow through the system as the vehicle is moving forward unless it is set to recirculation mode. See "Recirculation" later in this section.

Turn the knob counterclockwise or clockwise to lower or increase the cabin temperature. The display will show the temperature setting decreasing or increasing and an arrow pointing to the passenger will be displayed under and to the right of the temperature setting.

The passenger's temperature setting can be set to match the driver's temperature setting by pressing and holding the AUTO button for four seconds. Both the driver and passenger arrows will be displayed.

## Automatic Operation

**AUTO (Automatic):** When automatic operation is active the system will control the inside temperature, the air delivery, and the fan speed.

○ **(Off):** Press this button to turn off the entire climate control system. Outside air will still enter the vehicle, and will be directed to the floor. This direction can be changed by pressing the mode button. The temperature can also be adjusted using either temperature knob. Press the up or down arrows on the fan switch, the defrost button, the AUTO button, or the air conditioning button to turn the system on when it is off.

Use the steps below to place the entire system in automatic mode:

1. Press the AUTO button.

   When AUTO is selected, the display will change to show the current driver's set temperature, delivery mode and fan speed. Press the AUTO button again within five seconds to display the passenger's set temperature.

   If the driver and passenger's temperature settings are not the same, the opposite side temperature setting will be displayed for an additional five seconds. To make the passenger's temperature the same as the driver's press and hold the AUTO button for approximately four seconds.

   When auto is selected, the air conditioning operation and air inlet will be automatically controlled. The air conditioning compressor will run when the outside temperature is over approximately 40°F (4°C). The air inlet will normally be set to outside air. If it's hot outside, the air inlet may automatically switch to recirculate inside air to help quickly cool down your vehicle. The light on the button will illuminate in recirculation.

2. Set the driver's and passenger's temperature.

   To find your comfort setting, start with a 74°F (23°C) temperature setting and allow about 20 minutes for the system to regulate. Turn the driver's or passenger's side temperature knob to adjust the temperature setting as necessary. If you choose the temperature setting of 60°F (15°C) the system will remain at the maximum cooling setting. If you choose the temperature setting of 90°F (32°C) the system will remain at the maximum heat setting. Choosing either maximum setting will not cause the vehicle to heat or cool any faster.

   Be careful not to cover the sensor located on the top of the instrument panel near the windshield. This sensor regulates air temperature based on sun load, and also turns on your headlamps.

   To avoid blowing cold air in cold weather, the system will delay turning on the fan until warm air is available. The length of delay depends on the engine coolant temperature. Pressing the fan switch will override this delay and change the fan to a selected speed.

## Manual Operation

You may manually adjust the air delivery mode or fan speed.

**(Off):** Press this button to turn off the entire climate control system. Outside air will still enter the vehicle, and will be directed to the floor. This direction can be changed by pressing the mode button. The temperature can also be adjusted using either temperature knob. Press the up or down arrows on the fan switch, the defrost button, the AUTO button, or the air conditioning button to turn the system on when it is off.

**(Fan):** The switch with the fan symbol allows you to manually adjust the fan speed. Press the up arrow to increase fan speed and the down arrow to decrease fan speed.

Pressing this button when the system is off will turn the system on.

**(Mode):** Press this button to manually change the direction of the airflow in your vehicle; keep pressing the button until the desired mode appears on the display.

If you press the mode button to select an air delivery mode, the display will change to show you the selected air mode delivery. The display will then show the current status of the system. When the system is turned off, the display will go blank after displaying the current status of the system.

**(Panel):** This setting will deliver air to the instrument panel outlets.

**(Bi-Level):** This setting will deliver warmer air to the floor and cooler air to the instrument panel outlets.

**(Floor):** This setting will deliver air to the floor outlets.

**(Defog):** See "Defogging and Defrosting" later in this section.

**(Recirculation):** Press this button to limit the amount of outside air entering your vehicle. The light on the recirculation button will glow. This is helpful when you are trying to limit odors entering your vehicle and for maximum air conditioning performance in hot weather. Press this button again to allow outside air to enter the vehicle. The light on the recirculation button will go off.

Pressing this button cancels the auto recirculation feature. To resume the auto recirculation function, press the AUTO button. Each time the vehicle is started, the system will revert to the auto recirculation function.

If you select recirculation while in defrost, defog or floor, the light on the button will flash and go out to let you know this is not allowed. This is to prevent fogging.

When the weather is cool or damp, operating the system in recirculation for extended periods of time may cause fogging of the vehicle's windows. To clear the fog, select either defog or front defrost. Be sure A/C off is not selected. You will want to allow the air conditioning to run automatically to help dehumidify the air.

## Display

If you press the MODE button to select an air delivery mode, the display will change to show you the selected air delivery mode. After ten seconds, the display will change to show the driver temperature setting and the selected mode.

If you press the up or down arrows on the fan switch, the display will change to show the selected fan speed. After ten seconds, the display will change to show the driver temperature setting and the selected mode.

Whenever you press AUTO, the display will change to show the following:

- the current driver's set temperature and an arrow for five seconds,
- the current passenger's set temperature setting and an arrow for five seconds and
- the automatic air delivery mode and fan speed.

If the driver's and passenger's temperature settings are the same when AUTO is pressed, the temperature setting and both arrows will be displayed for five seconds along with the automatic air delivery mode and fan speed. After the five second update, the display will change to show the temperature setting, both arrows and AUTO.

## Air Conditioning

**(Air Conditioning):** Press this button to turn the air conditioning compressor on and off.

**(Air Conditioning Off):** When you turn the air conditioning off, this symbol will appear on the display.

When air conditioning is selected or in AUTO mode, the system will run the air conditioning automatically to cool and dehumidify the air entering the vehicle. If you select A/C off while in front defrost or defog, the A/C off symbol will flash to let you know this is not allowed. This is to prevent fogging.

On hot days, open the windows long enough to let hot inside air escape. This reduces the time it takes for your vehicle to cool down. Then keep your windows closed for the air conditioner to work its best.

On cool, but sunny days while using manual operation of the automatic system, use bi-level to deliver warm air to the floor and cooler air to the instrument panel outlets. To warm or cool the air delivered, turn the temperature knob to the desired setting.

In AUTO mode the system will cool and dehumidify the air inside the vehicle. Also while in AUTO mode, the system will maximize its performance by using recirculation as necessary.

## Heating

On cold days when using manual operation of the automatic system, choose floor mode to deliver air to the floor outlets. To warm or cool the air delivered, turn the temperature knob to the desired setting.

If you want to use the automatic mode, press AUTO and adjust the temperature by turning the temperature knob.

The heater works best if you keep the windows closed while using it.

## Defogging and Defrosting

You can use either defog or front defrost to clear fog or frost from your windshield. Use the defog mode to clear the windows of fog or moisture. Use the front defrost button to defrost the front windshield.

**(Defog):** Use this setting to clear the windows of fog or moisture. Press the mode button to select this setting. This setting will deliver air to the floor and windshield outlets.

**(Front Defrost):** Press the front defrost button to defrost the windshield. The system will automatically control the fan speed if you select defrost from AUTO mode. If the outside temperature is 40°F (4°C) or warmer, your air conditioning compressor will automatically run to help dehumidify the air and dry the windshield.

## Rear Window Defogger

The lines you see on the rear window warm the glass. The rear window defogger uses a warming grid to remove fog from the rear window.

**(Rear):** Press this button to turn the rear window defogger on or off. An indicator light in the button will come on to let you know that the rear window defogger is activated.

The rear window defogger will turn off approximately 10 minutes after the button is pressed. If you need additional warming time, press the button again.

If your vehicle is equipped with heated mirrors this button will activate them.

***Notice:*** **Don't use a razor blade or something else sharp on the inside of the rear window. If you do, you could cut or damage the defogger and the repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Do not attach a temporary vehicle license, tape, a decal or anything similar to the defogger grid.**

## Outlet Adjustment

Use the air outlets located in the center and on the side of your instrument panel to direct the airflow.

Your vehicle has air outlets that allow you to adjust the direction and amount of airflow inside the vehicle. Move the louvers up or down. Use the thumbwheel next to or underneath the outlet to close the louvers. For the most efficient airflow and temperature control, keep the outlet in the fully opened position.

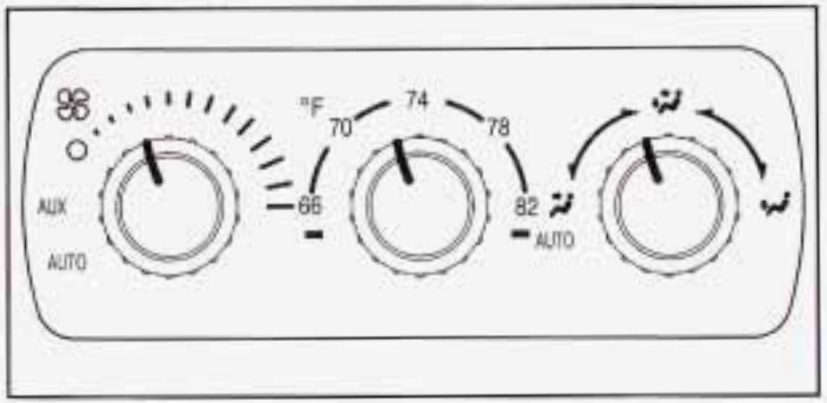
### Operation Tips

- Keep the hood and front air inlets free of ice, snow, or any other obstruction (such as leaves). The heater and defroster will work far better, reducing the chance of fogging the inside of your windows.
- Keep the air path under the front seats clear of objects. This helps air to circulate throughout your vehicle.
- Adding outside equipment to the front of your vehicle, such as hood-air deflectors, etc., may affect the performance of the heating and air conditioning system. Check with your dealer before adding equipment to the outside of your vehicle.

## Rear Climate Control System

With this system the front or rear passengers can control the air temperature, air flow and fan speed for the rear seat passengers. The climate control has an overhead control near the driver and a control on the back of the center console.

### Driver Overhead Control




**Front Controls**

To control the rear climate control from the front seat position, use the driver overhead control. The rear console control must be on.

**AUX:** Turn the knob, located on the left side of the control panel, to this position to allow the rear seat passengers to have control over the rear climate control system. See "Rear Passenger Console Control" later for more information.

**(Off):** Turn the knob, located on the left side of the control panel, to this position to turn the rear climate control system off.

**(Fan):** To adjust the airflow speed, turn the fan knob located on the left side of the control panel to the desired setting. Choose AUTO if you want the system to automatically choose the fan speed to maintain a selected temperature. See "Auto Mode" later in this section for more information on using this feature.

**°F (°C):** To adjust the air temperature, turn the temperature knob on the center of the control panel. For cooler or warmer air turn the knob counterclockwise toward 66°F (19°C) or clockwise toward 82°F (27°C).

To regulate the airflow direction, adjust the right knob on the control panel. Turn the knob clockwise for floor vent airflow or counterclockwise for headliner vent airflow. Generally, the upper vents are used for air conditioning and the floor vents for heating. The knob can be set to any blend setting. Choose AUTO if you want the system to automatically regulate the airflow. See "Auto Mode" later in this section for more information on using this feature.

## Rear Passenger Console Control

To control the rear climate control from the rear passenger seat position, use the rear passenger console control. The driver overhead control fan knob must be set to the AUX position.




**Rear Controls**

The rear seat controls have the following settings:

**(On/Off):** Press this button to turn the rear seat comfort controls on or off when the front overhead control is set to AUX.

**(Mode):** Press this button to select the air delivery mode and AUTO mode. Choose AUTO if you want the system to automatically regulate the airflow. See "Auto Mode" later in this section for more information on using this feature.

**(Temperature):** Press this button up or down to increase or decrease the temperature setting.

**(Fan):** Press this button up or down to adjust the fan speed. Choose AUTO if you want the system to automatically choose the fan speed to maintain a selected temperature. See "Auto Mode" later in this section for more information on using this feature.

### AUTO Mode

When using the system in auto mode, find your comfort setting by placing the temperature control to 74°F (23°C) and allowing about 20 minutes for the system to regulate. Then adjust the temperature setting as necessary. If you choose full cold 60° F (15°C), the system will remain at the maximum cooling setting. If you choose full hot 90 F (32°C), the system will remain at the maximum heat setting.

## Climate Controls Personalization

You can store and recall the climate control settings for temperature, air delivery mode and fan speed for two different drivers. The personal choice settings recalled are determined by the transmitter used to enter the vehicle.

After the button with the unlock symbol on a remote keyless entry transmitter is pressed, the climate control will adjust to the last settings of the identified driver. The settings can also be changed by pressing one of the memory buttons (1 or 2) located on the driver's door. When adjustments are made, the new settings are automatically saved for that driver.

# Warning Lights, Gages and Indicators

This part describes the warning lights and gages on your vehicle. The pictures will help you locate them.

Warning lights and gages can signal that something is wrong before it becomes serious enough to cause an expensive repair or replacement. Paying attention to your warning lights and gages could also save you or others from injury.

Warning lights come on when there may be or is a problem with one of your vehicle's functions. As you will see in the details on the next few pages, some warning lights come on briefly when you start the engine just to let you know they're working. If you are familiar with this section, you should not be alarmed when this happens.

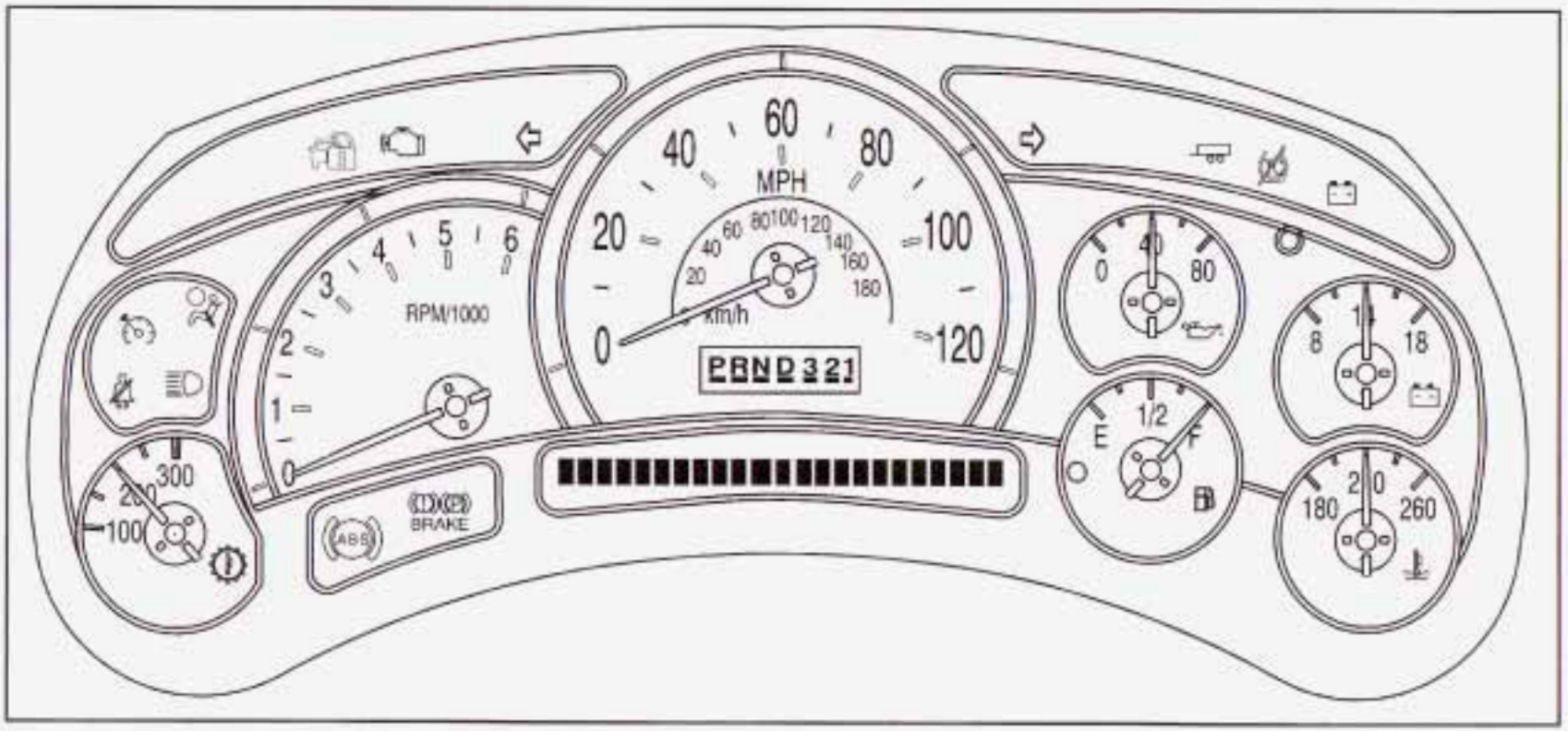
Gages can indicate when there may be or is a problem with one of your vehicle's functions. Often gages and warning lights work together to let you know when there's a problem with your vehicle.

When one of the warning lights comes on and stays on when you are driving, or when one of the gages shows there may be a problem, check the section that tells you what to do about it. Please follow this manual's advice. Waiting to do repairs can be costly – and even dangerous. So please get to know your warning lights and gages. They're a big help.

Your vehicle also has a message center that works along with the warning lights and gages. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 3-47.*

# Instrument Panel Cluster

Your instrument panel cluster is designed to let you know at a glance how your vehicle is running. You'll know how fast you're going, about how much fuel you have and many other things you'll need to know to drive safely and economically.




**United States version shown, Canada similar.**

## Speedometer and Odometer

Your speedometer lets you see your speed in both miles per hour (mph) and kilometers per hour (km/h).

Your vehicle's odometer works together with the driver information center. You can set a personal trip and business trip odometer. See "Trip Information" under *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-47.*

The odometer mileage can be checked without the vehicle running. Simply press the trip stem on the instrument panel cluster.

If your vehicle ever needs a new odometer installed, the new one will be set to the correct mileage total of the old odometer.

## Tachometer

Your tachometer displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm).

***Notice:*** **Do not operate the engine with the tachometer in the shaded warning area, or engine damage may occur.**

## Safety Belt Reminder Light

When the key is turned to RUN or START, a chime will come on for several seconds to remind people to fasten their safety belts, unless the driver's safety belt is already buckled.



The safety belt light will also come on and stay on for several seconds, then it will flash for several more.

If the driver's belt is already buckled, neither the chime nor the light will come on.

## Air Bag Readiness Light

There is an air bag readiness light on the instrument panel, which shows the air bag symbol. The system checks the air bag's electrical system for malfunctions. The light tells you if there is an electrical problem. The system check includes the air bag sensors, the air bag modules, the wiring and the crash sensing and diagnostic module. For more information on the air bag system, see *Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) on page 1-73.*



This light will come on when you start your vehicle, and it will flash for a few seconds. Then the light should go out. This means the system is ready.

If the air bag readiness light stays on after you start the vehicle or comes on when you are driving, your air bag system may not work properly. Have your vehicle serviced right away.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**If the air bag readiness light stays on after you start your vehicle, it means the air bag system may not be working properly. The air bags in your vehicle may not inflate in a crash, or they could even inflate without a crash. To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have your vehicle serviced right away if the air bag readiness light stays on after you start your vehicle.**

The air bag readiness light should flash for a few seconds when you turn the ignition key to RUN. If the light doesn't come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

## Passenger Air Bag Status Indicator

If your vehicle has the passenger sensing system your rearview mirror will have a passenger air bag status indicator.




**Passenger Air Bag Status Indicator – United States**



**Passenger Air Bag Status Indicator – Canada**

When the ignition key is turned to RUN or START, the passenger air bag status indicator will light ON and OFF, or the symbol for on and off, for several seconds as a system check. Then, after several more seconds, the status indicator will light either ON or OFF, or either the on or off symbol to let you know the status of the right front passenger's frontal air bag.

If the word ON or the on symbol is lit on the passenger air bag status indicator, it means that the right front passenger's frontal air bag is enabled (may inflate).

## ⚠ CAUTION:

**If the on indicator comes on when you have a rear-facing child restraint installed in the right front passenger's seat, it means that the passenger sensing system has not turned off the passenger's frontal air bag. A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger's air bag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating air bag. Don't use a rear-facing child restraint in the right front passenger's seat unless the air bag has been turned off.**

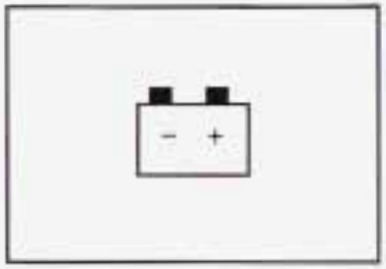
If the word OFF or the off symbol is lit on the air bag status indicator, it means that the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger's frontal air bag. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-81* for more on this, including important safety information.

If, after several seconds, all status indicator lights remain on, or if there are no lights at all, there may be a problem with the lights or the passenger sensing system. See your dealer for service.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**If the off indicator and the air bag readiness light ever come on together, it means that something may be wrong with the air bag system. If this ever happens, have the vehicle serviced promptly, because an adult-size person sitting in the right front passenger seat may not have the protection of the frontal air bag. See "Air Bag Readiness Light" in the Index.**

## Charging System Light



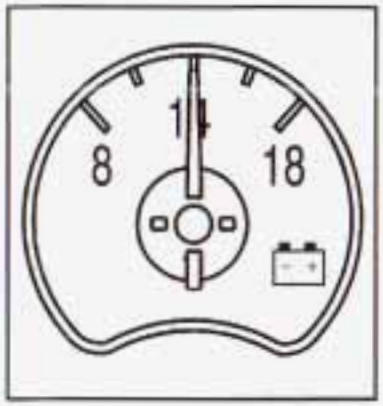

The charging system light will come on briefly when you turn on the ignition, but the engine is not running, as a check to show you it is working.

It should go out once the engine is running. If it stays on, or comes on while you are driving, you may have a problem with the charging system. It could indicate that you have problems with a generator drive belt, or another electrical problem. Have it checked right away. Driving while this light is on could drain your battery.

When this light comes on the DIC will also display the battery not charging message. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-56.*

If you must drive a short distance with the light on, be certain to turn off all your accessories, such as the radio and air conditioner.

## Voltmeter Gage




When your engine is not running, but the ignition is in RUN, this gage shows your battery's state of charge in DC volts.

When the engine is running, the gage shows the condition of the charging system. Readings between the low and high warning zones indicate the normal operating range.

Readings in the low warning zone may occur when a large number of electrical accessories are operating in the vehicle and the engine is left at an idle for an extended period. This condition is normal since the charging system is not able to provide full power at engine idle. As engine speeds are increased, this condition should correct itself as higher engine speeds allow the charging system to create maximum power.

You can only drive for a short time with the reading in either warning zone. If you must drive, turn off all unnecessary accessories.

Readings in either warning zone indicate a possible problem in the electrical system. Have the vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

## Brake System Warning Light

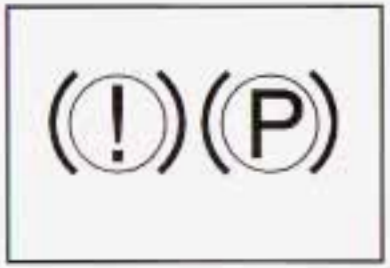
With the ignition on, the brake system warning light will flash when you set the parking brake. The light will flash if the parking brake doesn't release fully. If you try to drive with the parking brake engaged, a chime will sound when the vehicle speed is greater than 3 mph (5 km/h).

Your vehicle's hydraulic brake system is divided into two parts. If one part isn't working, the other part can still work and stop you. For good braking, though, you need both parts working well.

If the warning light comes on and a chime sounds there could be a brake problem. Have your brake system inspected right away.




United States



Canada

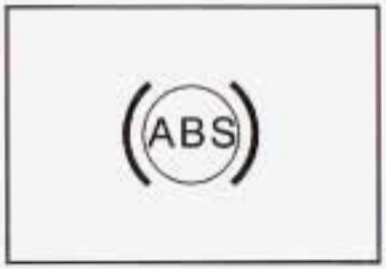
This light should come on briefly when you turn the ignition key to RUN. If it doesn't come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there's a problem.

If the light comes on while you are driving, pull off the road and stop carefully. You may notice that the pedal is harder to push. Or, the pedal may go closer to the floor. It may take longer to stop. If the light is still on, have the vehicle towed for service. See *Towing Your Vehicle on page 4-47.*

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Your brake system may not be working properly if the brake system warning light is on. Driving with the brake system warning light on can lead to an accident. If the light is still on after you've pulled off the road and stopped carefully, have the vehicle towed for service.**

## Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Light




With the anti-lock brake system, this light will come on when you start your engine and may stay on for several seconds.

That's normal. If the light doesn't come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

If the light stays on, or comes on when you're driving, your vehicle needs service. You will also hear a chime sound when the light is on steady. If the regular brake system warning light isn't on, you still have brakes, but you don't have anti-lock brakes. If the regular brake system warning light is also on you don't have anti-lock brakes and there's a problem with your regular brakes. In addition to both lights, you will also hear a chime sound on the first occurrence of a problem and each time the car is shut off and then restarted. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 3-37.*

## Traction Off Light

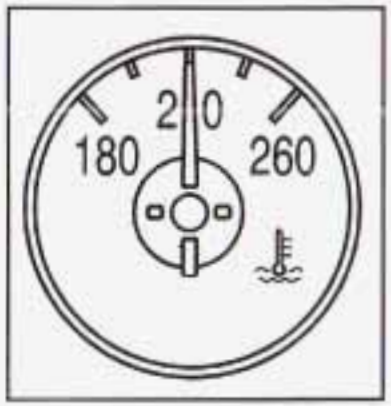



If you have the Stabilitrak® system, this light should come on briefly when you turn the ignition to RUN.

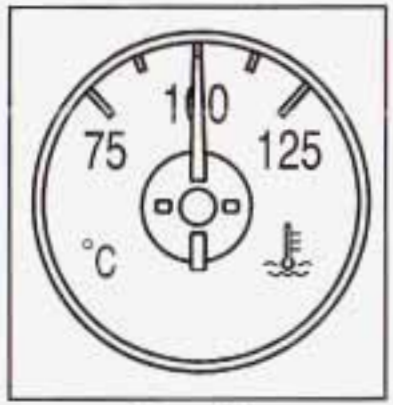
If the light doesn't come on then, the system may require service; have it fixed so it will be there to warn you if the system is turned off.

For more information on the traction off light, see *Stabilitrak® System on page 4-9.*

## Engine Coolant Temperature Gage




United States



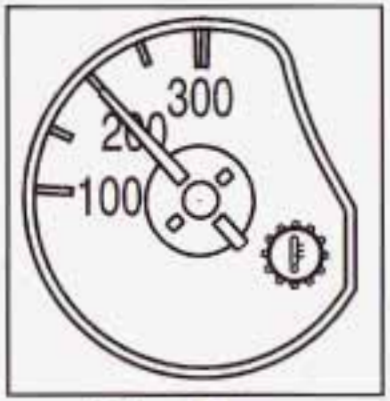

Canada

This gage shows the engine coolant temperature.

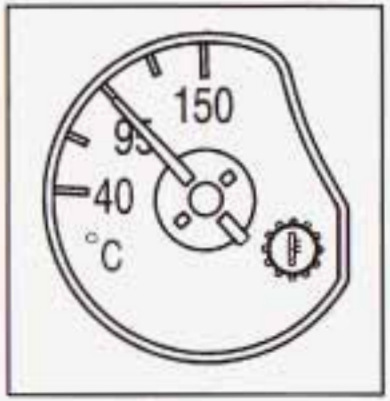
It also provides an indicator of how hard your vehicle is working. During a majority of the operation, the gage will read 210°F (100°C) or less. If you are pulling a load or going up hills, it is normal for the temperature to fluctuate and approach the 250°F (122°C) mark. If the gage reaches the 260°F (125°C) mark, it indicates that the cooling system is working beyond its capacity.

See *Engine Overheating on page 5-28.*

## Transmission Temperature Gage




United States




Canada

Your vehicle is equipped with a transmission temperature gage.

When your ignition is on, the gage shows the temperature of the transmission fluid. The normal operating range is from 100°F (38°C) to about 265°F (130°C).

At approximately 265°F (130°C), the DIC will display a TRANSMISSION HOT message and the transmission will enter a transmission protection mode. When the transmission enters the protection mode, you may notice a change in the transmission shifting patterns. The transmission will return to normal shifting patterns when the transmission fluid temperature falls below 260°F (127°C).

See *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 3-47* for further information.

If the transmission fluid reaches temperatures of approximately 275°F (135°C) or greater, the DIC will display a TRANS HOT IDLE ENGINE warning message and a chime will sound. Pull the vehicle off the roadway when it is safe to do so. Set the parking brake, place the transmission in PARK (P) and allow the engine to idle until the transmission temperature falls below 260°F (127°C). If the transmission continues to operate above 265°F (130°C), please contact your nearest dealer or the Roadside Assistance Center.

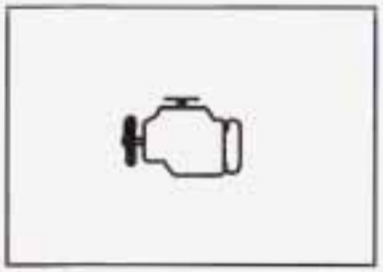
***Notice:*** **If you keep driving your vehicle with the transmission temperature gage above the normal operating range, you can damage the transmission. This could lead to costly repairs that may not be covered under your warranty.**

The following situations can cause the transmission to operate at higher temperatures:

- Towing a trailer,
- hot outside air temperatures,
- hauling a large or heavy load,
- low transmission fluid level,
- high transmission fluid level,
- restricted air flow to the radiator.

# Malfunction Indicator Lamp

## Check Engine Light



Your vehicle is equipped with a computer which monitors operation of the fuel, ignition and emission control systems.

This system is called OBD II (On-Board Diagnostics-Second Generation) and is intended to assure that emissions are at acceptable levels for the life of the vehicle, helping to produce a cleaner environment. The Check Engine light comes on to indicate that there is a problem and service is required. Malfunctions often will be indicated by the system before any problem is apparent. This may prevent more serious damage to your vehicle. This system is also designed to assist your service technician in correctly diagnosing any malfunction.

***Notice:*** **If you keep driving your vehicle with this light on, after a while, your emission controls may not work as well, your fuel economy may not be as good and your engine may not run as smoothly. This could lead to costly repairs that may not be covered by your warranty.**

***Notice:*** **Modifications made to the engine, transmission, exhaust, intake or fuel system of your vehicle or the replacement of the original tires with other than those of the same Tire Performance Criteria (TPC) can affect your vehicle's emission controls and may cause this light to come on. Modifications to these systems could lead to costly repairs not covered by your warranty. This may also result in a failure to pass a required Emission Inspection/Maintenance test.**

This light should come on, as a check to show you it is working, when the ignition is on and the engine is not running. If the light doesn't come on, have it repaired. This light will also come on during a malfunction in one of two ways:

- **Light Flashing** — A misfire condition has been detected. A misfire increases vehicle emissions and may damage the emission control system on your vehicle. Dealer or qualified service center diagnosis and service may be required.
- **Light On Steady** — An emission control system malfunction has been detected on your vehicle. Dealer or qualified service center diagnosis and service may be required.

## If the Light is Flashing

The following may prevent more serious damage to your vehicle:

- Reducing vehicle speed.
- Avoiding hard accelerations.
- Avoiding steep uphill grades.
- If you are towing a trailer, reduce the amount of cargo being hauled as soon as it is possible.

If the light stops flashing and remains on steady, see "If the Light Is On Steady" following.

If the light continues to flash, when it is safe to do so, *stop the vehicle*. Find a safe place to park your vehicle. Turn the key off, wait at least 10 seconds and restart the engine. If the light remains on steady, see "If the Light Is On Steady" following. If the light is still flashing, follow the previous steps, and drive the vehicle to your dealer or qualified service center for service.

## If the Light Is On Steady

You may be able to correct the emission system malfunction by considering the following:

Did you recently put fuel into your vehicle?

If so, reinstall the fuel cap, making sure to fully install the cap. See *Filling Your Tank on page 5-7*. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. A loose or missing fuel cap will allow fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. A few driving trips with the cap properly installed should turn the light off.

Did you just drive through a deep puddle of water?

If so, your electrical system may be wet. The condition will usually be corrected when the electrical system dries out. A few driving trips should turn the light off.

Have you recently changed brands of fuel?

If so, be sure to fuel your vehicle with quality fuel. See *Gasoline Octane on page 5-5*. Poor fuel quality will cause your engine not to run as efficiently as designed. You may notice this as stalling after start-up, stalling when you put the vehicle into gear, misfiring, hesitation on acceleration or stumbling on acceleration. (These conditions may go away once the engine is warmed up.) This will be detected by the system and cause the light to turn on.

If you experience one or more of these conditions, change the fuel brand you use. It will require at least one full tank of the proper fuel to turn the light off.

If none of the above steps have made the light turn off, have your dealer or qualified service center check the vehicle. Your dealer has the proper test equipment and diagnostic tools to fix any mechanical or electrical problems that may have developed.

## Emissions Inspection and Maintenance Programs

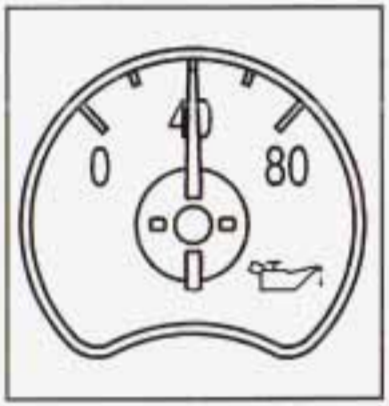
Some state/provincial and local governments have or may begin programs to inspect the emission control equipment on your vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent you from getting a vehicle registration.

Here are some things you need to know to help your vehicle pass an inspection:

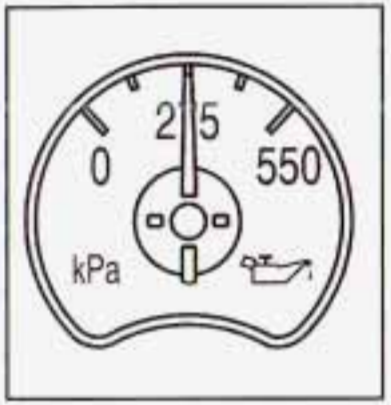
Your vehicle will not pass this inspection if the Check Engine light is on or not working properly.

Your vehicle will not pass this inspection if the OBD (on-board diagnostic) system determines that critical emission control systems have not been completely diagnosed by the system. The vehicle would be considered not ready for inspection. This can happen if you have recently replaced your battery or if your battery has run down. The diagnostic system is designed to evaluate critical emission control systems during normal driving. This may take several days of routine driving. If you have done this and your vehicle still does not pass the inspection for lack of OBD system readiness, see your dealer or qualified service center to prepare the vehicle for inspection.

## Oil Pressure Gage




United States




Canada

The oil pressure gage shows the engine oil pressure in psi (pounds per square inch) when the engine is running. Canadian vehicles indicate pressure in kPa (kilopascals).

Oil pressure may vary with engine speed, outside temperature and oil viscosity, but readings above the low pressure zone indicate the normal operating range.

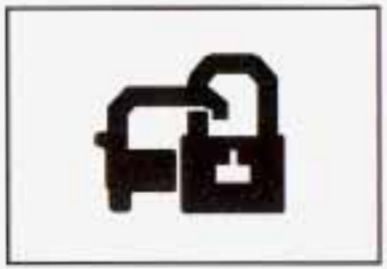
A reading in the low pressure zone may be caused by a dangerously low oil level or some other problem causing low oil pressure. Check your oil as soon as possible. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-56.*

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Don't keep driving if the oil pressure is low. If you do, your engine can become so hot that it catches fire. You or others could be burned. Check your oil as soon as possible and have your vehicle serviced.**

***Notice:*** **Damage to your engine from neglected oil problems can be costly and is not covered by your warranty.**

## Security Light



This light will come on briefly when you turn the key toward START. The light will stay on until the engine starts.

If the light flashes, the Passlock® system has entered a tamper mode. If the vehicle fails to start, see *Passlock® on page 2-17.*

If the light comes on continuously while driving and stays on, there may be a problem with the Passlock® system. Your vehicle will not be protected by Passlock®, and you should see your dealer.

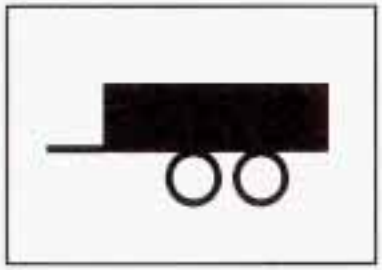
Also, see *Content Theft-Deterrent on page 2-16* for additional information regarding the security light.

## Cruise Control Light



The cruise light comes on whenever you set your cruise control. See *Cruise Control* under *Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever on page 3-7.*

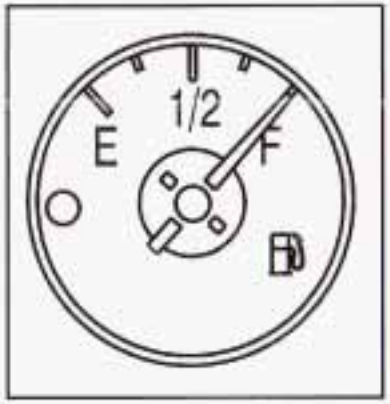
## Tow/Haul Mode Light



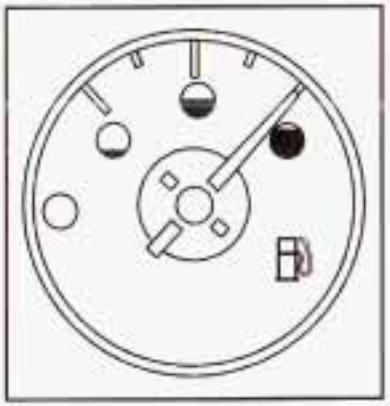
This light is displayed when the tow/haul mode has been activated.

For more information, see "Tow/Haul Mode" under *Towing a Trailer on page 4-50.*

## Fuel Gage




**United States**



**Canada**

When the ignition is on, the fuel gage tells you about how much fuel you have left in your tank.

The gage will first indicate empty before you are out of fuel, and you should get more fuel as soon as possible.

Here are some situations you may experience with your fuel gage. None of these indicate a problem with the fuel gage.

- At the gas station, the fuel pump shuts off before the gage reads full.
- It takes a little more or less fuel to fill up than the fuel gage indicated. For example, the gage may have indicated the tank was half full, but it actually took a little more or less than half the tank's capacity to fill the tank.
- The gage goes back to empty when you turn off the ignition.

## Low Fuel Warning Light

The light next to the fuel gage will come on briefly when you are starting the engine.

This light comes on when the fuel tank is low on fuel. To turn it off, add fuel to the fuel tank. See *Fuel on page 5-5*.

# Driver Information Center (DIC)

The DIC display is located on the instrument panel cluster above the steering wheel. The DIC can display information such as the trip odometer, fuel economy and personalization features.







**A (Trip Information):** This button will display the odometer, personal trip odometer, business trip odometer, hourmeter, annual log and the timer.

**B (Fuel Information):** This button will display the current range, average fuel economy, instant fuel economy and engine oil life.

**C (Personalization):** This button will change personal options available on your vehicle.

**D (Select):** This button resets certain functions and turns off or acknowledges messages on the DIC.

## DIC Operation and Displays

The DIC comes on when the ignition is on. After a short delay the DIC will display the current driver (1 or 2) and the information that was last displayed before the engine was turned off.

If a problem is detected, a warning message will appear on the display. Pressing any of the four buttons will acknowledge (clear) most current warnings or service messages. Some warnings that cannot be acknowledged (cleared) are: ENGINE OVERHEATED, OIL PRESSURE LOW, REDUCED ENGINE POWER, TRANS HOT IDLE ENGINE. These warnings must be dealt with immediately and therefore cannot be cleared until the problem has been corrected.

The DIC has different modes which can be accessed by pressing the four buttons on the DIC. These buttons are trip information, fuel information, personalization and select. The button functions are detailed in the following.

### Select Button

The select button is used to reset certain functions and turn off or acknowledge messages on the DIC display. The select button also toggles through the options available in each personalization menu. For example, this button will reset the trip odometers, turn off the FUEL LEVEL LOW message, and toggle through the languages you can select the DIC to display information in.

## Trip Information Button

Use the trip information button to scroll through the SEASON ODOMETER, PERSONAL TRIP ON/OFF, BUSINESS TRIP ON/OFF, HOURMETER, ANNUAL LOG and TIMER. If the personal trip and/or the business trip are set to ON, you will also be able to scroll through more messages. See *Personal Trip* and *Business Trip* next for more information.

### Personal Trip

If the PERSONAL TRIP is on (turn it on or off by pressing the select button) you will also be able to scroll through the following:

- PERSONAL: XX MI — This shows the current distance traveled since the last reset for the personal trip odometer in either miles or kilometers.
- PERSONAL: XX.X MPG — This shows the amount of fuel used for the personal trip.
- PERSONAL: AVG ECONOMY — This shows how many miles per gallon of fuel your vehicle is getting for the personal trip based on current and past driving conditions.
- PERSONAL: AVG MPH — This shows the vehicle's average speed for the personal trip.
- PERSONAL: % ANNUAL — This shows the ratio of personal trip miles to annual miles as a percent.

You can also reset the PERSONAL: XX MI while it is displayed by pressing the reset stem on the cluster. If you press and hold the reset stem or select button for four seconds, the display will show the distance traveled since the last ignition cycle for the personal trip.

### Business Trip

If the BUSINESS TRIP is on (turn it on or off by pressing the select button) you will also be able to scroll through the following:

- BUSINESS: XX MI — This shows the current distance traveled since the last reset for the business trip odometer in either miles or kilometers.
- BUSINESS: XX.X MPG — This shows the amount of fuel used for the business trip.
- BUSINESS: AVG ECONOMY — This shows how many miles per gallon of fuel your vehicle is getting for the business trip based on current and past driving conditions.
- BUSINESS: AVG MPH — This shows the vehicle's average speed for the business trip.
- BUSINESS: % ANNUAL — This shows the ratio of business trip miles to annual miles as a percent.

To reset the personal or business trip information, do the following: press and hold the select button for two seconds while in one of the personal or business trip modes. This will reset all of the information for the personal or business trip.

You can also reset the BUSINESS: XX MI while it is displayed by pressing the reset stem on the cluster. If you press and hold the reset stem or select button for four seconds, the display will show the distance traveled since the last ignition cycle for the business trip.

### Season Odometer

Press the trip information button until SEASON ODOMETER appears on the display. This shows the total distance the vehicle has been driven in either miles or kilometers. Pressing the reset stem located on the instrument cluster with the vehicle off will also display the season odometer.

### Hourmeter

Press the trip button to scroll to the hourmeter. The hourmeter shows the total number of hours the engine has run. Pressing the reset stem on the instrument cluster will also display the hourmeter after the season odometer is displayed.

### Annual Log

Press the trip button to scroll to the annual log. The annual log shows the mileage accumulated since it was last reset. To reset the annual log, press and hold the select button for two seconds.

### Timer

The DIC can be used as a stopwatch. Press the select button while TIMER is displayed to start the timer. The display will show the amount of time that has passed since the timer was last reset (not including time the ignition is off). Time will continue to be counted as long as the ignition is on, even if another display is being shown on the DIC. The timer will record up to 99 hours, 59 minutes and 59 seconds (99:59:59) after which the display will roll back to zero.

To stop the counting of time, press the select button briefly while TIMER is displayed.

To reset the timer to zero, press and hold the select button while TIMER is displayed.

## Fuel Information Button

Use the fuel information button to scroll through the range, average fuel economy, instant fuel economy and the GM Oil Life System.

## Fuel Range

Press the fuel information button until RANGE appears to display the remaining distance you can drive without refueling. It's based on fuel economy and the fuel remaining in the tank. The display will show LOW if the fuel level is low.

The fuel economy data used to determine fuel range is an average of recent driving conditions. As your driving conditions change, this data is gradually updated. Fuel range cannot be reset.

## Average Fuel Economy

Press the fuel information button until AVG ECON appears in the display. Average fuel economy is how many miles per gallon your vehicle is getting based on current and past driving conditions.

Press and hold the select button for two seconds while AVG ECON is displayed to reset the average fuel economy. Average fuel economy will then be calculated starting from that point. If the average fuel economy is not reset, it will be continually updated each time you drive.

## Instant Fuel Economy

Press the fuel information button until INST ECON appears in the display. Instant fuel economy is how many miles per gallon your vehicle is getting at the particular moment in time. The instant fuel economy cannot be reset.

## GM Oil Life System

Press the fuel information button until ENGINE OIL LIFE appears in the display. The GM Oil Life System shows an estimate of the oil's remaining useful life. It will show 100% when the system is reset after an oil change. It will alert you to change your oil on a schedule consistent with your driving conditions.

Always reset the engine oil life after an oil change. To reset the Oil Life System press and hold the select button for five seconds while ENGINE OIL LIFE is displayed. OIL LIFE RESET will appear on the display for 10 seconds to let you know the system is reset.

The DIC does not replace the need to maintain your vehicle as recommended in the Maintenance Schedule in this manual. Also, the oil change reminder will not detect dusty conditions or engine malfunctions that may affect the oil. Also, the oil change reminder does not measure how much oil you have in your engine. So, be sure to check your oil level often. See *Engine Oil on page 5-13.*

## Personalization Button

You can program certain features to a preferred setting for up to two people. Press the personalization button to scroll through the following personalization features.

All of the personalization options may not be available on your vehicle. Only the options available will be displayed on your DIC.

- ALARM WARNING TYPE
- AUTOMATIC LOCKING
- AUTOMATIC UNLOCKING
- SEAT POSITION RECALL
- PERIMETER LIGHTING
- REMOTE LOCK FEEDBACK
- REMOTE UNLOCK FEEDBACK
- HEADLAMPS ON AT EXIT
- CURB VIEW ASSIST
- EASY EXIT SEAT
- DISPLAY UNITS (E/M)
- DISPLAY LANGUAGE

The default options for the above features were set when your vehicle left the factory. The default options are noted in the text following, but may have been changed from their default state since then.

The driver's preferences can be recalled by pressing the unlock button on the remote keyless entry transmitter labeled 1 or 2 or by pressing the appropriate memory button 1 or 2 located on the driver's door.

## Alarm Warning Type

Press the personalization button until ALARM WARNING TYPE appears in the display. To select your personalization for alarm warning type, press the select button while ALARM WARNING TYPE is displayed on the DIC. Pressing the select button will scroll through the following choices:

**ALARM WARNING: BOTH (default):** The headlamps will flash and the horn will chirp when the alarm is active.

**ALARM WARNING: OFF:** There will be no alarm warning on activation.

**ALARM WARNING: HORN:** The horn will chirp when the alarm is active.

**ALARM WARNING: LAMPS:** The headlamps will flash when the alarm is active.

Choose one of the four options and press the personalization button while your choice is displayed on the DIC to select it and move on to the next feature. For more information on alarm warning type see *Content Theft-Deterrent on page 2-16.*

## Automatic Locking

Press the personalization button until AUTOMATIC LOCKING appears in the display. To select your personalization for automatic locking, press the select button while AUTOMATIC LOCKING is displayed on the DIC. Pressing the select button will scroll through the following choices:

**LOCK DOORS OUT OF PARK (default):** The doors will lock when the vehicle is shifted out of PARK (P).

**LOCK DOORS MANUALLY:** The doors will not be locked automatically.

**LOCK DOORS WITH SPEED:** The doors will lock when the vehicle speed is above 8 mph (13 km/h) for three seconds.

Choose one of the three options and press the personalization button while it is displayed on the DIC to select it and move on to the next feature. For more information on automatic door locks see *Programmable Automatic Door Locks on page 2-10*.

## Automatic Unlocking

Press the personalization button until AUTOMATIC UNLOCKING appears in the display. To select your personalization for automatic unlocking, press the select button while AUTOMATIC UNLOCKING is displayed on the DIC. Pressing the select button will scroll through the following choices:

**UNLOCK ALL IN PARK (default):** All of the doors will unlock when the vehicle is shifted into PARK (P).

**UNLOCK ALL AT KEY OUT:** All of the doors will unlock when the key is taken out of the ignition.

**UNLOCK DOORS MANUALLY:** The doors will not be unlocked automatically.

**UNLOCK DRIVER IN PARK:** The driver's door will be unlocked when the vehicle is shifted into PARK (P).

Choose one of the four options and press the personalization button while it is displayed on the DIC to select it and move on to the next feature. For more information on automatic door locks see *Programmable Automatic Door Locks on page 2-10*.

## Seat Position Recall

Press the personalization button until SEAT POSITION RECALL appears in the display. To select your personalization for seat position recall, press the select button while SEAT POSITION RECALL is displayed on the DIC. Pressing the select button will scroll through the following choices:

**SEAT POSITION RECALL OFF (default):** The memory seat position you saved will only be recalled when the memory button 1 or 2 is pressed.

**SEAT POSITION RECALL AT KEY IN:** The memory seat position you saved will be recalled when you put the key in the ignition.

**SEAT POSITION RECALL ON REMOTE:** The memory seat position you saved will be recalled when you unlock the vehicle with the remote keyless entry transmitter.

Choose one of the three options and press the personalization button while it is displayed on the DIC to select it and move on to the next feature. For more information on seat position recall see *Memory Seat on page 2-47.*

## Perimeter Lighting

Press the personalization button until PERIMETER LIGHTING appears in the display. To select your personalization for perimeter lighting, press the select button while PERIMETER LIGHTING is displayed on the DIC. Pressing the select button will scroll through the following choices:

**PERIMETER LIGHTING ON (default):** The headlamps and back-up lamps will come on for 40 seconds, if it is dark enough outside, when you unlock the vehicle with the remote keyless entry transmitter.

**PERIMETER LIGHTING OFF:** The perimeter lights will not come on when you unlock the vehicle with the remote keyless entry transmitter.

Choose one of the two options and press the personalization button while it is displayed on the DIC to select it and move on to the next feature.

## Remote Lock Feedback

Press the personalization button until REMOTE LOCK FEEDBACK appears in the display. To select your personalization for the feedback you will receive when locking the vehicle with the remote keyless entry transmitter, press the select button while REMOTE LOCK FEEDBACK is displayed on the DIC. Pressing the select button will scroll through the following choices:

**LOCK FEEDBACK: BOTH (default):** The parking lamps will flash each time you press the button with the lock symbol on the remote keyless entry transmitter and the horn will chirp the second time you press the lock button.

**LOCK FEEDBACK: OFF:** There will be no feedback when locking the vehicle.

**LOCK FEEDBACK: HORN:** The horn will chirp the second time you press the button with the lock symbol on the remote keyless entry transmitter.

**LOCK FEEDBACK: LAMPS:** The parking lamps will flash each time you press the button with the lock symbol on the remote keyless entry transmitter.

Choose one of the four options and press the personalization button while it is displayed on the DIC to select it and move on to the next feature.

## Remote Unlock Feedback

Press the personalization button until REMOTE UNLOCK FEEDBACK appears in the display. To select your personalization for the feedback you will receive when unlocking the vehicle with the remote keyless entry transmitter, press the select button while REMOTE UNLOCK FEEDBACK is displayed on the DIC. Pressing the select button will scroll through the following choices:

**UNLOCK FEEDBACK: LAMPS (default):** The parking lamps will flash each time you press the button with the unlock symbol on the remote keyless entry transmitter.

**UNLOCK FEEDBACK: BOTH:** The parking lamps will flash each time you press the button with the unlock symbol on the remote keyless entry transmitter and the horn will chirp the second time you press the unlock button.

**UNLOCK FEEDBACK: OFF:** There will be no feedback when unlocking the vehicle.

**UNLOCK FEEDBACK: HORN:** The horn will chirp the second time you press the button with the unlock symbol on the remote keyless entry transmitter.

Choose one of the four options and press the personalization button while it is displayed on the DIC to select it and move on to the next feature.

## Headlamps on at Exit

Press the personalization button until HEADLAMPS ON AT EXIT appears in the display. To select your personalization for how long the headlamps will stay on when you turn off the vehicle, press the select button while HEADLAMPS ON AT EXIT is displayed on the DIC. Pressing the select button will scroll through the following choices:

- HEADLAMP DELAY: 10 SEC (default)
- HEADLAMP DELAY: 20 SEC
- HEADLAMP DELAY: 40 SEC
- HEADLAMP DELAY: 60 SEC
- HEADLAMP DELAY: 120 SEC
- HEADLAMP DELAY: 180 SEC
- HEADLAMP DELAY OFF

The amount of time you choose will be the amount of time that the headlamps stay on after you turn off the vehicle. If you choose off, the headlamps will turn off as soon as you turn off the vehicle.

Choose one of the seven options and press the personalization button while it is displayed on the DIC to select it and move on to the next feature.

## Curb View Assist

Press the personalization button until CURB VIEW ASSIST appears in the display. To select your personalization for curb view assist, press the select button while CURB VIEW ASSIST is displayed on the DIC. Pressing the select button will scroll through the following choices:

**CURB VIEW: OFF (default):** Neither outside mirror will be tilted down when the vehicle is shifted into REVERSE (R).

**CURB VIEW: PASSENGER:** The passenger's outside mirror will be tilted down when the vehicle is shifted into REVERSE (R).

**CURB VIEW: DRIVER:** The driver's outside mirror will be tilted down when the vehicle is shifted into REVERSE (R).

**CURB VIEW: BOTH:** The driver's and passenger's outside mirror will be tilted down when the vehicle is shifted into REVERSE (R).

Choose one of the four options and press the personalization button while it is displayed on the DIC to select it and move on to the next feature. For more information on tilt mirror in reverse see *Outside Automatic Dimming Mirror with Curb View Assist on page 2-34.*

## Easy Exit Seat

Press the personalization button until EASY EXIT SEAT appears in the display. To select your personalization for seat position exit, press the select button while SEAT POSITION EXIT is displayed on the DIC. Pressing the select button will scroll through the following choices:

**SEAT POSITION EXIT OFF (default):** No seat exit recall will occur.

**SEAT POSITION EXIT ON:** The driver's seat will move to the exit position when the key is removed from the ignition.

Choose one of the two options and press the personalization button while it is displayed on the DIC to select it and move on to the next feature. For more information on seat position exit see *Memory Seat on page 2-47.*

### Display Units (ENG/MET)

Press the personalization button until DISPLAY UNITS appears in the display. To select English or metric, press the select button while DISPLAY UNITS is displayed on the DIC. Pressing the select button will scroll through the following choices:

- UNITS: ENGLISH
- UNITS: METRIC

If you choose English, all information will be displayed in English units. For example, distance in miles and fuel economy in miles per gallon.

Choose one of the two options and press the personalization button while it is displayed on the DIC to select it and move on to the next feature.

### Display Language

To select your personalization for display language, press the select button while DISPLAY LANGUAGE is displayed on the DIC. Pressing the select button will scroll through the following languages:

- English
- French
- Spanish

Choose one of the three options and press the personalization button while it is displayed on the DIC to select it.

If you accidentally choose a language that you don't want or understand, press and hold the personalization button and the trip information button at the same time. The DIC will begin scrolling through the languages in their particular language. English will be in English, French will be in French and so on. When you see the language that you would like, release both buttons. The DIC will then display the information in the language you chose.

You can also scroll through the different languages by pressing and holding the trip reset stem for four seconds, as long as you are in the season odometer mode.

## DIC Warnings and Messages

Warning messages are displayed on the DIC to notify the driver that the status of the vehicle has changed and that some action may be needed by the driver to correct the condition. If there is more than one message that needs to be displayed they will appear one after another. Some messages may not require immediate action but you should press the select button to acknowledge that you received the message and clear it from the display. Some messages cannot be cleared from the display because they are more urgent; these messages require action before they can be removed from the DIC display. The following are the possible messages that can be displayed and some information about them.

## CHANGE ENGINE OIL

This message is displayed when the engine oil needs to be changed. See "GM Oil Life System" previously in this section for information on how to reset the message. This message will clear itself after 10 seconds until the next igntion cycle.

## OIL LIFE RESET

This message will appear on the display for about 10 seconds after resetting the change engine oil message.

## OIL PRESSURE LOW

If low oil pressure levels occur, this message will be displayed on the DIC and a chime will sound. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and do not operate it until the cause of the low oil pressure has been corrected. Check your oil as soon as possible and have your vehicle serviced.

## CHECK OIL LEVEL

If the oil level in the vehicle is low, this message will appear on the DIC. Check the oil level and correct it as necessary. You may need to let the vehicle cool or warm up and cycle the ignition to be sure this message will clear. Once the problem is corrected, pressing the select button will clear this message from the DIC display. This message will clear itself after 10 seconds until the next igntion cycle.

## LOW COOLANT LEVEL

If the engine coolant level is low, this message will appear on the DIC. Adding coolant will clear the message. This message will clear itself after 10 seconds until the next igntion cycle.

## ENGINE COOLANT HOT

If the cooling system temperature gets hot, this message will appear in the DIC. Stop the vehicle and let the engine idle in PARK (P) to allow the coolant to reach a safe temperature. This message will clear when the coolant temperature drops to a safe operating temperature.

## ENGINE OVERHEATED

If the engine cooling system reaches unsafe temperatures for operation, this message will appear in the DIC and you will hear a chime. Stop and turn off the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so to avoid severe damage. This message will clear when the engine has cooled to a safe operating temperature.

## REDUCED ENGINE POWER

This message is displayed and you will hear a chime when the cooling system temperature gets too hot and the engine further enters the engine coolant protection mode.

See *Engine Overheating on page 5-28* for further information.

## BATTERY NOT CHARGING

If the battery is not charging during operation, this message will appear on the DIC. Driving with this problem could drain your battery. Have the electrical system checked as soon as possible. Pressing the select button will acknowledge this message and clear it from the DIC display.

## SERVICE AIR BAG

If there is a problem with the air bag system, this message will be displayed on the DIC. Have a qualified technician inspect the system for problems. Pressing the select button will acknowledge this message and clear it from the DIC display.

## SERVICE BRAKE SYSTEM

If a problem occurs with the brake system, this message will appear on the DIC. If this message appears, stop as soon as possible and turn off the vehicle. Restart the vehicle and check for the message on the DIC display. If the message is still displayed, or appears again when you begin driving, the brake system needs service.

## REDUCED BRAKE POWER

If your vehicle has vacuum assist power brakes, this message will be displayed and you may notice that the brake pedal is harder to push and it will take longer to stop. You may also hear a motor running and feel a slight vibration in the brake pedal or steering wheel when you apply or release the brake pedal even if your foot is not on the brake pedal. This indicates that the Supplemental Brake Assist system is working to maintain braking power. If you are braking lightly, you may not notice any difference in the operation of your brakes.

This message may also be displayed for brief periods if you are driving at higher elevations and are pumping your brakes or braking hard. The message may clear after you've lifted your foot from the accelerator pedal an allowed the vehicle to coast in gear or after you have driven down to a lower elevation. This is a normal operation of your brake system and does not require that the brake system be serviced. However, if the message does not clear, your brake system needs service. While the message is displayed you will notice that the brake pedal is harder to push and it will take longer to stop. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 3-37*

## ⚠ CAUTION:

Your brake system may not be working properly if the REDUCED BRAKE POWER message is displayed. If this message comes on and stays on while driving, pull off the road and stop carefully. The brake pedal will be harder to push and it will take longer to stop.

If the message is no longer displayed after you have pulled off the road and stopped, you can continue driving.

However, if the message is still displayed, or if it comes on again when you are driving, there is a problem with your brake system. If you continue to drive with this message displayed it can lead to an accident. You should have the vehicle towed for service. Also, see Brake System Warning Light in the Index.

## SERVICE BRAKE BOOSTER

If your vehicle has vaccum assist power brakes, this message will be displayed on the DIC when there is a problem with the Supplemental Brake Assist system.

If the message is displayed immediately after starting the vehicle or the message appears while driving, your Supplemental Brake Assist system needs service. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 3-37*

## ⚠ CAUTION:

Your brake system may not be working properly if the SERVICE BRAKE BOOSTER message is displayed.

If the brake system warning light is also on, you should have the vehicle towed for service. See "Brake System Warning Light" in the Index.

If the brake system warning light isn't on, you still have brakes, but the supplemental brake assist system may not operate properly. In the event of a vacuum loss, you may not have vacuum power assist for braking. The brake pedal will be harder to push and it will take longer to stop. If you continue to drive with this message displayed it can lead to a crash. Have the brake system serviced as soon as possible.

## SERVICE 4WD

If a problem occurs with the all-wheel drive system, this message will appear on the DIC. If this message appears, stop as soon as possible and turn off the vehicle. Restart the vehicle and check for the message on the DIC display. If the message is still displayed, or appears again when you begin driving, the four wheel drive system needs service.

## SERVICE RIDE CONTROL

If a problem occurs with the suspension system, this message will appear on the DIC. If this message appears, stop and turn off the vehicle. Restart the vehicle and check for the message on the DIC display. If the message is still displayed, or appears again when you begin driving, the suspension system needs service.

## TURN SIGNAL ON

If a turn signal is left on for 3/4 of a mile (1.2 km), this message will appear on the display and you will hear a chime. Move the turn signal/multifunction lever to the off position. Pressing the select button will acknowledge this message and clear it from the DIC display.

## REAR ACCESS OPEN

If the liftgate is open while the ignition is in RUN, this message will appear on the DIC and you will hear a chime. Turn off the vehicle and check the liftgate. Restart the vehicle and check for the message on the DIC display. Pressing the select button will acknowledge this message and clear it from the DIC display.

## FUEL LEVEL LOW

If the fuel level is low, this message will appear on the DIC and you will hear a chime. Refuel as soon as possible. Pressing the select button will acknowledge this message immediately and clear it from the DIC display. It will also clear itself after 10 seconds until the next ignition cycle. The low fuel light near the fuel gage will still remain on in either case.

## CHECK WASHER FLUID

If the washer fluid level is low, this message will appear on the DIC. Adding washer fluid will clear the message. Pressing the select button will acknowledge this message and clear it from the DIC display. This message will clear itself after 10 seconds until the next igntion cycle.

## TRANSMISSION HOT

If the transmission fluid temperature becomes high, the message center will display this message.

When the transmission enters the protection mode, you may notice a change in the transmission shifting patterns. When the transmission fluid temperature returns to normal, the display will turn off and the transmission shifting patterns will return to normal.

***Notice:*** **If you keep driving your vehicle with the transmission TRANS FLUID HOT message displayed, you can damage the transmission. This could lead to costly repairs that may not be covered under your warranty.**

The following situations can cause the transmission to operate at higher temperatures:

- Towing a trailer
- Hot outside air temperatures
- Hauling a large or heavy load
- Low transmission fluid level
- High transmission fluid level
- Restricted air flow to the radiator.

A temporary solution to hotter transmission operating temperatures may be to let the transmission cool down. If the transmission is operated at higher temperatures on a frequent basis, see *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-5* for the proper transmission maintenance intervals.

## TRANS HOT IDLE ENGINE

If the transmission fluid in the vehicle gets hot, this message will appear on the DIC along with a continuous chime. Driving with the transmission fluid temperature high can cause damage to the vehicle. Stop the vehicle and let it idle to allow the transmission to cool. This message will clear and the chime will stop when the fluid temperature reaches a safe level.

## DRIVER DOOR AJAR

If the driver's door is not fully closed and the vehicle is in a drive gear, this message will appear on the display and you will hear a chime. Stop and turn off the vehicle, check the door for obstacles, and close the door again. Check to see if the message still appears on the DIC. Pressing the select button will acknowledge this message and clear it from the DIC display.

## PASSENGER DOOR AJAR

If the passenger's door is not fully closed and the vehicle is in a drive gear, this message will appear on the display and you will hear a chime. Stop and turn off the vehicle, check the door for obstacles, and close the door again. Check to see if the message still appears on the DIC. Pressing the select button will acknowledge this message and clear it from the DIC display.

## LEFT REAR DOOR AJAR

If the driver's side rear door is not fully closed and the vehicle is in a drive gear, this message will appear on the display and you will hear a chime. Stop and turn off the vehicle, check the door for obstacles, and close the door again. Check to see if the message still appears on the DIC. Pressing the select button will acknowledge this message and clear it from the DIC display.

## RIGHT REAR DOOR AJAR

If the passenger's side rear door is not fully closed and the vehicle is in a drive gear, this message will appear on the display and you will hear a chime. Stop and turn off the vehicle, check the door for obstacles, and close the door again. Check to see if the message still appears on the DIC. Pressing the select button will acknowledge this message and clear it from the DIC display.

## RFA # BATTERY LOW

If a remote keyless entry transmitter battery is low, this message will appear on the DIC. The battery needs to be replaced in the transmitter. Pressing the select button will acknowledge this message and clear it from the DIC display.

## STABILITY SYS ACTIVE

You may see the STABILITY SYS ACTIVE message on the DIC. It means that an advanced computer-controlled system has come on to help your vehicle continue to go in the direction in which you're steering. Stabilitrak®activates when the computer senses that your vehicle is just starting to spin, as it might if you hit a patch of ice or other slippery spot on the road. When the system activates, you may hear a noise or feel a vibration in the brake pedal. This is normal. When the STABILITY SYS ACTIVE message is on, you should continue to steer in the direction you want to go. The system is designed to help you in bad weather or other difficult driving situations by making the most of whatever road conditions will permit.

## SERVICE STABILITY

If you ever see the SERVICE STABILITY message, it means there may be a problem with your Stabilitrak® system. If you see this message try to reset the system (stop; turn off the engine; then start the engine again). If the SERVICE STABILITY message still comes on, it means there is a problem. You should see your dealer for service. The vehicle is safe to drive, however, you do not have the benefit of Stabilitrak®, so reduce your speed and drive accordingly.

## STABILITY SYS DISABLED

The STABILITY SYS DISABLED message will turn on when you press the Stabilitrak® button, or when the stability control has been automatically disabled. To limit wheel spin and realize the full benefits of the stability enhancement system, you should normally leave Stabilitrak® on. However, you should turn Stabilitrak® off if your vehicle gets stuck in sand, mud, ice or snow and you want to "rock" your vehicle to attempt to free it, or if you are driving in extreme off-road conditions and require more wheel spin. See *If You Are Stuck: In Sand, Mud, Ice or Snow on page 4-44*. To turn the Stabilitrak® system back on press the Stabilitrak® button again. There are four conditions that can cause this message to appear. One condition is overheating, which could occur if Stabilitrak® activates continuously for an extended period of time. The message will also be displayed if the brake system warning light is on. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 3-37*. The message could be displayed if the stability system takes longer than usual to complete its diagnostic checks due to driving conditions. Also, if an engine or vehicle related problem has been detected, and the vehicle needs service, the message will appear.

The message will turn off as soon as the conditions that caused the message to be displayed are no longer present.

## TRACTION ACTIVE

When the traction control system has detected that any of the vehicle's wheels are slipping, the traction control system will activate and this message will appear on the DIC. See *Stabilitrak® System on page 4-9* for more information.

# Audio System(s)

***Notice:*** **Before you add any sound equipment to your vehicle – like a tape player, CB radio, mobile telephone or two-way radio – be sure you can add what you want. If you can, it's very important to do it properly. Added sound equipment may interfere with the operation of your vehicle's engine, Delphi Electronics radio or other systems, and even damage them. Your vehicle's systems may interfere with the operation of sound equipment that has been added improperly.**

**So, before adding sound equipment, check with your dealer and be sure to check federal rules covering mobile radio and telephone units.**

Your audio system has been designed to operate easily and to give years of listening pleasure. You will get the most enjoyment out of it if you acquaint yourself with it first. Find out what your audio system can do and how to operate all of its controls to be sure you're getting the most out of the advanced engineering that went into it.

Your vehicle may have a feature called Retained Accessory Power (RAP). With RAP, you can play your audio system even after the ignition is turned off. See "Retained Accessory Power (RAP)" under *Ignition Positions on page 2-18.*

## Setting the Time

Press and hold the HR button until the correct hour appears on the display. Press and hold the MN button until the correct minute appears on the display. The time may be set with the ignition on or off.

To synchronize the time with an FM station broadcasting Radio Data System (RDS) information, press and hold the hour and minute buttons at the same time until RDS TIME appears on the display. To accept this time, press and hold the hour and minute buttons, at the same time, for another 2 seconds. If the time is not available from the station, NO UPDAT will appear on the display instead.

RDS time is broadcast once a minute. Once you have tuned to an RDS broadcast station, it may take a few minutes for your time to update.

## Radio with Cassette and CD




**Radio Data System (RDS):** Your audio system is equipped with a Radio Data System (RDS). RDS features are available for use only on FM stations that broadcast RDS information.

With RDS, your radio can do the following:

- Seek to stations broadcasting the selected type of programming,
- receive announcements concerning local and national emergencies,
- display messages from radio stations, and
- seek to stations with traffic announcements.

This system relies upon receiving specific information from these stations and will only work when the information is available. In rare cases, a radio station may broadcast incorrect information that will cause the radio features to work improperly. If this happens, contact the radio station.

While you are tuned to an RDS station, the station name or the call letters will appear on the display instead of the frequency. RDS stations may also provide the time of day, a program type (PTY) for current programming and the name of the program being broadcast.

**XM™ Radio Satellite Service (USA Only):** XM™ is a continental U.S. based satellite radio service that offers 100 coast to coast channels including music, news, sports, talk and children's programming. XM™ provides digital quality audio and text information, including song title and artist name. A service fee is required in order to receive the XM™ service. For more information, contact XM™ at www.xmradio.com or call 1-800-852-XMXM (9696).

## Playing the Radio

**PWR (Power):** Press this knob to turn the system on and off.

**VOL (Volume):** Turn this knob to increase or to decrease volume.

**AUTO VOL (Automatic Volume):** With automatic volume, your audio system adjusts automatically to make up for road and wind noise as you drive.

Set the volume at the desired level. Press this button until AVOL ON appears on the display. Then as you drive, automatic volume increases the volume as necessary to overcome noise at any speed. The volume level should always sound the same to you as you drive. To turn automatic volume off, press this button until AVOL OFF appears on the display.

**DISP (Display):** Push this knob to switch the display between radio station frequency and time. Time display is available with the ignition turned off.

For RDS, push this knob to change what appears on the display while using RDS. The display options are station name, RDS station frequency, PTY and the name of the program (if available).

For XM™ (USA only, if your radio is equipped with XM™ Satellite Radio Service), push this knob while in XM mode to retrieve various pieces of information related to the current song or channel. By pressing and releasing this knob, you may retrieve four different categories of information: Artist, Song Title, Category or PTY, Channel Number/Channel Name.

To change the default on the display, push this knob until you see the display you want, then hold the knob for two seconds. The radio will produce one beep and selected display will now be the default.

## Finding a Station

**BAND:** Press this button to switch between AM, FM, FM2, or XM1, XM2 (USA only, if your radio is equipped with XM™ Satellite Radio Service). The display will show your selection.

**TUNE:** Turn this knob to choose radio stations.

◀ **SEEK** ▶ : Press the right or the left arrow to seek to the next or to the previous station and stay there.

The radio will seek only to stations that are in the selected band and only to those with a strong signal.

◀ **SCAN** ▶ : Press and hold one of the arrows for more than two seconds. The radio will produce one beep. The radio will scan to a station, play for a few seconds, then go on to the next station. SCAN will be displayed. Press one of the arrows again to stop scanning.

The radio will scan only to stations that are in the selected band and only to those with a strong signal.

To scan preset stations, press and hold one of the arrows for more than four seconds. The radio will produce two beeps. The radio will scan to the first preset station, play for a few seconds, then go on to the next preset station. PSCN will be displayed. Press one of the arrows again or one of the pushbuttons to stop scanning.

The radio will scan only to preset stations that are in the selected band and only to those with a strong signal.

## Setting Preset Stations

The six numbered pushbuttons let you return to your favorite stations. You can set up to 30 stations (six AM, six FM1 and six FM2, or six XM1 and six XM2 (USA only, if your radio is equipped with the XM Satellite Radio Service), by performing the following steps:

1. Turn the radio on.
2. Press BAND to select AM, FM1 or FM2, or XM1, XM2.
3. Tune in the desired station.
4. Press AUTO EQ to select the equalization that best suits the type of station you are listening to.
5. Press and hold one of the six numbered pushbuttons. The radio will produce one beep. Whenever you press that numbered pushbutton, the station you set will return and the bass and treble equalization that you selected will also be automatically selected for that pushbutton.
6. Repeat the steps for each pushbutton.

## Setting the Tone (Bass/Treble)

**AUDIO:** Press and release the AUDIO knob until BASS, MID, or TREB appears on the display. Turn the knob to increase or to decrease. The display will show the bass, midrange, or treble level. If a station is weak or noisy, you may want to decrease the treble.

To adjust the bass, midrange, and treble to the middle position, push and hold the AUDIO knob. The radio will produce one beep and adjust the display level to the middle position.

To adjust all tone and speaker controls to the middle position, push and hold the AUDIO knob when no tone or speaker control is displayed. The radio will produce one beep and display ALL with the level display in the middle position.

**AUTO EQ (Automatic Equalization):** Press this button to choose bass and treble equalization settings.

The setting last chosen will appear on the display when you first press AUTO EQ. Each time you press this button, another setting will appear on the display and AUTO EQ will switch to one of the present settings listed below.

Your audio system allows you to choose from four different equalization settings: normal, driver, rear and spacious. These settings can be used while listening to the radio, a cassette or a CD.

**NORMAL:** This setting enhances the stereo effect.

**DRIVER:** This setting gives the driver the best sound quality.

**REAR:** This setting gives the rear passengers the best sound quality.

**SPACIOUS:** This setting makes the listening space seem larger.

The radio will save separate AUTO EQ settings for each present and source.

## Adjusting the Speakers (Balance/Fade)

**AUDIO:** To adjust the balance between the right and the left speakers, push and release the AUDIO knob until BAL appears on the display. Turn the knob to move the sound toward the right or the left speakers.

To adjust the fade between the front and the rear speakers, push and release the AUDIO knob until FADE appears on the display. Turn the knob to move the sound toward the front or the rear speakers.

To adjust the balance and fade to the middle position, push the AUDIO knob then push it again and hold it until the radio produces one beep. The balance and fade will be adjusted to the middle position and the display will show the speaker balance.

To adjust all tone and speaker controls to the middle position, push and hold the AUDIO knob when no tone or speaker control is displayed. The radio will produce one beep and display ALL with the level display in the middle position.

## Finding a PTY Station (RDS and XM™)

To select and find a desired PTY perform the following:

1. Turn the P-TYPE LIST knob. TYPE and a PTY will appear on the display.
2. Select a category by turning the P-TYPE LIST knob.
3. Once the desired category is displayed, press the SEEK TYPE button or one of the SEEK arrows to take you to the category's first station.
4. If you want to go to another station within that category and the category is displayed, press the SEEK TYPE button once. If the category is not displayed, press the SEEK TYPE button twice to display the category and then to go to another station.

If the radio cannot find the desired program type, NONE will appear on the display and the radio will return to the last station you were listening to.

**SCAN:** You can also scan through the channels within a category by performing the following:

1. Turn the P-TYPE LIST knob. TYPE and a PTY will appear on the display.
2. Select a category by turning the P-TYPE LIST knob.
3. Once the desired category is displayed, press either SCAN arrow, and the radio will begin scanning within your chosen category.
4. Press wither SCAN arrow again to stop scanning.

**BAND (Alternate Frequency):** Alternate frequency allows the radio to switch to a stronger station with the same program type. Press and hold BAND for two seconds to turn alternate frequency on. AF ON will appear on the display. The radio may switch to stronger stations. Press and hold BAND again for two seconds to turn alternate frequency off. AF OFF will appear on the display. The radio will not switch to other stations.

This function does not apply for XM™.

## Setting Preset PTYs (RDS Only)

The six numbered pushbuttons let you return to your favorite PTYs. These buttons have factory PTY presets. You can set up to 12 PTYs (six FM1 and six FM2) by performing the following steps:

1. Press BAND to select FM1 or FM2.
2. Turn the P-TYPE LIST knob. TYPE and a PTY will appear on the display.
3. Turn the P-TYPE LIST knob to select a PTY.

4. Press and hold one of the six numbered pushbuttons until you hear a beep. Whenever you press that numbered pushbutton, the PTY you set will return.
5. Repeat the steps for each pushbutton.

## RDS Messages

**ALERT!:** Alert warns of local or national emergencies. When an alert announcement comes on the current radio station, ALERT! will appear on the display. You will hear the announcement, even if the volume is muted or a cassette tape or compact disc is playing. If the cassette tape or compact disc player is playing, play will stop during the announcement. You will not be able to turn off alert announcements.

ALERT! will not be affected by tests of the emergency broadcast system. This feature is not supported by all RDS stations.

**INFO (Information):** If the current station has a message, the information symbol will appear on the display. Press this button to see the message. The message may display the artist and song title, call in phone numbers, etc.

If the whole message is not displayed, parts of it will appear every three seconds. To scroll through the message at your own speed, press the INFO button repeatedly. A new group of words will appear on the display with each press. Once the complete message has been displayed, the information symbol will disappear from the display until another new message is received. The old message can be displayed by pressing the INFO button until a new message is received or a different station is tuned to.

When a message is not available from a station, NO INFO will be displayed.

**TRAF (Traffic):** Press this button to receive traffic announcements. If the current tuned station does not broadcast traffic announcements, the radio will seek to a station that does. When the radio finds a station that broadcasts traffic announcements, it will stop. TRAF will appear on the display and when a traffic announcement comes on you will hear it. If no station is found, NO TRAF will appear on the display.

When a traffic announcement comes on the current station or on a related network station, you will hear it, even if the volume is muted or a compact disc is playing. The traffic symbol and TRAF will appear on the display while the announcement plays. If the cassette tape or compact disc player was being used, play will stop during the announcement.

This function does not apply to XM™ Satellite Radio Service.

**Traffic Interrupt Feature:** Your radio can interrupt the play of a cassette, CD, or XM™. Press the TRAF button. The radio will seek to a station that broadcasts traffic announcements. When the radio finds a station that broadcasts traffic announcements, it will stop. TRAF will appear on the display. When a traffic announcement comes on the station that was found, you will hear it. When the traffic announcement is over, the radio will resume play of the cassette, CD, or XM™. If no station is found, NO TRAF will appear on the display.

## Radio Messages

**CAL ERR (Calibration Error):** This message is displayed when the radio has not been calibrated properly for the vehicle. You must return to the dealership for service.

**LOCKED:** This message is displayed when the THEFTLOCK® system has locked up. You must return to the dealership for service.

## XM™ Radio Messages

| Radio Display Message | Condition | Action Required |
|---|---|---|
| XL (Explicit Language Channels) | XL on the radio display, after the channel name, indicates content with explicit language. | These channels, or any others, can be blocked at a customer's request, by calling 1-800-852-XMXM (9696). |
| Updating | Updating encryption code | The encryption code in your receiver is being updated, and no action is required. This process should take no longer than 30 seconds. |
| No Signal | Loss of signal | Your system is functioning correctly, but you are in a location that is blocking the XM signal. When you move into an open area, the signal should return. |
| Loading XM | Acquiring channel audio (after 4 second delay) | Your radio system is acquiring and processing audio and text data. No action is needed. This message should disappear shortly. |
| CH Off Air | Channel not in service | This channel is not currently in service. Tune to another channel. |
| CH Unavail | Channel no longer available | This previously assigned channel is no longer assigned. Tune to another station. If this station was one of your presets, you may need to choose another station for that preset button. |
| No Info | Artist Name/Feature not available | No artist information is available at this time on this channel. Your system is working properly. |
| No Info | Song/Program Title not available | No song title information is available at this time on this channel. Your system is working properly. |

## XM™ Radio Messages (cont'd)

| Radio Display Message | Condition | Action Required |
|---|---|---|
| No Info | Category Name not available | No category information is available at this time on this channel. Your system is working properly. |
| No Info | No Text/Informational message available | No text or informational messages are available at this time on this channel. Your system is working properly. |
| Not Found | No channel available for the chosen category | There are no channels available for the category you selected. Your system is working properly. |
| XM Locked | Theft lock active | The XM receiver in your vehicle may have previously been in another vehicle. For security purposes, XM receivers cannot be swapped between vehicles. If you receive this message after having your vehicle serviced, check with the servicing facility. |
| Radio ID | Radio ID label (channel 0) | If you tune to channel 0, you will see this message alternating with your XM Radio 8 digit radio ID label. This label is needed to activate your service. |
| Unknown | Radio ID not known (should only be if hardware failure) | If you receive this message when you tune to channel 0, you may have a receiver fault. Consult with your dealer. |
| Chk XMRcvr | Hardware failure | If this message does not clear within a short period of time, your receiver may have a fault. Consult with your retail location. |

## Playing a Cassette Tape

Your tape player is built to work best with tapes that are up to 30 to 45 minutes long on each side. Tapes longer than that are so thin they may not work well in this player. The longer side with the tape visible should face to the right. If the ignition is on, but the radio is off, the tape can be inserted and will begin playing. A tape symbol is shown on the display whenever a tape is inserted. If you hear nothing but a garbled sound, the tape may not be in squarely. Press the eject symbol to remove the tape and start over.

While the tape is playing, use the VOL, AUDIO and SEEK controls just as you do for the radio. The display will show TAPE and an arrow showing which side of the tape is playing.

If you want to insert a tape while the ignition is off, first press the eject symbol or DISP.

If an error appears on the display, see "Cassette Tape Messages" later in this section.

**1 PREV (Previous):** Your tape must have at least three seconds of silence between each selection for previous to work. Press this pushbutton to go to the previous selection on the tape if the current selection has been playing for less than three seconds. If pressed when the current selection has been playing from 3 to 13 seconds, it will go to the beginning of the previous selection or the beginning of the current selection, depending upon the position on the tape. If pressed when the current selection has been playing for more than 13 seconds, it will go to the beginning of the current selection.

SEEK and a negative number will appear on the display while the cassette player is in the previous mode. Pressing this pushbutton multiple times will increase the number of selections to be searched back, up to -9.

**2 NEXT:** Your tape must have at least three seconds of silence between each selection for next to work. Press this pushbutton to go to the next selection on the tape. If you press the pushbutton more than once, the player will continue moving forward through the tape. SEEK and a positive number will appear on the display.

**3 REV (Reverse):** Press this pushbutton to reverse the tape rapidly. Press it again to return to playing speed. The radio will play while the tape reverses. The station frequency and REV will appear on the display. You may select stations during reverse operation by using the TUNE and SEEK.

**4 FWD (Forward):** Press this pushbutton to advance quickly to another part of the tape. Press this pushbutton again to return to playing speed. The radio will play while the tape advances. The station frequency and FWD will appear on the display. You may select stations during forward operation by using TUNE and SEEK.

**5 SIDE:** Press this pushbutton to play the other side of the tape.

◀ **SEEK** ▶ : The right arrow is the same as the NEXT pushbutton, and the left arrow is the same as the PREV pushbutton. If the arrow is held or pressed more than once, the player will continue moving forward or backward through the tape. SEEK and a positive or negative number will appear on the display.

◀ **SCAN** ▶ : To scan the tape, press and hold either SCAN arrow for more than two seconds until SCAN appears on the display and you hear a beep. Use this feature to listen to 10 seconds of each selection on the current side of the tape. Press either SCAN arrow again, to stop scanning. Your tape must have at least three seconds of silence between each selection for scan to work.

**BAND:** Press this button to listen to the radio when a tape is playing. The tape will stop but remain in the player.

**TAPE DISC:** Press this button to play a tape when listening to the radio. Press this button to switch between the tape and compact disc if both are loaded. The inactive tape or CD will remain safely inside the radio for future listening.

⏏ **(Eject):** Press this button to stop a tape when it is playing or to eject a tape when it is not playing. Eject may be activated with the radio off. Cassette tapes may be loaded with the radio off if this button is pressed first.

## Cassette Tape Messages

**CHK TAPE (Check Tape):** If CHK TAPE appears on the radio display, the tape won't play because of one of the following errors.

- The tape is tight and the player can't turn the tape hubs. Remove the tape. Hold the tape with the open end down and try to turn the right hub counterclockwise with a pencil. Turn the tape over and repeat. If the hubs do not turn easily, your tape may be damaged and should not be used in the player. Try a new tape to make sure your player is working properly.
- The tape is broken. Try a new tape.
- The tape is wrapped around the tape head. Attempt to get the cassette out. Try a new tape.

**CLEAN:** If this message appears on the display, the cassette tape player needs to be cleaned. It will still play tapes, but you should clean it as soon as possible to prevent damage to the tapes and player. See *Care of Your Cassette Tape Player on page 3-97*.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error can't be corrected, contact your dealer.

## CD Adapter Kits

It is possible to use a portable CD player adapter kit with your cassette tape player after activating the bypass feature on your tape player.

To activate the bypass feature, perform the following steps:

1. Turn the ignition on.
2. Turn the radio off.
3. Press and hold the TAPE DISC button for five seconds. The radio will display READY and the tape symbol on the display will flash, indicating the feature is active.
4. Insert the adapter into the cassette tape slot. It will power up the radio and begin playing.

The override feature will remain active until the eject symbol is pressed.

## Playing a Compact Disc

Insert a disc partway into the slot, label side up. The player will pull it in and the disc should begin playing. The display will show the CD symbol. If you want to insert a compact disc with the ignition off, first press DISP or the eject symbol.

If an error appears on the display, see "Compact Disc Messages" later in this section.

**1 PREV (Previous):** Press this pushbutton to go to the previous track if the current track has been playing for less than eight seconds. If pressed when the current track has been playing for more than eight seconds, it will go to the beginning of the current track. TRACK and the track number will appear on the display. If you hold this pushbutton or press it more than once, the player will continue moving back through the disc.

**2 NEXT:** Press this pushbutton to go to the next track. TRACK and the track number will appear on the display. If you hold this pushbutton or press it more than once, the player will continue moving forward through the disc.

**3 REV (Reverse):** Press and hold this pushbutton to reverse quickly within a track. Press and hold this pushbutton for less than two seconds to reverse at six times the normal playing speed. Press and hold it for more than two seconds to reverse at 17 times the normal playing speed. Release it to play the passage. The display will show ET and the elapsed time.

**4 FWD (Forward):** Press and hold this pushbutton to advance quickly within a track. Press and hold this pushbutton for less than two seconds to advance at six times the normal playing speed. Press and hold it for more than two seconds to advance at 17 times the normal playing speed. Release it to play the passage. The display will show ET and the elapsed time.

**6 RDM (Random):** Press this pushbutton to hear the tracks in random, rather than sequential, order. RDM ON will appear on the display. RDM T and the track number will appear on the display when each track starts to play. Press this pushbutton again to turn off random play. RDM OFF will appear on the display.

◀ **SEEK** ▶ : Press the left arrow to go to the start of the current or to the previous track. Press the right arrow to go to the start of the next track. If either arrow is held or pressed more then once, the player will continue moving backward or forward through the CD.

◀ **SCAN** ▶ : To scan the disc, press and hold either SCAN arrow for more than two seconds until SCAN appears on the display and you hear a beep. Use this feature to listen to 10 seconds of each track of the disc. Press either SCAN arrow again, to stop scanning.

**DISP (Display):** Press this knob to see how long the current track has been playing. ET and the elapsed time will appear on the display. To change the default on the display (track or elapsed time), push the knob until you see the display you want, then hold the knob for two seconds. The radio will produce one beep and selected display will now be the default.

**BAND:** Press this button to listen to the radio when a CD is playing. The CD will stop but remain in the player.

**TAPE DISC:** Press this button to play a tape when listening to the radio. Press this button to switch between the tape and compact disc if both are loaded. The inactive tape or CD will remain safely inside the radio for future listening.

⏏ **(Eject):** Press this button to stop a CD when it is playing or to eject a CD when it is not playing. Eject may be activated with either the ignition or radio off. CDs may be loaded with the radio and ignition off if this button is pressed first.

## Compact Disc Messages

If the disc comes out, it could be for one of the following reasons:

- You're driving on a very rough road. When the road becomes smoother the disc should play.
- It's very hot. When the temperature returns to normal, the disc should play.
- The disc is dirty, scratched, wet or upside down.
- The air is very humid. If so, wait about an hour and try again.

If the CD is not playing correctly, for any other reason, try a known good CD.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error can't be corrected, contact your dealer.

## Listening to a DVD

Your vehicle may have an overhead Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) System. If your vehicle has this system and a DVD is playing, the DVD symbol will appear on the radio display indicating that the DVD is available and can be listened through your vehicle's speakers. To listen to the DVD, press the TAPE DISC button until RSE appears on the radio display. The current radio source will stop and the DVD sound will come through the speakers. To stop listening to the DVD, press the TAPE DISC button, if a cassette tape or a CD is loaded, or press the BAND button to select a different source.

When the RSE system is turned off, the DVD symbol will go off of the radio display and the radio will display RSE OFF. The radio will return to the last radio source that you were listening to.

# Rear Seat Entertainment System

Your vehicle may have the optional Digital Versatile Disc (DVD) Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) system. The RSE system includes a DVD player, a video display screen, two sets of wireless headphones, and a remote control.

## Before You Drive

The RSE system is for rear seat passengers. The driver cannot safely view the video screen while driving and should not try to do so.

## DVD Player

The DVD player is located in the overhead console. The DVD player can be controlled by the buttons on the DVD player and by the buttons on the remote control. See "Remote Control" later in this section for more information.

The DVD player power may be turned on when the ignition is in RUN, ACCESSORY, or when Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active.

The RSE system DVD player is only compatible with DVDs of the appropriate DVD region code for the country that the vehicle was sold in. The DVD region code is printed on the jacket of most DVDs.

The DVD player will also play audio CDs. Home recorded CDs (CD-R or CD-RW formats) will not play in this DVD player.

If an error message appears on the video screen, see "DVD Messages" later in this section.




## DVD Player Buttons

⏻ **(Power):** Press this button to turn the RSE system on or off.

⏏ **(Eject):** Press this button to eject a DVD or a CD.

**SRCE (Source):** Press this button to toggle between the DVD player and an auxiliary source.

■ **(Stop):** Press this button to stop the play of the DVD player. Press this button twice to return to the beginning of the DVD.

▸/II **(Play/Pause):** Press this button to turn the DVD player on, to start play of a DVD or CD and to toggle between play and pause of a DVD or CD.

**(Menu):** Press this button to access the DVD menu. This button only operates with a DVD.

**(Display Menu):** Press this button to modify the video screen display characteristics.

**(Menu Navigation):** Use the arrow keys to navigate through a menu.

**(Enter):** Press this button to select items within a menu.

## Playing a Disc

To play a disc, gently insert the disc with the label side up into the loading slot. The DVD player will continue loading the disc and the player will automatically start, if the vehicle ignition is in RUN, ACCESSORY, or when RAP is active.

If a disc is already in the player, press the play/pause button on the face of the DVD player or on the remote control.

Some DVDs will not allow you to fast forward or skip the copyright or previews. Some DVDs will begin playing after the previews have finished. If the DVD does not begin to play the main title, refer to the on-screen instructions, as the DVD may be displaying its main title menu.

## Stopping and Resume Playback

To stop a disc, press and release the stop button on the DVD player or the remote control. To resume playback, press the play/pause button on the DVD player or the remote control. As long as the disc has not been ejected and the stop button has not been pressed twice, the movie should resume play from where it was last stopped. If the disc has been ejected, or if the stop button has been pressed twice, the disc will resume play at the beginning.

## Ejecting a Disc

Press the eject button on the DVD player to eject the disc.

If a disc is ejected from the player, but is not removed, the DVD player will reload the disc within 25 to 30 seconds. The disc will then be stored in the DVD player. The DVD player will not resume play of this disc automatically.

## DVD Messages

The following errors may be displayed on the video screen:

- **Disc Format Error:** This message will be displayed if a disc is inserted upside down, if the disc is not able to be read or if the disc format is not compatible with the DVD player.
- **Load/Eject Error:** This message will be displayed if the disc is not properly loaded or ejected.
- **Disc Play Error:** This message will be displayed if the DVD player can not play the disc. Severely damaged discs will cause this error.
- **Region Code Error:** This message will be displayed if the region code of the DVD is not compatible with the DVD player.
- **No Disc:** This message will be displayed if the PLAY button is pressed and no disc is in the player.

**Parental Control Button:** This button is located on the front of the DVD console, behind the video screen, near the driver of the vehicle. Press this button while a DVD or CD is playing to freeze the video and mute the audio. The video screen will display Parental Control ON and the power indicator light on the DVD player will flash. It will also disable all other button operations from the remote control and the DVD player, with the exception of the eject button. The driver will then be able to gain the attention of the rear seat passengers. Press this button again to restore normal operation of the DVD player.

This button may also be used to turn the DVD player power on and automatically resume play if the vehicle is in an enabled power mode.

## Video Screen

The video screen is located in the overhead console. To use the video screen, push forward on the release latch and the screen will fold down. Adjust the screen's position as desired. When the video screen is not in use, push it up into its latched position.

The DVD player and display will continue to operate when the screen is in either the up or the down position. The video screen contains the infrared transmitters for the wireless headphones and the infrared receiver for the remote control. If the screen is in the closed position, the infrared signals will not be available for the operation of the headphones and the remote control.

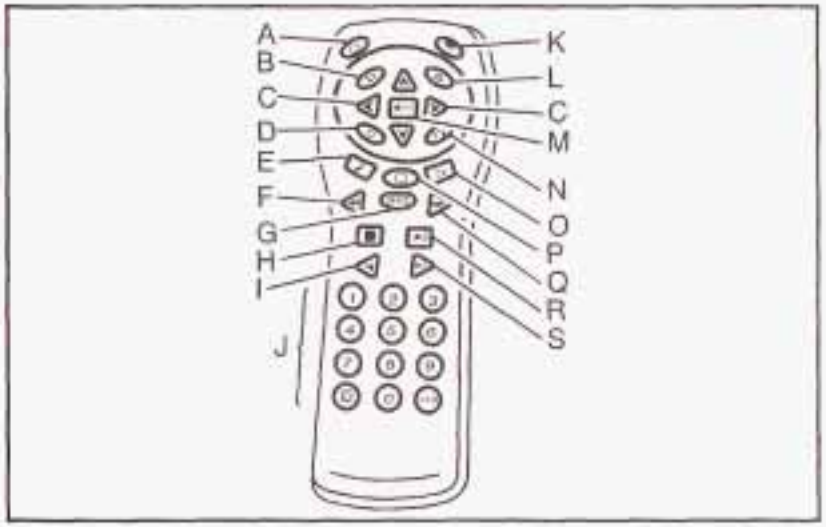
***Notice:*** **Avoid directly touching the video screen, as damage may occur. See "Cleaning the Video Screen" in the Index for more information.**

## Remote Control

To use the remote control, aim it at the infrared window below the video screen and press the desired button. Direct sunlight or very bright light may affect the ability of the entertainment system to receive signals from the remote control. If the remote control does not seem to be working, the batteries may need to be replaced. See "Battery Replacement" later in this section.

Objects blocking the line of sight may also affect the function of the remote control.

## Remote Control Buttons




A. **Power:** Press this button to turn the DVD player on or off.

B. **Title:** Press this button to return the DVD to the main menu of the DVD.

C. **Menu Navigation:** Use the arrow keys to navigate through a menu. The up arrow will skip to the next chapter or track, the down arrow will take you to the beginning of the current chapter or track. Press the down arrow twice to take you to the previous chapter or track. The right arrow will fast forward and the left arrow will fast reverse through a chapter or track.

D. **Display Menu:** Press this button to modify the video screen display characteristics.

E. **Audio:** Press this button to call-up a menu that will operate only when a DVD is being played. The format and content of this function is defined by the disc and is dependent of the disc.

F. **Fast Reverse:** Press this button to fast reverse the DVD or CD. To stop fast reversing, press this button again. This button may not work when the DVD is playing the copyright or the previews.

G. **Source:** Press this button to toggle between the DVD player and an auxiliary source.

H. **Stop:** Press this button to stop the play of a DVD or CD. Press this button twice to return to the beginning of the DVD.

I. **Previous Track/Chapter:** Press this button to return to the start of the current track or chapter. Press this button again to return to the previous track or chapter. This button may not work when the DVD is playing the copyright or the previews.

J. **Numeric Key Pad:** The remote control numeric keypad provides you with the capability of direct chapter, title and track number selection. Press the button, located on the bottom left of the numeric key pad, within 3 seconds of inputting a numeric selection to clear all numeric inputs. Press the button, located on the bottom left of the numeric key pad, to select chapter, title, and track numbers greater than 9.

K. **Illumination:** Press this button to turn the remote control backlight on.

L. **Menu:** Press this button to access the DVD menu (this button only operates with a DVD).

M. **Enter:** Press this button to select items within a menu.

N. **Return:** Press this button to exit the current active menu and return to the previous menu. This button will operate only when a DVD is being played and a menu is active.

O. **Angle:** Press this button to call-up a menu that will operate only when a DVD is being played. The format and content of this function is defined by the disc and is dependent of the disc.

P. **Subtitle:** Press this button to call-up a menu that will operate only when a DVD is being played. The format and content of this function is defined by the disc and is dependent of the disc.

Q. **Fast Forward:** Press this button to fast forward the DVD or CD. To stop fast forwarding, press this button again. This button may not work when the DVD is playing the copyright or the previews.

R. **Play/Pause:** Press this button to turn the DVD player on, to start play of a DVD or CD and to toggle between play and pause of a DVD or CD.

S. **Next Track/Chapter:** Press this button to advance to the beginning of the next track or chapter. This button may not work when the DVD is playing the copyright or the previews.

## Battery Replacement

To change the batteries, do the following:

1. Remove the battery compartment door located on the bottom of the remote control.
2. Replace the two AA batteries in the compartment. Make sure that they are installed correctly.
3. Close the battery door securely.

***Notice:*** **Do not store the remote control in heat or direct sunlight. This could damage the remote control and it would not be covered by your vehicles warranty. Keep the remote control stored in a cool, dry place.**

If the remote control is to be stored for a long period of time, remove the batteries and keep them in a cool, dry place.

## Headphones

The RSE system includes two sets of wireless infrared headphones.

Each set of headphones has an ON/OFF control. An indicator light will illuminate on the headphones when they are on. If the light does not illuminate, the batteries may need to be replaced. See "Battery Replacement" later in this section for more information. To turn the headphones OFF activate the ON/OFF control.

Each set of headphones has a volume knob. To adjust the volume, adjust this knob.

The headphones will automatically turn off if they lose the infrared signal from the system after approximately four minutes in order to preserve their battery power. The signal may be lost if the system is turned off or if the headphones are out of range of the infrared signal transmitters that are located below the video display screen.

## Battery Replacement

To change the batteries, do the following:

1. Loosen the screw on the battery compartment door located on the left side of the headphone earpiece.
2. Replace the two AAA batteries in the compartment. Make sure that they are installed correctly.
3. Tighten the screws to close the compartment door.

***Notice:*** **Do not store the headphones in heat or direct sunlight. This could damage the headphones and would not be covered by your warranty. Keep the headphones stored in a cool place.**

If the headphones are to be stored for a long period of time, remove the batteries and keep them in a cool, dry place.

## Stereo RCA Jacks

The RCA jacks are located behind the video screen on the front of the DVD console. The RCA jacks allow you to connect audio and video from an auxiliary device such as a camcorder or a video game unit to your RSE system just as you would to a standard television. Standard RCA cables are needed to connect the auxiliary device to the RCA jacks. The yellow connector inputs video and the red and white connectors input right and left stereo audio. Refer to the manufacturer's instructions for proper connection of your auxiliary device.

To use the auxiliary inputs on the RSE system, connect an external auxiliary device to the color-coded RCA jacks and turn both the auxiliary device and the RSE system power on. If the RSE system had been previously in the DVD player mode, you will need to press the SRCE button on the faceplate or the remote control to change to the auxiliary mode. Pressing the SRCE button will toggle the RSE system between the auxiliary device and the DVD player.

## How to Change the Video Format when in the Auxiliary Mode

The auxiliary input video format is preset to NTSC. In some countries, the video format may be in PAL system. To change the video format, perform the following:

1. Press the display menu button.
2. Press the navigation down arrow key to scroll down to Video Format.
3. Press the enter button to select Video Format.
4. Press the navigation key to select the PAL video format.
5. Press the enter button to accept the change.

## Audio Output

Audio from the DVD player or auxiliary inputs may be heard through the following possible sources:

- Wireless Headphones
- Vehicle Speakers
- Vehicle wired headphone jacks on the Rear Seat Audio system (if equipped)

The RSE system will always transmit the audio signal by infrared to the wireless headphones, if there is audio available. See "Headphones" previously for more information.

The RSE system is capable of outputting audio to the vehicle speakers by using the radio. The RSE system may be selected as an audio source on the radio if the RSE system power is on. Once the RSE system is selected as an audio source on the radio you may adjust the speaker volume on the radio. If the RSE system power is not on, the RSE system will not be an available source on the radio. Refer to the radio information for the radio that your vehicle has for more information.

The RSE system is capable of outputting audio to the wired headphone jacks on the Rear Seat Audio system (if equipped). The RSE system may be selected as an audio source on the Rear Seat Audio system if the RSE system power is on. Refer to *Rear Seat Audio (RSA) on page 3-91* for more information.

| Problem | Recommended Action |
|---|---|
| No power. | The ignition might not be in on or accessory.<br>The parental control button might have been pressed. (The power indicator light will flash.) |
| Disc will not play. | The system might be off.<br>The parental control button might have been pressed. (The power indicator light will flash.)<br>The system might be in auxiliary source mode. Press the SRCE button to toggle between the DVD player and the auxiliary source.<br>The disc is upside down or is not compatible. |
| The picture does not fill the screen. There are black borders on the top and bottom or on both sides or it looks stretched out. | Press the Display button on the DVD player or on the remote control. Change the display mode. |
| The disc was ejected, but it was pulled back into the DVD player. | The disc is being stored in the DVD player. Press the eject button again to eject the disc. |

| Problem | Recommended Action |
|---|---|
| In auxiliary mode, the picture moves or scrolls. | Check the signal coming from the auxiliary device and make sure that the connection and the signal is good.<br>Change the Video Format to PAL or NTSC. See "Stereo RCA Jacks" previously for how to change the video format. |
| The language in the audio or on the screen is wrong. | Press the Menu button on the DVD player or on the remote control and change the audio or language selection on the DVD menu. |
| The remote control does not work. | Point the remote control directly at the infrared window below the video screen while using.<br>Check that the batteries are not dead or put in wrong.<br>The parental control button might have been pressed. (The power indicator light will flash.) |

| Problem | Recommended Action |
|---|---|
| After stopping the player, I push Play but sometimes the DVD starts where I left off and sometimes at the beginning. | If the stop button was pressed one time, the DVD player will resume playing where the DVD was stopped. If the stop button was pressed two times the DVD player will begin to play from the beginning of the DVD. |
| The auxiliary source is running but there is no picture or sound. | Press the SRCE button to change from the DVD player mode to the auxiliary source mode.Check to make sure that the auxiliary source is connected to the inputs properly. |
| My disc is stuck in the player. The Load/Eject button does not work. | Press the Load/Eject button on the DVD player. Turn the power off, then on again, then press the Load/Eject button on the DVD player.<br>Do not attempt to forcibly remove the disc from the DVD player. This could permanently damage the DVD player. |
| Sometimes the wireless headphone audio cuts out or buzzes. | This could be caused by interference from cellular telephone towers or by using your cellular telephone in the vehicle. |
| I lost the remote and/or the headphones. | See your dealer for assistance. |
| What is the best way to clean the video screen? | Wipe the video screen with a soft cloth that is damp with water. |

## Rear Seat Audio (RSA)

This feature allows rear seat passengers to listen to any of the audio sources: radio, cassette tapes, CDs, DVDs, XM™ (if equipped) depending on your vehicles options. However, the rear seat passengers can only control the music sources that the front seat passengers are not listening to. For example, rear seat passengers may listen to a cassette tape through headphones while the driver listens to the radio through the front speakers. The rear seat passengers have control of the volume for each set of headphones. The front seat audio controls always override the RSA controls.

## Rear Seat Audio Controls




The following functions are controlled by the RSA system buttons:

⏻ **(Power):** Press this button to turn the rear seat audio system on or off. The rear speakers will be muted when the power is turned on unless your vehicle is equipped with the Bose® audio system. You may operate the rear seat audio functions even when the primary radio power is off.

**(Volume):** Turn the knob to increase or to decrease volume. The left knob controls the left headphone and the right knob controls the right headphone.

**SRC (Source):** Press this button to select an audio source: radio, cassette tapes, CDs, DVDs, XM (if equipped) depending on your vehicles options.

▽ **SEEK** △: While listening to AM, FM1 or FM2, XM1 or XM2, press the up or the down arrow to tune to the next or to the previous station and stay there. If the front radio is in use, you cannot seek through different stations.

While listening to a cassette tape, press the up or the down arrow to hear the next or the previous selection. If the cassette tape on the front radio is in use, you cannot seek through different selections on a tape.

While listening to a CD, press the up arrow to hear the next track on the CD. Press the down arrow to go back to the start of the current track if more than eight seconds have played. If the CD player on the front radio is in use, you cannot seek through different tracks.

**PROG (Program):** The front passengers must be listening to something different for each of these functions to work:

- Press this button to go to the preset radio stations set on the pushbuttons on the main radio.
- When a cassette tape is playing, press this button to go to the other side of the tape.
- When a CD is playing in the radio, press this button to go back to the beginning of the CD.
- When a CD is playing in the CD changer, press this button to select a disc.

## CD Changer




The compact disc changer plays up to six standard size CDs continuously. Individual CDs may be loaded or ejected into or from any position.

A green light on each numbered button indicates a CD is loaded in the respective position. An amber light on a numbered button indicates that a CD is playing. When loading CDs, the loading slot indicators turn amber to indicate that the player is ready to accept a CD. CDs can be loaded or ejected with the radio or the ignition being on or off.

You must load CDs with the label side up. If you do not, the player will automatically eject the CDs.

***Notice:*** **Loading CDs with adhesive labels will damage the player.**

### To load a CD, perform the following steps:

1. Press the LOAD button. Available positions will blink amber.
2. Select a position by pressing the desired numbered button with the amber blinking light. If a button is not pressed within five seconds, the changer will go to the lowest available position.
3. Load the CD when the loading slot indicators turn amber. An internal door will open allowing a single CD to be inserted into the changer. After approximately 10 seconds the changer will be ready to play.

### To load two or more CDs, perform the following steps:

1. Press and hold the LOAD button. The first CD will be loaded into the lowest numbered empty position.
2. Load a single CD when the loading slot indicators turn amber. After about 10 seconds the changer will cycle to the next available position.
3. Repeat Step 2 until all CDs are loaded into all of the desired positions. If you do not wish to load all of the positions, you can cancel the load all function by pressing a button with a green flashing indicator light or wait 20 seconds for the changer to time out.

### To eject a single CD, perform the following steps:

1. Press the eject button (upward pointing arrow). The buttons with loaded CDs will blink amber.
2. Press one of the amber blinking buttons to select the location of the CD you want to eject. The changer will move to that location and eject the CD. If you do not remove the CD from the player within 10 seconds, it will be reloaded. If the eject button is pressed and a numbered location button is not pressed within five seconds, the current or last played CD will be ejected.

To eject all CDs, press and hold the eject button.

### There are two ways to play a CD. Perform one of the following:

- With the radio on, press the desired numbered button with a green indicator light on the CD changer.
- Press the TAPE DISC button on the radio. The CD changer will go to its last played position.

## CD Functions

**1 PREV (Previous):** Press this pushbutton to go to the previous track if the current track has been playing for less than eight seconds. If pressed when the current track has been playing for more than eight seconds, it will go to the beginning of the current track. If you hold or press this pushbutton more than once, the player will continue moving back through the CD.

**2 NEXT:** Press this pushbutton to go to the next track. If you hold this pushbutton or press it more than once, the player will continue moving forward through the CD.

**3 REV (Reverse):** Press and hold this pushbutton to reverse quickly through a track. Release it to resume playing.

**4 FWD (Forward):** Press and hold this pushbutton to advance quickly through a track. Release it to resume playing.

**5** ◇: Press this pushbutton to select a CD. The CD number and track number will be displayed.

**6 RDM (Random):** Press this button to hear the tracks in random, rather than sequential, order. RDM ALL will appear on the radio display, which will randomly play all of the loaded CDs. Press and hold this button until you hear a beep and the radio will display RDM ONE, which will randomly play the tracks on the current CD. Press this button again to turn off random play, RDM OFF will appear on the radio display.

◀ **SEEK** ▶ : Press the right or the left SEEK arrow to go to the next or to the previous track on the CD.

**BAND:** Press BAND to listen to the radio when a CD is playing.

**TAPE DISC:** Press this button if you have a CD loaded in the changer and the radio is turned on, to play a CD. Press this button to switch between playing a tape and the CD changer if all are loaded.

## Compact Disc Changer Errors

**CHK CD (Check):** If this message appears on the display, it could be for one of the following reasons:

- You are driving on a very rough road. The CD should play when the road gets smoother.
- A CD is upside down.
- It is dirty, scratched or wet.
- It is very humid. If so, wait about an hour and try again.
- The CD player is very hot.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your dealership.

## Theft-Deterrent Feature

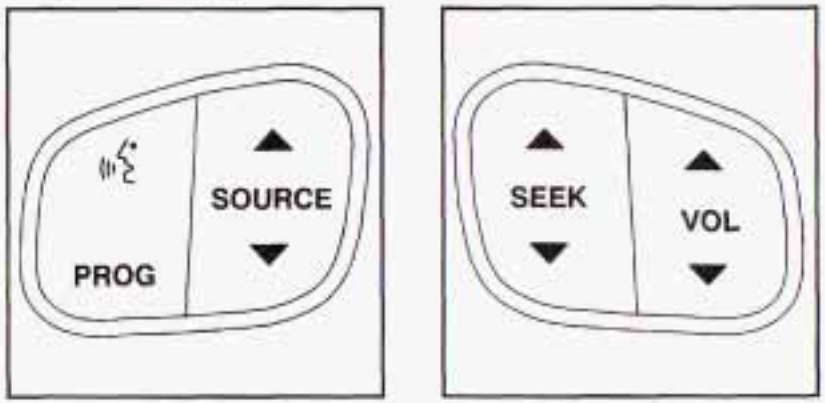
THEFTLOCK® is designed to discourage theft of your radio. The feature works automatically by learning a portion of the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). If the radio is moved to a different vehicle, it will not operate and LOCKED will be displayed.

When the radio and vehicle are turned off, the blinking red light indicates that THEFTLOCK® is armed.

With THEFTLOCK® activated, your radio will not operate if stolen.

## Audio Steering Wheel Controls

You can control certain radio functions using the buttons on your steering wheel.




**(OnStar/Voice Recognition):** You can press this button to interact with the OnStar® system. See the OnStar® manual provided with your vehicle for more information.

**PROG (Program):** Press this button to play a station you have programmed on the radio preset buttons on the selected band. If a cassette tape is playing, press this button to play the other side of the tape. If a compact disc is playing in the CD changer, press this button to go to the next available CD.

**▲ SOURCE ▼:** Press this button to select AM, FM1 or FM2, XM1 or XM2 (if equipped), or a cassette tape or CD. The cassette or CD must be loaded to play. Available loaded sources are shown on the display as a tape or a CD symbol.

**▲ SEEK ▼:** Press the up or the down arrow to seek to the next or to the previous radio station and stay there.

If a cassette tape or compact disc is playing, the player will advance with the up arrow and reverse with the down arrow.

**▲ VOL ▼:** Press the up or the down arrow to increase or to decrease volume.

## DVD Distortion

You may experience audio distortion in the IR headphones when operating cellular phones, scanners, CB radios, Global Positioning Systems (GPS)*, two-way radios, mobile fax, or walkie talkies.

It may be necessary to turn off the DVD player when operating one of these devices in or near the vehicle.

* Excludes the OnStar® System.

## Understanding Radio Reception

### AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night. The longer range, however, can cause stations to interfere with each other. AM can pick up noise from things like storms and power lines. Try reducing the treble to reduce this noise if you ever get it.

### FM Stereo

FM stereo will give you the best sound, but FM signals will reach only about 10 to 40 miles (16 to 65 km). Tall buildings or hills can interfere with FM signals, causing the sound to come and go.

### XM™ Satellite Radio Service

XM™ Satellite Radio gives you digital radio reception from coast to coast. Just as with FM, tall buildings or hills can interfere with Satellite radio signals, causing the sound to come and go. Your radio may display NO SIGNAL to indicate interference.

## Care of Your Cassette Tape Player

A tape player that is not cleaned regularly can cause reduced sound quality, ruined cassettes or a damaged mechanism. Cassette tapes should be stored in their cases away from contaminants, direct sunlight and extreme heat. If they aren't, they may not operate properly or may cause failure of the tape player.

Your tape player should be cleaned regularly after every 50 hours of use. Your radio may display CLEAN to indicate that you have used your tape player for 50 hours without resetting the tape clean timer. If this message appears on the display, your cassette tape player needs to be cleaned. It will still play tapes, but you should clean it as soon as possible to prevent damage to your tapes and player. If you notice a reduction in sound quality, try a known good cassette to see if the tape or the tape player is at fault. If this other cassette has no improvement in sound quality, clean the tape player.

For best results, use a scrubbing action, non-abrasive cleaning cassette with pads which scrub the tape head as the hubs of the cleaner cassette turn. The recommended cleaning cassette is available through your dealership.

When cleaning the cassette tape player with the recommended non-abrasive cleaning cassette, it is possible that the cassette may eject, because the cut tape detection feature on your radio may recognize it as a broken tape, in error. To prevent the cleaning cassette from being ejected, use the following steps:

1. Turn the ignition on.
2. Turn the radio off.
3. Press and hold the TAPE DISC button for five seconds. READY will appear on the display and the cassette symbol will flash for five seconds.
4. Insert the scrubbing action cleaning cassette.
5. Eject the cleaning cassette after the manufacturer's recommended cleaning time.

When the cleaning cassette has been ejected, the cut tape detection feature is active again.

You may also choose a non-scrubbing action, wet-type cleaner which uses a cassette with a fabric belt to clean the tape head. This type of cleaning cassette will not eject on its own. A non-scrubbing action cleaner may not clean as thoroughly as the scrubbing type cleaner. The use of a non-scrubbing action, dry-type cleaning cassette is not recommended.

After you clean the player, press and hold the eject button for five seconds to reset the CLEAN indicator. The radio will display — or CLEANED to show the indicator was reset.

Cassettes are subject to wear and the sound quality may degrade over time. Always make sure the cassette tape is in good condition before you have your tape player serviced.

## Care of Your CDs and DVDs

Handle discs carefully. Store them in their original cases or other protective cases and away from direct sunlight and dust. If the surface of a disc is soiled, dampen a clean, soft cloth in a mild, neutral detergent solution and clean it, wiping from the center to the edge.

Be sure never to touch the side without writing when handling discs. Pick up discs by grasping the outer edges or the edge of the hole and the outer edge.

## Care of Your CD Changer

The use of CD lens cleaner discs is not advised, due to the risk of contaminating the lens of the CD optics with lubricants internal to the CD mechanism.

## Care of Your CD and DVD Player

The use of CD lens cleaner discs is not advised, due to the risk of contaminating the lens of the CD optics with lubricants internal to the CD mechanism.

## Cleaning the Video Screen

Pour some isopropyl or rubbing alcohol on a clean cloth and gently wipe the video screen. Do not spray directly onto the screen and do not press too hard or too long on the video screen.

## Diversity Antenna System

Your AM-FM antennas are located in the rear side windows. Be sure that the inside surfaces of the rear side windows are not scratched and that the lines on the glass are not damaged. If the inside surfaces are damaged, they could interfere with radio reception.

***Notice:*** **Do not try to clear frost or other material from the inside of the front windshield or rear window with a razor blade or anything else that is sharp. This may damage the rear defogger grid and affect your radio's ability to pick up stations clearly. The repairs wouldn't be covered by your warranty.**

If you choose to add an aftermarket cellular telephone to your vehicle, and the antenna needs to be attached to the glass, be sure that you do not damage the grid lines for the AM-FM antennas or place the cellular telephone antenna over the grid lines.

## XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System

Your XM™ Satellite Radio antenna is located on the roof of your vehicle. Keep this antenna clear of snow and ice build up for clear radio reception.

The performance of your XM™ system may be affected if your sunroof is open.

Loading items onto the roof of your vehicle can interfere with the performance of your XM™ system. Make sure that the XM™ satellite antenna is not obstructed.

## NOTES

# Section 4 Driving Your Vehicle


**Your Driving, the Road, and Your Vehicle** ..... 4-2
- Defensive Driving ..... 4-2
- Drunken Driving ..... 4-2
- Control of a Vehicle ..... 4-5
- Braking ..... 4-6
- Road Sensing Suspension ..... 4-9
- Stabilitrak® System ..... 4-9
- Steering ..... 4-12
- Off-Road Recovery ..... 4-14
- Passing ..... 4-14
- Loss of Control ..... 4-16
- Operating Your All-Wheel-Drive Vehicle Off Paved Roads ..... 4-17
- Driving at Night ..... 4-31
- Driving in Rain and on Wet Roads ..... 4-32
- City Driving ..... 4-35
- Freeway Driving ..... 4-36
- Before Leaving on a Long Trip ..... 4-37
- Highway Hypnosis ..... 4-38
- Hill and Mountain Roads ..... 4-38
- Winter Driving ..... 4-40
- If You Are Stuck: In Sand, Mud, Ice or Snow ..... 4-44

**Towing** ..... 4-47
- Towing Your Vehicle ..... 4-47
- Recreational Vehicle Towing ..... 4-47
- Loading Your Vehicle ..... 4-48
- Trailer Recommendations ..... 4-50
- Towing a Trailer ..... 4-50

# Your Driving, the Road, and Your Vehicle

## Defensive Driving

The best advice anyone can give about driving is: Drive defensively.

Please start with a very important safety device in your vehicle: Buckle up. See *Safety Belts: They Are for Everyone on page 1-25.*

Defensive driving really means "be ready for anything." On city streets, rural roads or freeways, it means "always expect the unexpected."

Assume that pedestrians or other drivers are going to be careless and make mistakes. Anticipate what they might do. Be ready for their mistakes.

Rear-end collisions are about the most preventable of accidents. Yet they are common. Allow enough following distance. It's the best defensive driving maneuver, in both city and rural driving. You never know when the vehicle in front of you is going to brake or turn suddenly.

Defensive driving requires that a driver concentrate on the driving task. Anything that distracts from the driving task — such as concentrating on a cellular telephone call, reading, or reaching for something on the floor — makes proper defensive driving more difficult and can even cause a collision, with resulting injury.

Ask a passenger to help do things like this, or pull off the road in a safe place to do them yourself. These simple defensive driving techniques could save your life.

## Drunken Driving

Death and injury associated with drinking and driving is a national tragedy. It's the number one contributor to the highway death toll, claiming thousands of victims every year.

Alcohol affects four things that anyone needs to drive a vehicle:

- Judgment
- Muscular Coordination
- Vision
- Attentiveness.

Police records show that almost half of all motor vehicle-related deaths involve alcohol. In most cases, these deaths are the result of someone who was drinking and driving. In recent years, more than 16,000 annual motor vehicle-related deaths have been associated with the use of alcohol, with more than 300,000 people injured.

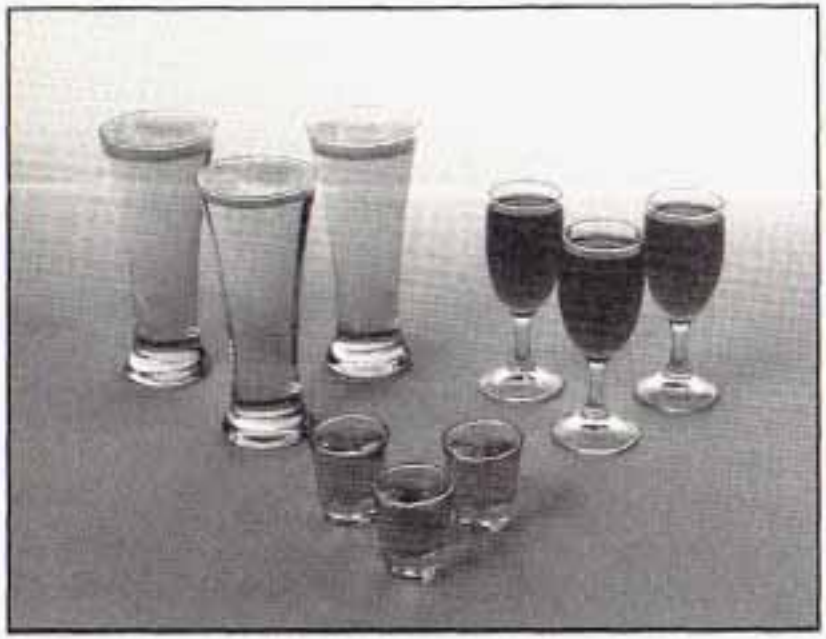
Many adults — by some estimates, nearly half the adult population — choose never to drink alcohol, so they never drive after drinking. For persons under 21, it's against the law in every U.S. state to drink alcohol. There are good medical, psychological and developmental reasons for these laws.

The obvious way to eliminate the leading highway safety problem is for people never to drink alcohol and then drive. But what if people do? How much is "too much" if someone plans to drive? It's a lot less than many might think. Although it depends on each person and situation, here is some general information on the problem.

The Blood Alcohol Concentration (BAC) of someone who is drinking depends upon four things:

- The amount of alcohol consumed
- The drinker's body weight
- The amount of food that is consumed before and during drinking
- The length of time it has taken the drinker to consume the alcohol.

According to the American Medical Association, a 180 lb (82 kg) person who drinks three 12 ounce (355 ml) bottles of beer in an hour will end up with a BAC of about 0.06 percent. The person would reach the same BAC by drinking three 4 ounce (120 ml) glasses of wine or three mixed drinks if each had 1 – 1/2 ounces (45 ml) of a liquor like whiskey, gin or vodka.



It's the amount of alcohol that counts. For example, if the same person drank three double martinis (3 ounces or 90 ml of liquor each) within an hour, the person's BAC would be close to 0.12 percent. A person who consumes food just before or during drinking will have a somewhat lower BAC level.

There is a gender difference, too. Women generally have a lower relative percentage of body water than men. Since alcohol is carried in body water, this means that a woman generally will reach a higher BAC level than a man of her same body weight when each has the same number of drinks.

The law in an increasing number of U.S. states, and throughout Canada, sets the legal limit at 0.08 percent. In some other countries, the limit is even lower. For example, it is 0.05 percent in both France and Germany. The BAC limit for all commercial drivers in the United States is 0.04 percent.

The BAC will be over 0.10 percent after three to six drinks (in one hour). Of course, as we've seen, it depends on how much alcohol is in the drinks, and how quickly the person drinks them.

But the ability to drive is affected well below a BAC of 0.10 percent. Research shows that the driving skills of many people are impaired at a BAC approaching 0.05 percent, and that the effects are worse at night. All drivers are impaired at BAC levels above 0.05 percent. Statistics show that the chance of being in a collision increases sharply for drivers who have a BAC of 0.05 percent or above. A driver with a BAC level of 0.06 percent has doubled his or her chance of having a collision. At a BAC level of 0.10 percent, the chance of this driver having a collision is 12 times greater; at a level of 0.15 percent, the chance is 25 times greater!

The body takes about an hour to rid itself of the alcohol in one drink. No amount of coffee or number of cold showers will speed that up. "I'll be careful" isn't the right answer. What if there's an emergency, a need to take sudden action, as when a child darts into the street? A person with even a moderate BAC might not be able to react quickly enough to avoid the collision.

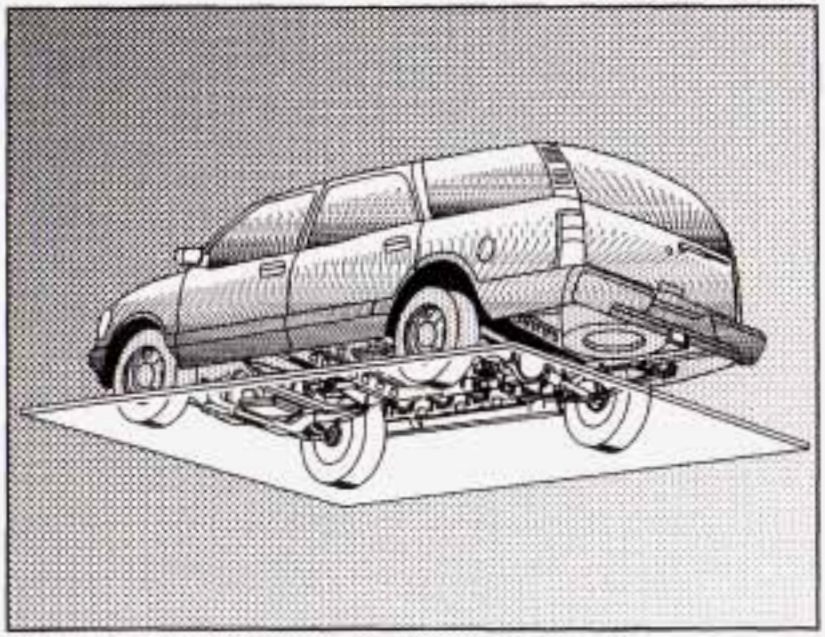
There's something else about drinking and driving that many people don't know. Medical research shows that alcohol in a person's system can make crash injuries worse, especially injuries to the brain, spinal cord or heart. This means that when anyone who has been drinking — driver or passenger — is in a crash, that person's chance of being killed or permanently disabled is higher than if the person had not been drinking.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Drinking and then driving is very dangerous. Your reflexes, perceptions, attentiveness and judgement can be affected by even a small amount of alcohol. You can have a serious—or even fatal—collision if you drive after drinking. Please don't drink and drive or ride with a driver who has been drinking. Ride home in a cab; or if you're with a group, designate a driver who will not drink.**

## Control of a Vehicle

You have three systems that make your vehicle go where you want it to go. They are the brakes, the steering and the accelerator. All three systems have to do their work at the places where the tires meet the road.



Sometimes, as when you're driving on snow or ice, it's easy to ask more of those control systems than the tires and road can provide. That means you can lose control of your vehicle. Also see *Stabilitrak® System on page 4-9.*

## Braking

Braking action involves *perception time* and *reaction time*.

First, you have to decide to push on the brake pedal. That's *perception time*. Then you have to bring up your foot and do it. That's *reaction time*.

Average *reaction time* is about 3/4 of a second. But that's only an average. It might be less with one driver and as long as two or three seconds or more with another. Age, physical condition, alertness, coordination and eyesight all play a part. So do alcohol, drugs and frustration. But even in 3/4 of a second, a vehicle moving at 60 mph (100 km/h) travels 66 feet (20 m). That could be a lot of distance in an emergency, so keeping enough space between your vehicle and others is important.

And, of course, actual stopping distances vary greatly with the surface of the road (whether it's pavement or gravel); the condition of the road (wet, dry, icy); tire tread; the condition of your brakes; the weight of the vehicle and the amount of brake force applied.

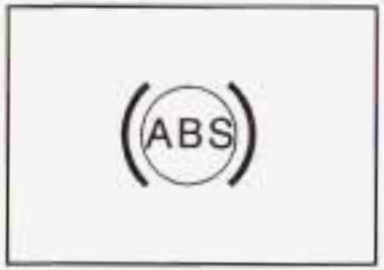
Avoid needless heavy braking. Some people drive in spurts — heavy acceleration followed by heavy braking — rather than keeping pace with traffic. This is a mistake. Your brakes may not have time to cool between hard stops. Your brakes will wear out much faster if you do a lot of heavy braking. If you keep pace with the traffic and allow realistic following distances, you will eliminate a lot of unnecessary braking. That means better braking and longer brake life.

If your engine ever stops while you're driving, brake normally but don't pump your brakes. If you do, the pedal may get harder to push down. If your engine stops, you will still have some power brake assist. But you will use it when you brake. Once the power assist is used up, it may take longer to stop and the brake pedal will be harder to push.

## Anti-lock Brake System

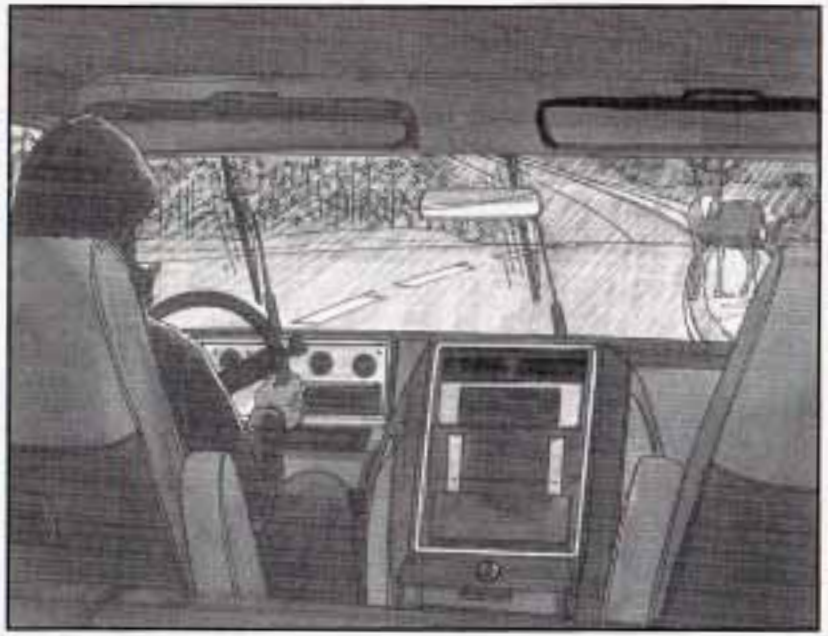
Your vehicle has anti-lock brakes. ABS is an advanced electronic braking system that will help prevent a braking skid.

When you start your engine and begin to drive away, your anti-lock brake system will check itself. You may hear a momentary motor or clicking noise while this test is going on. This is normal.




If there's a problem with the anti-lock brake system, this warning light will stay on. See *Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Light on page 3-38.*

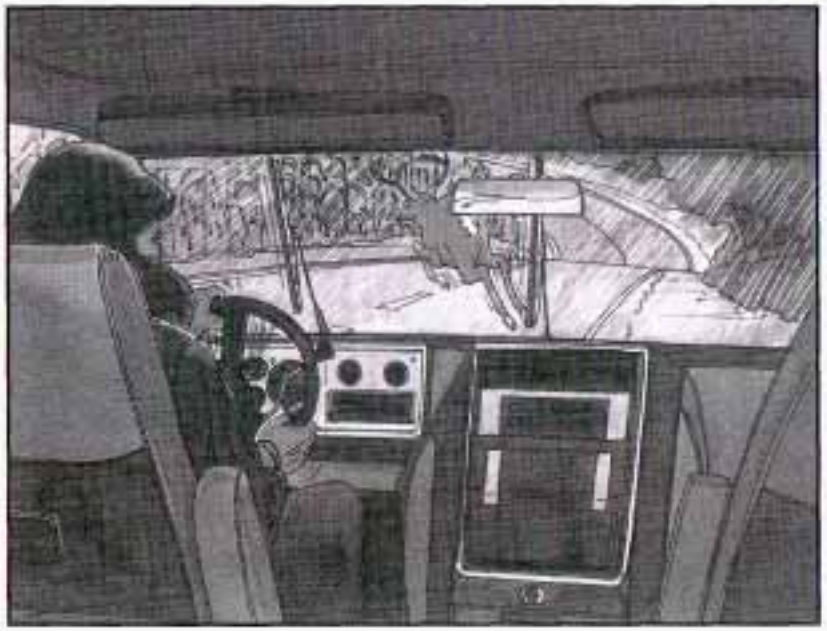
Along with ABS, your vehicle has a Dynamic Rear Proportioning (DRP) system. If there's a DRP problem, both the brake and ABS warning lights will come on accompanied by a 10-second chime. The lights and chime will come on each time the ignition is turned on until the problem is repaired. See your dealer for service.



Let's say the road is wet and you're driving safely. Suddenly, an animal jumps out in front of you. You slam on the brakes and continue braking. Here's what happens with ABS:

A computer senses that wheels are slowing down. If one of the wheels is about to stop rolling, the computer will separately work the brakes at each front wheel and at both rear wheels.

The anti-lock system can change the brake pressure faster than any driver could. The computer is programmed to make the most of available tire and road conditions. This can help you steer around the obstacle while braking hard.



As you brake, your computer keeps receiving updates on wheel speed and controls braking pressure accordingly.

Remember: Anti-lock doesn't change the time you need to get your foot up to the brake pedal or always decrease stopping distance. If you get too close to the vehicle in front of you, you won't have time to apply your brakes if that vehicle suddenly slows or stops. Always leave enough room up ahead to stop, even though you have anti-lock brakes.

## Using Anti-Lock

Don't pump the brakes. Just hold the brake pedal down firmly and let anti-lock work for you. You may feel the brakes vibrate, or you may notice some noise, but this is normal.

## Braking in Emergencies

With anti-lock, you can steer and brake at the same time. In many emergencies, steering can help you more than even the very best braking.

## Road Sensing Suspension

The Road Sensing Suspension (RSS) feature provides superior vehicle ride and handling under a variety of passenger and loading conditions.

The system is fully automatic and uses a computer controller to continuously monitor vehicle speed, wheel to body position, lift/dive and steering position of the vehicle. The controller then sends signals to each shock absorber to independently adjust the damping level to provide the optimum vehicle ride.

RSS also interacts with the tow/haul mode that, when engaged, will provide additional control of the shock absorbers. This additional control results in better ride and handling characteristics when the vehicle is loaded or towing a trailer. See "Tow/Haul Mode" under *Towing a Trailer on page 4-50.*

## Stabilitrak® System

Your vehicle is equipped with Stabilitrak®, which combines antilock brake, traction and stability control systems and helps the driver maintain directional control of the vehicle in most driving conditions.

When you first start your vehicle and begin to drive away, the system performs several diagnostic checks to insure there are no problems. You may hear or feel the system working. This is normal and does not mean there is a problem with your vehicle. The system should initialize before the vehicle reaches 20 m.p.h. (32 km/h). In some cases, it may take approximately two miles of driving before the system initializes.

If the system fails to turn on or activate, the STABILITY SYS DISABLED or SERVICE STABILITY message will be displayed. If the vehicle has gone through heavy acceleration or braking or multiple turns during the first two miles of driving after starting your vehicle, the STABILITY SYS DISABLED message may appear. If this is the case, your vehicle does not need servicing. You will need to turn the vehicle off and then restart it to initialize Stabilitrak®. If either message appears on the Driver Information Center (DIC), and your vehicle hasn't gone through hard acceleration, braking or multiple turns in the first two miles of driving, your vehicle should be taken in for service.

The STABILITY SYS ACTIVE message will appear on the Driver Information Center (DIC) only when the system is both on and activated. You may also feel or hear the system working; this is normal. For more information on the stability messages, see *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 3-47.*



Stabilitrak® and part of the traction control system can be turned off or back on by pressing the Stabilitrak® button located on the instrument panel.

When the system is turned off, the traction off light will illuminate, and the STABILITY SYS DISABLED message will appear on the DIC to warn the driver that both the stability system and part of the traction control system are disabled. Your vehicle will still have brake-traction control when Stabilitrak® is off, but will not be able to use the engine speed management system. See "Traction Control Operation" next for more information.

When the Stabilitrak® system has been turned off you may still hear system noises as a result of the brake-traction control coming on.

It is recommended to leave the system on for normal driving conditions, but it may be necessary to turn the system off if your vehicle is stuck in sand, mud, ice or snow, and you want to "rock" your vehicle to attempt to free it. It may also be necessary to turn off the system when driving in extreme off-road conditions where high wheel spin is required. See *If You Are Stuck: In Sand, Mud, Ice or Snow on page 4-44.*

## Traction Control Operation

The traction control system is part of the Stabilitrak® system. Traction control limits wheel spin by reducing engine power to the wheels (engine speed management) and by applying brakes to each individual wheel (brake-traction control) as necessary.

The traction control system is enabled automatically when you start your vehicle, and it will activate and display the TRACTION ACTIVE message in the Driver Information Center (DIC) if it senses that any of the wheels are spinning or beginning to lose traction while driving. If you turn off Stabilitrak®, only the brake-traction control portion of traction control will work. The engine speed management will be disabled.

In this state, engine power is not reduced automatically and the driven wheels can spin more freely. This can cause the brake-traction control to activate constantly. For more information on the traction active message, see *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 3-47*.

***Notice:*** **If the traction off light comes on due to heavy braking and/or because the traction control system has been continuously active, do not allow the wheel(s) of one axle to spin excessively. If you do, you may be causing damage to your transfer case. This could lead to costly repairs not covered by your warranty.**

If the brake-traction control system activates constantly or if the brakes have heated up due to high speed braking, the brake-traction control will be automatically disabled. The system will come back on after the brakes have cooled. This can take up to two minutes or longer depending on brake usage.

***Notice:*** **Don't allow the wheel(s) of one axle to spin excessively when the traction off, ABS and brake lights are on and the SERVICE STABILITY MESSAGE is displayed. In this situation, damage to the transfer case is possible. This could lead to costly repairs not covered by your warranty. You should immediately reduce engine power until the lights and messages are no longer displayed.**

The traction control system may activate on dry or rough roads or under conditions such as heavy acceleration while turning or abrupt upshifts/downshifts of the transmission. When this happens you may notice a reduction in acceleration, or may hear a noise or vibration. This is normal.

If your vehicle is in cruise control when the system activates, the STABILITY SYS ACTIVE message will appear on the Driver Information Center and the cruise control will automatically disengage. When road conditions allow you to use cruise again, you may re-engage the cruise control. See "Cruise Control" under *Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever on page 3-7*

Stabilitrak® may also turn off automatically if it determines that a problem exists with the system. If the problem does not clear itself after restarting the vehicle, you should see your dealer for service.

# Steering

## Power Steering

If you lose power steering assist because the engine stops or the system is not functioning, you can steer but it will take much more effort.

## Steering Tips

### Driving on Curves

It's important to take curves at a reasonable speed.

A lot of the "driver lost control" accidents mentioned on the news happen on curves. Here's why:

Experienced driver or beginner, each of us is subject to the same laws of physics when driving on curves. The traction of the tires against the road surface makes it possible for the vehicle to change its path when you turn the front wheels. If there's no traction, inertia will keep the vehicle going in the same direction. If you've ever tried to steer a vehicle on wet ice, you'll understand this.

The traction you can get in a curve depends on the condition of your tires and the road surface, the angle at which the curve is banked, and your speed. While you're in a curve, speed is the one factor you can control.

Suppose you're steering through a sharp curve. Then you suddenly accelerate. Both control systems — steering and acceleration - have to do their work where the tires meet the road. Adding the sudden acceleration can demand too much of those places. You can lose control. See *Stabilitrak® System on page 4-9.*

What should you do if this ever happens? Ease up on the accelerator pedal, steer the vehicle the way you want it to go, and slow down.

If you have Stabilitrak®, you may see the STABILITY SYS ACTIVE message on the message center. See "Stability System Active Message" under *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-56*

Speed limit signs near curves warn that you should adjust your speed. Of course, the posted speeds are based on good weather and road conditions. Under less favorable conditions you'll want to go slower.

If you need to reduce your speed as you approach a curve, do it before you enter the curve, while your front wheels are straight ahead.

Try to adjust your speed so you can "drive" through the curve. Maintain a reasonable, steady speed. Wait to accelerate until you are out of the curve, and then accelerate gently into the straightaway.

## Steering in Emergencies

There are times when steering can be more effective than braking. For example, you come over a hill and find a truck stopped in your lane, or a car suddenly pulls out from nowhere, or a child darts out from between parked cars and stops right in front of you. You can avoid these problems by braking — if you can stop in time. But sometimes you can't; there isn't room. That's the time for evasive action — steering around the problem.

Your vehicle can perform very well in emergencies like these. First apply your brakes.

See *Braking on page 4-6.* It is better to remove as much speed as you can from a possible collision. Then steer around the problem, to the left or right depending on the space available.

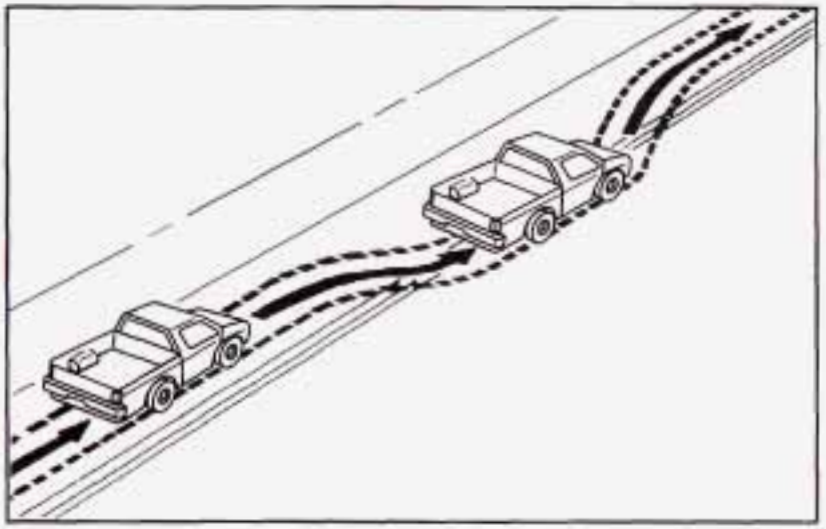


An emergency like this requires close attention and a quick decision. If you are holding the steering wheel at the recommended 9 and 3 o'clock positions, you can turn it a full 180 degrees very quickly without removing either hand. But you have to act fast, steer quickly, and just as quickly straighten the wheel once you have avoided the object.

The fact that such emergency situations are always possible is a good reason to practice defensive driving at all times and wear safety belts properly.

## Off-Road Recovery

You may find that your right wheels have dropped off the edge of a road onto the shoulder while you're driving.



If the level of the shoulder is only slightly below the pavement, recovery should be fairly easy. Ease off the accelerator and then, if there is nothing in the way, steer so that your vehicle straddles the edge of the pavement. You can turn the steering wheel up to one-quarter turn until the right front tire contacts the pavement edge. Then turn your steering wheel to go straight down the roadway.

## Passing

The driver of a vehicle about to pass another on a two-lane highway waits for just the right moment, accelerates, moves around the vehicle ahead, then goes back into the right lane again. A simple maneuver?

Not necessarily! Passing another vehicle on a two-lane highway is a potentially dangerous move, since the passing vehicle occupies the same lane as oncoming traffic for several seconds. A miscalculation, an error in judgment, or a brief surrender to frustration or anger can suddenly put the passing driver face to face with the worst of all traffic accidents — the head-on collision.

So here are some tips for passing:

- "Drive ahead." Look down the road, to the sides and to crossroads for situations that might affect your passing patterns. If you have any doubt whatsoever about making a successful pass, wait for a better time.
- Watch for traffic signs, pavement markings and lines. If you can see a sign up ahead that might indicate a turn or an intersection, delay your pass. A broken center line usually indicates it's all right to pass (providing the road ahead is clear). Never cross a solid line on your side of the lane or a double solid line, even if the road seems empty of approaching traffic.

- Do not get too close to the vehicle you want to pass while you're awaiting an opportunity. For one thing, following too closely reduces your area of vision, especially if you're following a larger vehicle. Also, you won't have adequate space if the vehicle ahead suddenly slows or stops. Keep back a reasonable distance.
- When it looks like a chance to pass is coming up, start to accelerate but stay in the right lane and don't get too close. Time your move so you will be increasing speed as the time comes to move into the other lane. If the way is clear to pass, you will have a "running start" that more than makes up for the distance you would lose by dropping back. And if something happens to cause you to cancel your pass, you need only slow down and drop back again and wait for another opportunity.
- If other vehicles are lined up to pass a slow vehicle, wait your turn. But take care that someone isn't trying to pass you as you pull out to pass the slow vehicle. Remember to glance over your shoulder and check the blind spot.
- Check your mirrors, glance over your shoulder and start your left lane change signal before moving out of the right lane to pass. When you are far enough ahead of the passed vehicle to see its front in your inside mirror, activate your right lane change signal and move back into the right lane. (Remember that if your right outside mirror is convex, the vehicle you just passed may seem to be farther away from you than it really is.)
- Try not to pass more than one vehicle at a time on two-lane roads. Reconsider before passing the next vehicle.
- Don't overtake a slowly moving vehicle too rapidly. Even though the brake lamps are not flashing, it may be slowing down or starting to turn.
- If you're being passed, make it easy for the following driver to get ahead of you. Perhaps you can ease a little to the right.

## Loss of Control

Let's review what driving experts say about what happens when the three control systems (brakes, steering and acceleration) don't have enough friction where the tires meet the road to do what the driver has asked.

In any emergency, don't give up. Keep trying to steer and constantly seek an escape route or area of less danger.

## Skidding

In a skid, a driver can lose control of the vehicle. Defensive drivers avoid most skids by taking reasonable care suited to existing conditions, and by not "overdriving" those conditions. But skids are always possible.

The three types of skids correspond to your vehicle's three control systems. In the braking skid, your wheels aren't rolling. In the steering or cornering skid, too much speed or steering in a curve causes tires to slip and lose cornering force. And in the acceleration skid, too much throttle causes the driving wheels to spin.

A cornering skid is best handled by easing your foot off the accelerator pedal.

If you have the Traction Control System, remember: It helps avoid only the acceleration skid. If you do not have this system, or if the system is off, then an acceleration skid is also best handled by easing your foot off the accelerator pedal.

If your vehicle starts to slide, ease your foot off the accelerator pedal and quickly steer the way you want the vehicle to go. If you start steering quickly enough, your vehicle may straighten out. Always be ready for a second skid if it occurs.

Of course, traction is reduced when water, snow, ice, gravel or other material is on the road. For safety, you'll want to slow down and adjust your driving to these conditions. It is important to slow down on slippery surfaces because stopping distance will be longer and vehicle control more limited.

While driving on a surface with reduced traction, try your best to avoid sudden steering, acceleration or braking (including engine braking by shifting to a lower gear). Any sudden changes could cause the tires to slide. You may not realize the surface is slippery until your vehicle is skidding. Learn to recognize warning clues — such as enough water, ice or packed snow on the road to make a "mirrored surface" — and slow down when you have any doubt.

Remember: Any anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps avoid only the braking skid.

# Operating Your All-Wheel-Drive Vehicle Off Paved Roads

Many of the same design features that help make your vehicle responsive on paved roads during poor weather conditions — features like all-wheel drive — help make it much better suited for off-road use than a conventional passenger car. Its higher ground clearance also helps your vehicle step over some off-road obstacles. But your vehicle doesn't have features like special underbody shielding and a transfer case low gear range, things that are usually thought necessary for extended or severe off-road service. This guide is for operating your vehicle off paved roads.

Also, see *Braking on page 4-6*.

Off-road driving can be great fun. But it does have some definite hazards. The greatest of these is the terrain itself.

"Off-roading" means you've left the great North American road system behind. Traffic lanes aren't marked. Curves aren't banked. There are *no* road signs. Surfaces can be slippery, rough, uphill or downhill. In short, you've gone right back to nature.

Off-road driving involves some new skills. And that's why it's very important that you read this guide. You'll find many driving tips and suggestions. These will help make your off-road driving safer and more enjoyable.

## Before You Go Off-Roading

There are some things to do before you go out. For example, be sure to have all necessary maintenance and service work done. Check to make sure all underbody shields (if so equipped) are properly attached. Is there enough fuel? Is the spare tire fully inflated? Are the fluid levels up where they should be? What are the local laws that apply to off-roading where you'll be driving? If you don't know, you should check with law enforcement people in the area. Will you be on someone's private land? If so, be sure to get the necessary permission.

## Loading Your Vehicle for Off-Road Driving

There are some important things to remember about how to load your vehicle.

- The heaviest things should be on the load floor and forward of your rear axle. Put heavier items as far forward as you can.
- Be sure the load is secured properly, so driving on the off-road terrain doesn't toss things around.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

- **Cargo on the load floor piled higher than the seatbacks can be thrown forward during a sudden stop. You or your passengers could be injured. Keep cargo below the top of the seatbacks.**
- **Unsecured cargo on the load floor can be tossed about when driving over rough terrain. You or your passengers can be struck by flying objects. Secure the cargo properly.**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

- **Heavy loads on the roof raise the vehicle's center of gravity, making it more likely to roll over. You can be seriously or fatally injured if the vehicle rolls over. Put heavy loads inside the cargo area, not on the roof. Keep cargo in the cargo area as far forward and low as possible.**

You'll find other important information in this manual. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-48*, *Luggage Carrier on page 2-42* and *Tires on page 5-65*.

## Environmental Concerns

Off-road driving can provide wholesome and satisfying recreation. However, it also raises environmental concerns. We recognize these concerns and urge every off-roader to follow these basic rules for protecting the environment:

- Always use established trails, roads and areas that have been specially set aside for public off-road recreational driving; obey all posted regulations.
- Avoid any driving practice that could damage the environment — shrubs, flowers, trees, grasses — or disturb wildlife (this includes wheel-spinning, breaking down trees or unnecessary driving through streams or over soft ground).
- Always carry a litter bag... make sure all refuse is removed from any campsite before leaving.
- Take extreme care with open fires (where permitted), camp stoves and lanterns.
- Never park your vehicle over dry grass or other combustible materials that could catch fire from the heat of the vehicle's exhaust system.

## Traveling to Remote Areas

It makes sense to plan your trip, especially when going to a remote area. Know the terrain and plan your route. You are much less likely to get bad surprises. Get accurate maps of trails and terrain. Try to learn of any blocked or closed roads.

It's also a good idea to travel with at least one other vehicle. If something happens to one of them, the other can help quickly.

## Getting Familiar with Off-Road Driving

It's a good idea to practice in an area that's safe and close to home before you go into the wilderness. Off-road driving does require some new and different driving skills. Here's what we mean.

Tune your senses to different kinds of signals. Your eyes, for example, need to constantly sweep the terrain for unexpected obstacles. Your ears need to listen for unusual tire or engine sounds. With your arms, hands, feet and body, you'll need to respond to vibrations and vehicle bounce.

Controlling your vehicle is the key to successful off-road driving. One of the best ways to control your vehicle is to control your speed. Here are some things to keep in mind. At higher speeds:

- you approach things faster and you have less time to scan the terrain for obstacles.
- you have less time to react.
- you have more vehicle bounce when you drive over obstacles.
- you'll need more distance for braking, especially since you're on an unpaved surface.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**When you're driving off-road, bouncing and quick changes in direction can easily throw you out of position. This could cause you to lose control and crash. So, whether you're driving on or off the road, you and your passengers should wear safety belts.**

## Scanning the Terrain

Off-road driving can take you over many different kinds of terrain. You need to be familiar with the terrain and its many different features. Here are some things to consider.

**Surface Conditions:** Off-roading can take you over hard-packed dirt, gravel, rocks, grass, sand, mud, snow or ice. Each of these surfaces affects the steering, acceleration and braking of your vehicle in different ways. Depending upon the kind of surface you are on, you may experience slipping, sliding, wheel spinning, delayed acceleration, poor traction and longer braking distances.

**Surface Obstacles:** Unseen or hidden obstacles can be hazardous. A rock, log, hole, rut or bump can startle you if you're not prepared for them. Often these obstacles are hidden by grass, bushes, snow or even the rise and fall of the terrain itself. Here are some things to consider:

- Is this path ahead clear?
- Will the surface texture change abruptly up ahead?
- Does the travel take you uphill or downhill? (There's more discussion of these subjects later.)
- Will you have to stop suddenly or change direction quickly?

When you drive over obstacles or rough terrain, keep a firm grip on the steering wheel. Ruts, troughs or other surface features can jerk the wheel out of your hands if you're not prepared.

When you drive over bumps, rocks, or other obstacles, your wheels can leave the ground. If this happens, even with one or two wheels, you can't control the vehicle as well or at all.

Because you will be on an unpaved surface, it's especially important to avoid sudden acceleration, sudden turns or sudden braking.

In a way, off-road driving requires a different kind of alertness from driving on paved roads and highways. There are no road signs, posted speed limits or signal lights. You have to use your own good judgment about what is safe and what isn't.

Drinking and driving can be very dangerous on any road. And this is certainly true for off-road driving. At the very time you need special alertness and driving skills, your reflexes, perceptions and judgment can be affected by even a small amount of alcohol. You could have a serious — or even fatal — accident if you drink and drive or ride with a driver who has been drinking. See *Drunken Driving on page 4-2.*

## Driving on Off-Road Hills

Off-road driving often takes you up, down or across a hill. Driving safely on hills requires good judgment and an understanding of what your vehicle can and can't do. There are some hills that simply can't be driven, no matter how well built the vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Many hills are simply too steep for any vehicle. If you drive up them, you will stall. If you drive down them, you can't control your speed. If you drive across them, you will roll over. You could be seriously injured or killed. If you have any doubt about the steepness, don't drive the hill.**

## Approaching a Hill

When you approach a hill, you need to decide if it's one of those hills that's just too steep to climb, descend or cross. Steepness can be hard to judge. On a very small hill, for example, there may be a smooth, constant incline with only a small change in elevation where you can easily see all the way to the top. On a large hill, the incline may get steeper as you near the top, but you may not see this because the crest of the hill is hidden by bushes, grass or shrubs.

Here are some other things to consider as you approach a hill.

- Is there a constant incline, or does the hill get sharply steeper in places?
- Is there good traction on the hillside, or will the surface cause tire slipping?
- Is there a straight path up or down the hill so you won't have to make turning maneuvers?
- Are there obstructions on the hill that can block your path (boulders, trees, logs or ruts)?
- What's beyond the hill? Is there a cliff, an embankment, a drop-off, a fence? Get out and walk the hill if you don't know. It's the smart way to find out.
- Is the hill simply too rough? Steep hills often have ruts, gullies, troughs and exposed rocks because they are more susceptible to the effects of erosion.

## Driving Uphill

Once you decide you can safely drive up the hill, you need to take some special steps.

- Use a low gear and get a firm grip on the steering wheel.
- Get a smooth start up the hill and try to maintain your speed. Don't use more power than you need, because you don't want your wheels to start spinning or sliding.
- Try to drive straight up the hill if at all possible. If the path twists and turns, you might want to find another route.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Turning or driving across steep hills can be dangerous. You could lose traction, slide sideways, and possibly roll over. You could be seriously injured or killed. When driving up hills, always try to go straight up.**

- Ease up on your speed as you approach the top of the hill.
- Attach a flag to the vehicle to make you more visible to approaching traffic on trails or hills.
- Sound the horn as you approach the top of the hill to let opposing traffic know you're there.
- Use your headlamps even during the day. They make you more visible to oncoming traffic.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Driving to the top (crest) of a hill at full speed can cause an accident. There could be a drop-off, embankment, cliff, or even another vehicle. You could be seriously injured or killed. As you near the top of a hill, slow down and stay alert.**

**Q: What should I do if my vehicle stalls, or is about to stall, and I can't make it up the hill?**

**A:** If this happens, there are some things you should do, and there are some things you must not do. First, here's what you *should* do:

- Push the brake pedal to stop the vehicle and keep it from rolling backwards. Also, apply the parking brake.
- If your engine is still running, shift the transmission to REVERSE (R), release the parking brake, and slowly back down the hill in REVERSE (R).
- If your engine has stopped running, you'll need to restart it. With the brake pedal pressed and the parking brake still applied, shift the transmission to PARK (P) and restart the engine. Then, shift to REVERSE (R), release the parking brake, and slowly back down the hill as straight as possible in REVERSE (R).
- As you are backing down the hill, put your left hand on the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position. This way, you'll be able to tell if your wheels are straight and maneuver as you back down. It's best that you back down the hill with your wheels straight rather than in the left or right direction. Turning the wheel too far to the left or right will increase the possibility of a rollover.

Here are some things you *must not* do if you stall, or are about to stall, when going up a hill.

- Never attempt to prevent a stall by shifting into NEUTRAL (N) to "rev-up" the engine and regain forward momentum. This won't work. Your vehicle will roll backwards very quickly and you could go out of control.

  Instead, apply the regular brake to stop the vehicle. Then apply the parking brake. Shift to REVERSE (R), release the parking brake, and slowly back straight down.
- Never attempt to turn around if you are about to stall when going up a hill. If the hill is steep enough to stall your vehicle, it's steep enough to cause you to roll over if you turn around. If you can't make it up the hill, you must back straight down the hill.

**Q: Suppose, after stalling, I try to back down the hill and decide I just can't do it. What should I do?**

**A:** Set the parking brake, put your transmission in PARK (P) and turn off the engine. Leave the vehicle and go get some help. Exit on the uphill side and stay clear of the path the vehicle would take if it rolled downhill.

## Driving Downhill

When off-roading takes you downhill, you'll want to consider a number of things:

- How steep is the downhill? Will I be able to maintain vehicle control?
- What's the surface like? Smooth? Rough? Slippery? Hard-packed dirt? Gravel?
- Are there hidden surface obstacles? Ruts? Logs? Boulders?
- What's at the bottom of the hill? Is there a hidden creek bank or even a river bottom with large rocks?

If you decide you can go down a hill safely, then try to keep your vehicle headed straight down, and use a low gear. This way, engine drag can help your brakes and they won't have to do all the work. Descend slowly, keeping your vehicle under control at all times.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Heavy braking when going down a hill can cause your brakes to overheat and fade. This could cause loss of control and a serious accident. Apply the brakes lightly when descending a hill and use a low gear to keep vehicle speed under control.**

**Q: Are there some things I should not do when driving down a hill?**

**A:** Yes! These are important because if you ignore them you could lose control and have a serious accident.

When driving downhill, avoid turns that take you across the incline of the hill. A hill that's not too steep to drive down may be too steep to drive across. You could roll over if you don't drive straight down.

Never go downhill with the transmission in NEUTRAL (N). This is called "free-wheeling." Your brakes will have to do all the work and could overheat and fade.

**Q: Am I likely to stall when going downhill?**

**A:** It's much more likely to happen going uphill. But if it happens going downhill, here's what to do.

- Stop your vehicle by applying the regular brakes. Apply the parking brake.
- Shift to PARK (P) and, while still braking, restart the engine.
- Shift back to a low gear, release the parking brake, and drive straight down.
- If the engine won't start, get out and get help.

## Driving Across an Incline

Sooner or later, an off-road trail will probably go across the incline of a hill. If this happens, you have to decide whether to try to drive across the incline. Here are some things to consider:

- A hill that can be driven straight up or down may be too steep to drive across. When you go straight up or down a hill, the length of the wheel base (the distance from the front wheels to the rear wheels) reduces the likelihood the vehicle will tumble end over end. But when you drive across an incline, the much more narrow track width (the distance between the left and right wheels) may not prevent the vehicle from tilting and rolling over. Also, driving across an incline puts more weight on the downhill wheels. This could cause a downhill slide or a rollover.
- Surface conditions can be a problem when you drive across a hill. Loose gravel, muddy spots, or even wet grass can cause your tires to slip sideways, downhill. If the vehicle slips sideways, it can hit something that will trip it (a rock, a rut, etc.) and roll over.
- Hidden obstacles can make the steepness of the incline even worse. If you drive across a rock with the uphill wheels, or if the downhill wheels drop into a rut or depression, your vehicle can tilt even more.

For reasons like these, you need to decide carefully whether to try to drive across an incline. Just because the trail goes across the incline doesn't mean you have to drive it. The last vehicle to try it might have rolled over.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Driving across an incline that's too steep will make your vehicle roll over. You could be seriously injured or killed. If you have any doubt about the steepness of the incline, don't drive across it. Find another route instead.**

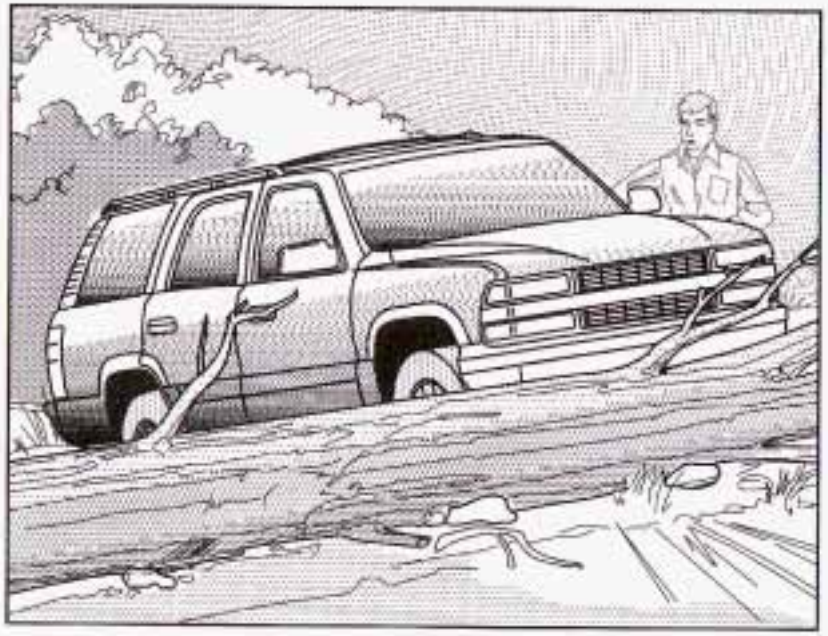
**Q: What if I'm driving across an incline that's not too steep, but I hit some loose gravel and start to slide downhill. What should I do?**

**A:** If you feel your vehicle starting to slide sideways, turn downhill. This should help straighten out the vehicle and prevent the side slipping. However, a much better way to prevent this is to get out and "walk the course" so you know what the surface is like before you drive it.

## Stalling on an Incline

If your vehicle stalls when you're crossing an incline, be sure you (and your passengers) get out on the uphill side, even if the door there is harder to open. If you get out on the downhill side and the vehicle starts to roll over, you'll be right in its path.

If you have to walk down the slope, stay out of the path the vehicle will take if it does roll over.



**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Getting out on the downhill (low) side of a vehicle stopped across an incline is dangerous. If the vehicle rolls over, you could be crushed or killed. Always get out on the uphill (high) side of the vehicle and stay well clear of the rollover path.**

## Driving in Mud, Sand, Snow or Ice

When you drive in mud, snow or sand, your wheels won't get good traction. You can't accelerate as quickly, turning is more difficult, and you'll need longer braking distances.

It's best to use a low gear when you're in mud — the deeper the mud, the lower the gear. In really deep mud, the idea is to keep your vehicle moving so you don't get stuck.

When you drive on sand, you'll sense a change in wheel traction. But it will depend upon how loosely packed the sand is. On loosely packed sand (as on beaches or sand dunes) your tires will tend to sink into the sand. This has an effect on steering, accelerating and braking. You may want to reduce the air pressure in your tires slightly when driving on sand. This will improve traction. Drive at a reduced speed and avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers.

Hard packed snow and ice offer the worst tire traction. On these surfaces, it's very easy to lose control. On wet ice, for example, the traction is so poor that you will have difficulty accelerating. And if you do get moving, poor steering and difficult braking can cause you to slide out of control.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Driving on frozen lakes, ponds or rivers can be dangerous. Underwater springs, currents under the ice, or sudden thaws can weaken the ice. Your vehicle could fall through the ice and you and your passengers could drown. Drive your vehicle on safe surfaces only.**

## Driving in Water

Heavy rain can mean flash flooding, and flood waters demand extreme caution.

Find out how deep the water is before you drive through it. If it's deep enough to cover your wheel hubs, axles or exhaust pipe, don't try it — you probably won't get through. Also, water that deep can damage your axle and other vehicle parts.

If the water isn't too deep, drive slowly through it. At faster speeds, water splashes on your ignition system and your vehicle can stall. Stalling can also occur if you get your tailpipe under water. And, as long as your tailpipe is under water, you'll never be able to start your engine. When you go through water, remember that when your brakes get wet, it may take you longer to stop.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Driving through rushing water can be dangerous. Deep water can sweep your vehicle downstream and you and your passengers could drown. If it's only shallow water, it can**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**still wash away the ground from under your tires, and you could lose traction and roll the vehicle over. Don't drive through rushing water.**

See *Driving in Rain and on Wet Roads on page 4-32* for more information on driving through water.

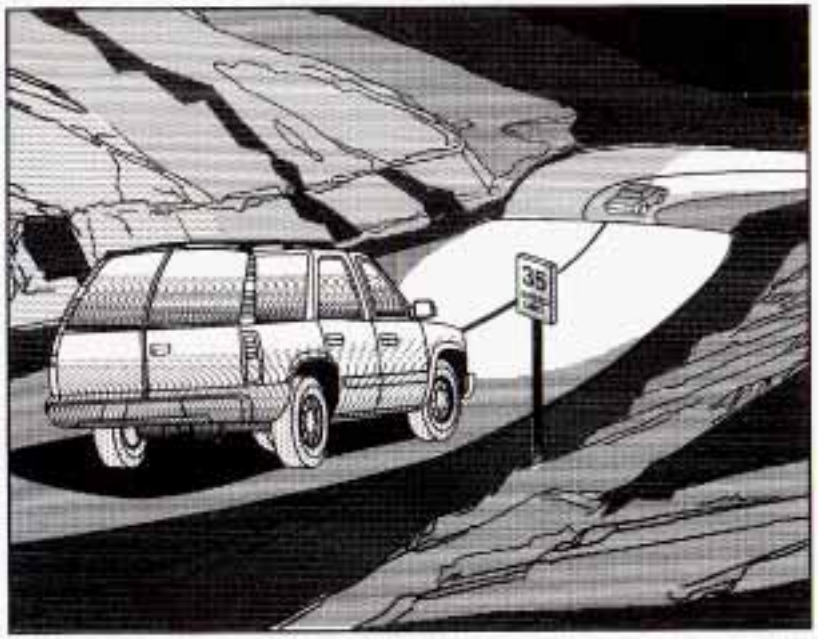
## After Off-Road Driving

Remove any brush or debris that has collected on the underbody, chassis or under the hood. These accumulations can be a fire hazard.

After operation in mud or sand, have the brake linings cleaned and checked. These substances can cause glazing and uneven braking. Check the body structure, steering, suspension, wheels, tires and exhaust system for damage. Also, check the fuel lines and cooling system for any leakage.

Your vehicle will require more frequent service due to off-road use. Refer to the Maintenance Schedule for additional information.

## Driving at Night



Night driving is more dangerous than day driving. One reason is that some drivers are likely to be impaired — by alcohol or drugs, with night vision problems, or by fatigue.

Here are some tips on night driving.

- Drive defensively.
- Don't drink and drive.
- Since you can't see as well, you may need to slow down and keep more space between you and other vehicles.
- Slow down, especially on higher speed roads. Your headlamps can light up only so much road ahead.
- In remote areas, watch for animals.
- If you're tired, pull off the road in a safe place and rest.

No one can see as well at night as in the daytime. But as we get older these differences increase. A 50-year-old driver may require at least twice as much light to see the same thing at night as a 20-year-old.

What you do in the daytime can also affect your night vision. For example, if you spend the day in bright sunshine you are wise to wear sunglasses. Your eyes will have less trouble adjusting to night. But if you're driving, don't wear sunglasses at night. They may cut down on glare from headlamps, but they also make a lot of things invisible.

You can be temporarily blinded by approaching headlamps. It can take a second or two, or even several seconds, for your eyes to readjust to the dark. When you are faced with severe glare (as from a driver who doesn't lower the high beams, or a vehicle with misaimed headlamps), slow down a little. Avoid staring directly into the approaching headlamps.

Keep your windshield and all the glass on your vehicle clean — inside and out. Glare at night is made much worse by dirt on the glass. Even the inside of the glass can build up a film caused by dust. Dirty glass makes lights dazzle and flash more than clean glass would, making the pupils of your eyes contract repeatedly.

Remember that your headlamps light up far less of a roadway when you are in a turn or curve. Keep your eyes moving; that way, it's easier to pick out dimly lighted objects. Just as your headlamps should be checked regularly for proper aim, so should your eyes be examined regularly. Some drivers suffer from night blindness — the inability to see in dim light — and aren't even aware of it.

## Driving in Rain and on Wet Roads



Rain and wet roads can mean driving trouble. On a wet road, you can't stop, accelerate or turn as well because your tire-to-road traction isn't as good as on dry roads. And, if your tires don't have much tread left, you'll get even less traction. It's always wise to go slower and be cautious if rain starts to fall while you are driving. The surface may get wet suddenly when your reflexes are tuned for driving on dry pavement.

The heavier the rain, the harder it is to see. Even if your windshield wiper blades are in good shape, a heavy rain can make it harder to see road signs and traffic signals, pavement markings, the edge of the road and even people walking.

It's wise to keep your wiping equipment in good shape and keep your windshield washer tank filled with washer fluid. Replace your windshield wiper inserts when they show signs of streaking or missing areas on the windshield, or when strips of rubber start to separate from the inserts.



Driving too fast through large water puddles or even going through some car washes can cause problems, too. The water may affect your brakes. Try to avoid puddles. But if you can't, try to slow down before you hit them.

## ⚠ CAUTION:

**Wet brakes can cause accidents. They won't work as well in a quick stop and may cause pulling to one side. You could lose control of the vehicle.**

**After driving through a large puddle of water or a car wash, apply your brake pedal lightly until your brakes work normally.**

## Hydroplaning

Hydroplaning is dangerous. So much water can build up under your tires that they can actually ride on the water. This can happen if the road is wet enough and you're going fast enough. When your vehicle is hydroplaning, it has little or no contact with the road.

Hydroplaning doesn't happen often. But it can if your tires do not have much tread or if the pressure in one or more is low. It can happen if a lot of water is standing on the road. If you can see reflections from trees, telephone poles or other vehicles, and raindrops "dimple" the water's surface, there could be hydroplaning.

Hydroplaning usually happens at higher speeds. There just isn't a hard and fast rule about hydroplaning. The best advice is to slow down when it is raining.

## Driving Through Deep Standing Water

***Notice:*** **If you drive too quickly through deep puddles or standing water, water can come in through your engine's air intake and badly damage your engine. Never drive through water that is slightly lower than the underbody of your vehicle. If you can't avoid deep puddles or standing water, drive through them very slowly.**

## Driving Through Flowing Water

### ⚠ CAUTION:

**Flowing or rushing water creates strong forces. If you try to drive through flowing water, as you might at a low water crossing, your vehicle can be carried away. As little as six inches of flowing water can carry away a smaller vehicle. If this happens, you and other vehicle occupants could drown. Don't ignore police warning signs, and otherwise be very cautious about trying to drive through flowing water.**

## Some Other Rainy Weather Tips

- Turn on your low-beam headlamps – not just your parking lamps – to help make you more visible to others.
- Besides slowing down, allow some extra following distance. And be especially careful when you pass another vehicle. Allow yourself more clear room ahead, and be prepared to have your view restricted by road spray.
- Have good tires with proper tread depth. See *Tires on page 5-65.*

## City Driving

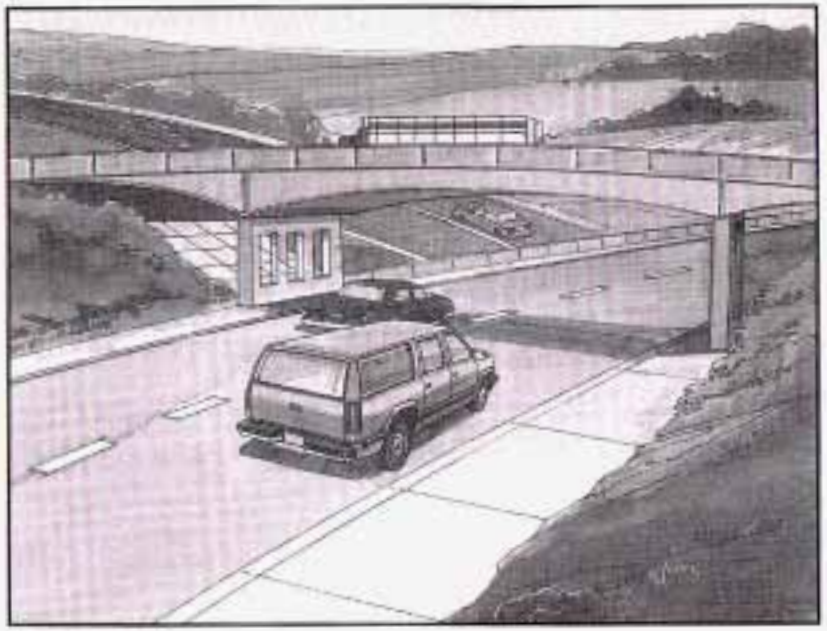


One of the biggest problems with city streets is the amount of traffic on them. You'll want to watch out for what the other drivers are doing and pay attention to traffic signals.

Here are ways to increase your safety in city driving:

- Know the best way to get to where you are going. Get a city map and plan your trip into an unknown part of the city just as you would for a cross-country trip.
- Try to use the freeways that rim and crisscross most large cities. You'll save time and energy. See *Freeway Driving on page 4-36.*
- Treat a green light as a warning signal. A traffic light is there because the corner is busy enough to need it. When a light turns green, and just before you start to move, check both ways for vehicles that have not cleared the intersection or may be running the red light.

## Freeway Driving



Mile for mile, freeways (also called thruways, parkways, expressways, turnpikes or superhighways) are the safest of all roads. But they have their own special rules.

The most important advice on freeway driving is: Keep up with traffic and keep to the right. Drive at the same speed most of the other drivers are driving. Too-fast or too-slow driving breaks a smooth traffic flow. Treat the left lane on a freeway as a passing lane.

At the entrance, there is usually a ramp that leads to the freeway. If you have a clear view of the freeway as you drive along the entrance ramp, you should begin to check traffic. Try to determine where you expect to blend with the flow. Try to merge into the gap at close to the prevailing speed. Switch on your turn signal, check your mirrors and glance over your shoulder as often as necessary. Try to blend smoothly with the traffic flow.

Once you are on the freeway, adjust your speed to the posted limit or to the prevailing rate if it's slower. Stay in the right lane unless you want to pass.

Before changing lanes, check your mirrors. Then use your turn signal.

Just before you leave the lane, glance quickly over your shoulder to make sure there isn't another vehicle in your "blind" spot.

Once you are moving on the freeway, make certain you allow a reasonable following distance. Expect to move slightly slower at night.

When you want to leave the freeway, move to the proper lane well in advance. If you miss your exit, do not, under any circumstances, stop and back up. Drive on to the next exit.

The exit ramp can be curved, sometimes quite sharply. The exit speed is usually posted.

Reduce your speed according to your speedometer, not to your sense of motion. After driving for any distance at higher speeds, you may tend to think you are going slower than you actually are.

## Before Leaving on a Long Trip

Make sure you're ready. Try to be well rested. If you must start when you're not fresh — such as after a day's work — don't plan to make too many miles that first part of the journey. Wear comfortable clothing and shoes you can easily drive in.

Is your vehicle ready for a long trip? If you keep it serviced and maintained, it's ready to go. If it needs service, have it done before starting out. Of course, you'll find experienced and able service experts in dealerships all across North America. They'll be ready and willing to help if you need it.

Here are some things you can check before a trip:

- *Windshield Washer Fluid:* Is the reservior full? Are all windows clean inside and outside?
- *Wiper Blades:* Are they in good shape?
- *Fuel, Engine Oil, Other Fluids:* Have you checked all levels?
- *Lamps:* Are they all working? Are the lenses clean?
- *Tires:* They are vitally important to a safe, trouble-free trip. Is the tread good enough for long-distance driving? Are the tires all inflated to the recommended pressure?
- *Weather Forecasts:* What's the weather outlook along your route? Should you delay your trip a short time to avoid a major storm system?
- *Maps:* Do you have up-to-date maps?

## Highway Hypnosis

Is there actually such a condition as "highway hypnosis"? Or is it just plain falling asleep at the wheel? Call it highway hypnosis, lack of awareness, or whatever.

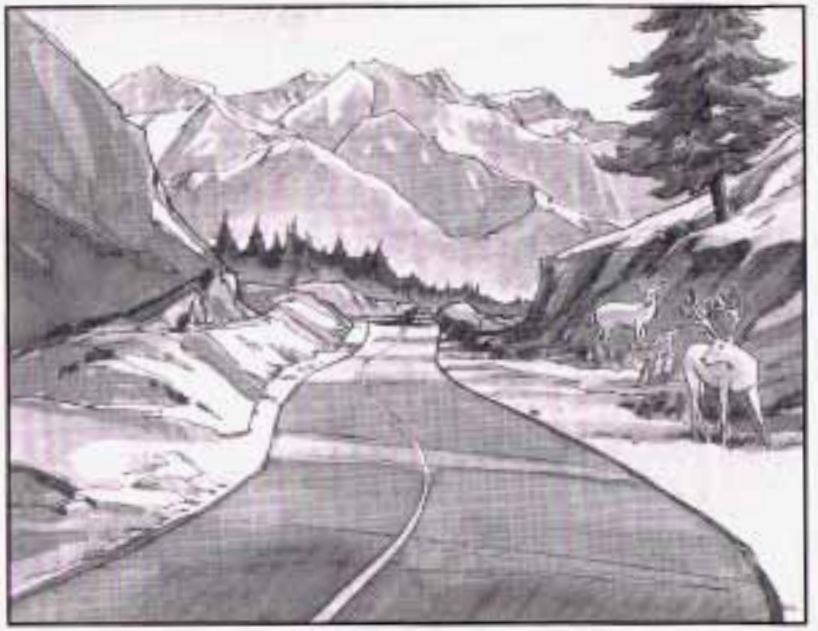
There is something about an easy stretch of road with the same scenery, along with the hum of the tires on the road, the drone of the engine, and the rush of the wind against the vehicle that can make you sleepy. Don't let it happen to you! If it does, your vehicle can leave the road in *less than a second*, and you could crash and be injured.

What can you do about highway hypnosis? First, be aware that it can happen.

Then here are some tips:

- Make sure your vehicle is well ventilated, with a comfortably cool interior.
- Keep your eyes moving. Scan the road ahead and to the sides. Check your mirrors and your instruments frequently.
- If you get sleepy, pull off the road into a rest, service or parking area and take a nap, get some exercise, or both. For safety, treat drowsiness on the highway as an emergency.

## Hill and Mountain Roads



Driving on steep hills or mountains is different from driving in flat or rolling terrain.

If you drive regularly in steep country, or if you're planning to visit there, here are some tips that can make your trips safer and more enjoyable. See *Operating Your All-Wheel-Drive Vehicle Off Paved Roads on page 4-17* for information about driving off-road.

- Keep your vehicle in good shape. Check all fluid levels and also the brakes, tires, cooling system and transmission. These parts can work hard on mountain roads.
- Know how to go down hills. The most important thing to know is this: let your engine do some of the slowing down. Shift to a lower gear when you go down a steep or long hill.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

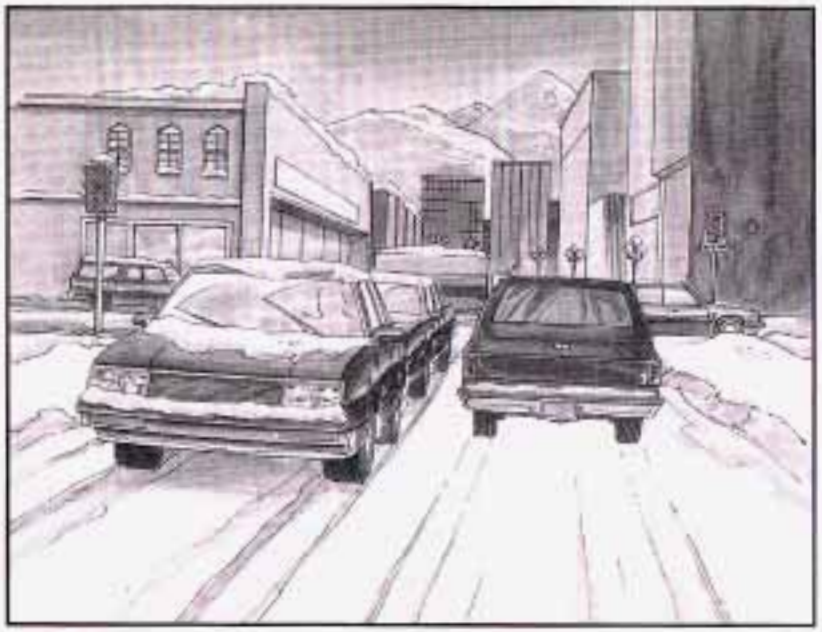
**If you don't shift down, your brakes could get so hot that they wouldn't work well. You would then have poor braking or even none going down a hill. You could crash. Shift down to let your engine assist your brakes on a steep downhill slope.**

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Coasting downhill in NEUTRAL (N) or with the ignition off is dangerous. Your brakes will have to do all the work of slowing down. They could get so hot that they wouldn't work well. You would then have poor braking or even none going down a hill. You could crash. Always have your engine running and your vehicle in gear when you go downhill.**

- Know how to go uphill. You may want to shift down to a lower gear. The lower gears help cool your engine and transmission, and you can climb the hill better.
- Stay in your own lane when driving on two-lane roads in hills or mountains. Don't swing wide or cut across the center of the road. Drive at speeds that let you stay in your own lane.
- As you go over the top of a hill, be alert. There could be something in your lane, like a stalled car or an accident.
- You may see highway signs on mountains that warn of special problems. Examples are long grades, passing or no-passing zones, a falling rocks area or winding roads. Be alert to these and take appropriate action.

## Winter Driving



Here are some tips for winter driving:

- Have your vehicle in good shape for winter.
- You may want to put winter emergency supplies in your vehicle.

Include an ice scraper, a small brush or broom, a supply of windshield washer fluid, a rag, some winter outer clothing, a small shovel, a flashlight, a red cloth and a couple of reflective warning triangles. And, if you will be driving under severe conditions, include a small bag of sand, a piece of old carpet or a couple of burlap bags to help provide traction. Be sure you properly secure these items in your vehicle.

### Driving on Snow or Ice

Most of the time, those places where your tires meet the road probably have good traction.

However, if there is snow or ice between your tires and the road, you can have a very slippery situation. You'll have a lot less traction or "grip" and will need to very careful.



What's the worst time for this? "Wet ice." Very cold snow or ice can be slick and hard to drive on. But wet ice can be even more trouble because it may offer the least traction of all. You can get wet ice when it's about freezing (32°F; 0°C) and freezing rain begins to fall. Try to avoid driving on wet ice until salt and sand crews can get there.

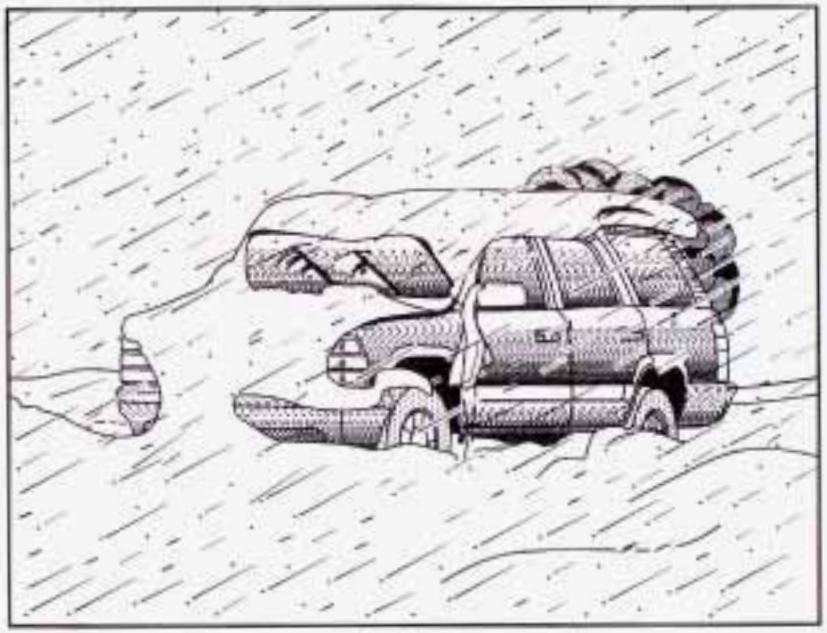
Whatever the condition — smooth ice, packed, blowing or loose snow — drive with caution.

Accelerate gently. Try not to break the gentle traction. If you accelerate too fast, the drive wheels will spin and polish the surface under the tires even more. See *Stabilitrak® System on page 4-9* and "Rocking Your Vehicle" under *If You Are Stuck: In Sand, Mud, Ice or Snow on page 4-44*.

Your anti-lock brakes improve your vehicle's stability when you make a hard stop on a slippery road. Even though you have an anti-lock braking system, you'll want to begin stopping sooner than you would on dry pavement. See *Braking on page 4-6*.

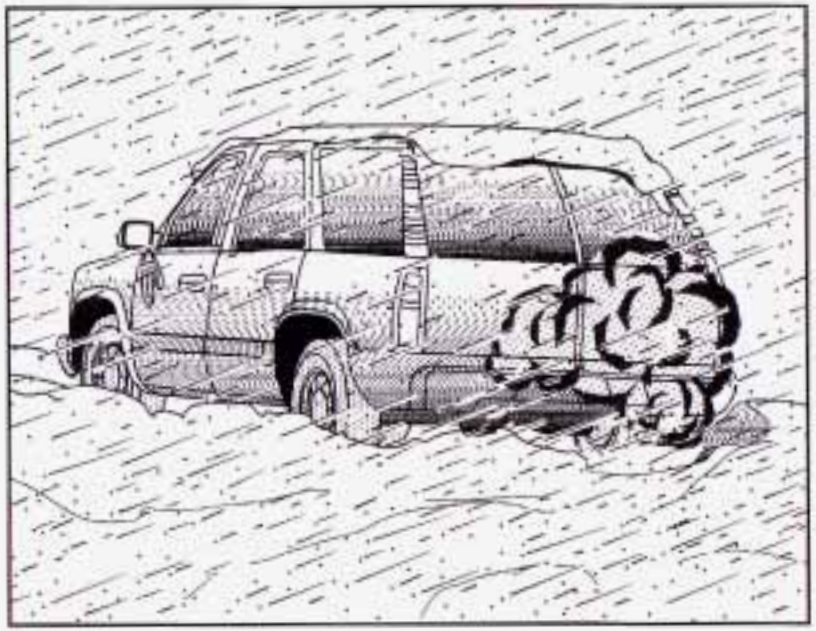
- Allow greater following distance on any slippery road.
- Watch for slippery spots. The road might be fine until you hit a spot that's covered with ice. On an otherwise clear road, ice patches may appear in shaded areas where the sun can't reach: around clumps of trees, behind buildings or under bridges. Sometimes the surface of a curve or an overpass may remain icy when the surrounding roads are clear. If you see a patch of ice ahead of you, brake before you are on it. Try not to brake while you're actually on the ice, and avoid sudden steering maneuvers.

## If You're Caught in a Blizzard



If you are stopped by heavy snow, you could be in a serious situation. You should probably stay with your vehicle unless you know for sure that you are near help and you can hike through the snow. Here are some things to do to summon help and keep yourself and your passengers safe:

- Turn on your hazard flashers.
- Tie a red cloth to your vehicle to alert police that you've been stopped by the snow.
- Put on extra clothing or wrap a blanket around you. If you have no blankets or extra clothing, make body insulators from newspapers, burlap bags, rags, floor mats — anything you can wrap around yourself or tuck under your clothing to keep warm.



You can run the engine to keep warm, but be careful.

## ⚠ CAUTION:

**Snow can trap exhaust gases under your vehicle. This can cause deadly CO (carbon monoxide) gas to get inside. CO could overcome you and kill you. You can't see it or smell it, so you might not know it is in your vehicle. Clear away snow from around the base of your vehicle, especially any that is blocking your exhaust pipe. And check around again from time to time to be sure snow doesn't collect there.**

**Open a window just a little on the side of the vehicle that's away from the wind. This will help keep CO out.**

Run your engine only as long as you must. This saves fuel. When you run the engine, make it go a little faster than just idle. That is, push the accelerator slightly. This uses less fuel for the heat that you get and it keeps the battery charged. You will need a well-charged battery to restart the vehicle, and possibly for signaling later on with your headlamps. Let the heater run for a while.

Then, shut the engine off and close the window almost all the way to preserve the heat. Start the engine again and repeat this only when you feel really uncomfortable from the cold. But do it as little as possible. Preserve the fuel as long as you can. To help keep warm, you can get out of the vehicle and do some fairly vigorous exercises every half hour or so until help comes.

## If You Are Stuck: In Sand, Mud, Ice or Snow

In order to free your vehicle when it is stuck, you will need to spin the wheels, but you don't want to spin your wheels too fast. The method known as "rocking" can help you get out when you're stuck, but you must use caution.

### ⚠ CAUTION:

**If you let your tires spin at high speed, they can explode, and you or others could be injured. And, the transmission or other parts of the vehicle can overheat. That could cause an engine compartment fire or other damage. When you're stuck, spin the wheels as little as possible. Don't spin the wheels above 35 mph (55 km/h) as shown on the speedometer.**

***Notice:*** **Spinning your wheels can destroy parts of your vehicle as well as the tires. If you spin the wheels too fast while shifting your transmission back and forth, you can destroy your transmission.**

For information about using tire chains on your vehicle, see *Tire Chains on page 5-73.*

## Rocking Your Vehicle To Get It Out

First, turn your steering wheel left and right. That will clear the area around your front wheels. If your vehicle has the Stabilitrak® System, turn the system off by pressing the Stabilitrak® button so that the STABILITY SYS DISABLED message and the traction off light are illuminated on the instrument panel cluster. Then shift back and forth between REVERSE (R) and a forward gear, spinning the wheels as little as possible. Release the accelerator pedal while you shift, and press lightly on the accelerator pedal when the transmission is in gear. By slowly spinning your wheels in the forward and reverse directions, you will cause a rocking motion that may free your vehicle. If that doesn't get you out after a few tries, you may need to be towed out. Or, you can use your recovery hooks if your vehicle has them. If you do need to be towed out, see *Towing Your Vehicle on page 4-47.*

## Using the Recovery Hooks



Your vehicle may be equipped with recovery hooks. The recovery hooks are provided at the front of your vehicle. You may need to use them if you're stuck off-road and need to be pulled to some place where you can continue driving.



**⚠ CAUTION:**

These hooks, when used, are under a lot of force. Always pull the vehicle straight out. Never pull on the hooks at a sideways angle. The hooks could break off and you or others could be injured from the chain or cable snapping back.

*Notice:* Never use recovery hooks to tow the vehicle. Your vehicle could be damaged and it would not be covered by warranty.

# Towing

## Towing Your Vehicle

Consult your dealer or a professional towing service if you need to have your disabled vehicle towed. See *Roadside Service on page 7-5.*

If you want to tow your vehicle behind another vehicle for recreational purposes (such as behind a motorhome), see Recreational Vehicle Towing following.

## Recreational Vehicle Towing

Recreational vehicle towing means towing your vehicle behind another vehicle — such as behind a motorhome. The two most common types of recreational vehicle towing are known as "dinghy towing" (towing your vehicle with all four wheels on the ground) and "dolly towing" (towing your vehicle with two wheels on the ground and two wheels up on a device known as a "dolly").

Your vehicle was not designed to be towed with any of its wheels on the ground. If your vehicle must be towed, see *Towing Your Vehicle on page 4-47.*

***Notice:*** **Towing an all-wheel-drive vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, or even with only two of its wheels on the ground, will damage drivetrain components. Don't tow an all-wheel-drive vehicle if any of its wheels will be on the ground.**

## Loading Your Vehicle




The Certification/Tire label is found on the rear edge of the driver's door.

The label shows the size of your original tires and the inflation pressures needed to obtain the gross weight capacity of your vehicle. This is called the GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating). The GVWR includes the weight of the vehicle, all occupants, fuel and cargo.

The Certification/Tire label also tells you the maximum weights for the front and rear axles, called Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). To find out the actual loads on your front and rear axles, you need to go to a weigh station and weigh your vehicle. Your dealer can help you with this. Be sure to spread out your load equally on both sides of the centerline.

Never exceed the GVWR for your vehicle, or the GAWR for either the front or rear axle.

And, if you do have a heavy load, you should spread it out.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Do not load your vehicle any heavier than the GVWR, or either the maximum front or rear GAWR. If you do, parts on your vehicle can break, and it can change the way your vehicle handles. These could cause you to lose control and crash. Also, overloading can shorten the life of your vehicle.**

Your warranty does not cover parts or components that fail because of overloading.

The label will help you decide how much cargo and installed equipment your truck can carry.

Using heavier suspension components to get added durability might not change your weight ratings. Ask your dealer to help you load your vehicle the right way.

If you put things inside your vehicle – like suitcases, tools, packages, or anything else – they go as fast as the vehicle goes. If you have to stop or turn quickly, or if there is a crash, they'll keep going.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Things you put inside your vehicle can strike and injure people in a sudden stop or turn, or in a crash.**

- **Put things in the cargo area of your vehicle. Try to spread the weight evenly.**
- **Never stack heavier things, like suitcases, inside the vehicle so that some of them are above the tops of the seats.**
- **Don't leave an unsecured child restraint in your vehicle.**
- **When you carry something inside the vehicle, secure it whenever you can.**
- **Don't leave a seat folded down unless you need to.**

There's also important loading information for off-road driving in this manual. See "Loading Your Vehicle for Off-Road Driving" under *Operating Your All-Wheel-Drive Vehicle Off Paved Roads on page 4-17.*

## Automatic Level Control

The automatic level control rear suspension comes as a part of the Road Sensing Suspension. See *Road Sensing Suspension on page 4-9.*

This type of level control is fully automatic and will provide a better leveled riding position as well as better handling under a variety of passenger and loading conditions. An air compressor connected to the rear shocks will raise or lower the rear of the vehicle to maintain proper vehicle height. The system is activated when the ignition key is turned to RUN and will automatically adjust vehicle height thereafter. The system may exhaust (lower vehicle height) for up to 10 minutes after the ignition key has been turned to OFF. You may hear the air compressor operating when the height is being adjusted.

If a weight-distributing hitch is being used, it is recommended to allow the shocks to inflate, thereby leveling the vehicle prior to adjusting the height.

## Trailer Recommendations

You must subtract your hitch loads from the Cargo Weight Rating (CWR). CWR is the maximum weight of the load your vehicle can carry. It doesn't include the weight of the people inside. But you can figure about 150 lbs. (68 kg) for each seat. The total cargo load must not be more than your vehicle's CWR.

Weigh your vehicle with the trailer attached, so that you won't go over the GVWR or GAWR. If you are using a weight-distributing hitch, weigh the vehicle without the spring bars in place.

You'll get the best performance if you spread out the weight of your load the right way, and if you choose the correct hitch and trailer brakes.

For more information, see *Towing a Trailer on page 4-50.*

## Towing a Trailer

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**If you don't use the correct equipment and drive properly, you can lose control when you pull a trailer. For example, if the trailer is too heavy, the brakes may not work well -- or even at all. You and your passengers could be seriously injured. You may also damage your vehicle; the resulting repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Pull a trailer only if you have followed all the steps in this section. Ask your dealer for advice and information about towing a trailer with your vehicle.**

***Notice:*** **Pulling a trailer improperly can damage your vehicle and result in costly repairs not covered by your warranty. To pull a trailer correctly, follow the advice in this part, and see your dealer for important information about towing a trailer with your vehicle. Additional rear axle maintenance is required for a vehicle used to tow a trailer. See "Scheduled Maintenance Services" in the Index.**

To identify the trailering capacity of your vehicle, you should read the information in "Weight of the Trailer" that appears later in this section.

If yours was built with trailering options, as many are, it's ready for heavier trailers. But trailering is different than just driving your vehicle by itself. Trailering means changes in handling, durability and fuel economy. Successful, safe trailering takes correct equipment, and it has to be used properly.

That's the reason for this part. In it are many time-tested, important trailering tips and safety rules. Many of these are important for your safety and that of your passengers. So please read this section carefully before you pull a trailer.

## If You Do Decide To Pull A Trailer

If you do, here are some important points:

- There are many different laws, including speed limit restrictions, having to do with trailering. Make sure your rig will be legal, not only where you live but also where you'll be driving. A good source for this information can be state or provincial police.
- Consider using a sway control if your trailer will weigh less than 5,000 lbs (2 268 kg). You should always use a sway control if your trailer will weigh more than 5,000 lbs (2 268 kg). You can ask a hitch dealer about sway controls.
- Don't tow a trailer at all during the first 500 miles (800 km) your new vehicle is driven. Your engine, axle or other parts could be damaged.
- Then, during the first 500 miles (800 km) that you tow a trailer, don't drive over 50 mph (80 km/h) and don't make starts at full throttle. This helps your engine and other parts of your vehicle wear in at the heavier loads.
- You can tow in DRIVE (D). You may want to shift the transmission to THIRD (3) or, if necessary, a lower gear selection if the transmission shifts too often (e.g., under heavy loads and/or hilly conditions). See "Tow/Haul Mode" next.

Three important considerations have to do with weight:

- the weight of the trailer,
- the weight of the trailer tongue
- and the weight on your vehicle's tires.

## Tow/Haul Mode

The tow/haul feature assists when pulling a heavy trailer or a large or heavy load. The purpose of the tow/haul mode is to:

- Reduce the frequency and improve the predictability of transmission shifts when pulling a heavy trailer or a large or heavy load
- Provide the same solid shift feel when pulling a heavy trailer or a large or heavy load as when the vehicle is unloaded.
- Improve control of vehicle speed while requiring less throttle pedal activity when pulling a heavy trailer or a large or heavy load.

Your vehicle is provided with a button at the end of the shift lever which when pressed enables tow/haul. When the button is pressed, a light on the instrument panel will illuminate to indicate that tow/haul has been selected.

Tow/haul may be turned off by pressing the button again, at which time the indicator light on the instrument panel will turn off. The vehicle will automatically turn off tow/haul every time it is started.

Tow/haul is designed to be most effective when the vehicle and trailer combined weight is at least 75 percent of the vehicle's Gross Combination Weight Rating (GCWR). See "Weight of the Trailer" later in this section. Tow/haul is most useful under the following driving conditions:

- When pulling a heavy trailer or a large or heavy load through rolling terrain.
- When pulling a heavy trailer or a large or heavy load in stop and go traffic.
- When pulling a heavy trailer or a large or heavy load in busy parking lots where improved low speed control of the vehicle is desired.

Operating the vehicle in tow/haul when lightly loaded or with no trailer at all will not cause damage. However, there is no benefit to the selection of tow/haul when the vehicle is unloaded. Such a selection when unloaded may result in unpleasant engine and transmission driving characteristics and reduced fuel economy. Tow/haul is recommended only when pulling a heavy trailer or a large or heavy load.

## Weight of the Trailer

How heavy can a trailer safely be?

It depends on how you plan to use your rig. For example, speed, altitude, road grades, outside temperature and how much your vehicle is used to pull a trailer are all important. And, it can also depend on any special equipment that you have on your vehicle.

Use one of the following charts to determine how much your vehicle can weigh, based upon your vehicle model and options.

Maximum trailer weight is calculated assuming only the driver is in the tow vehicle and it has all the required trailering equipment. The weight of additional optional equipment, passengers and cargo in the tow vehicle must be subtracted from the maximum trailer weight.

| Vehicle | Axle Ratio | *Max. Trailer Wt. | **GCWR |
|---|---|---|---|
| Escalade 2WD 5.3L | 3.73 | 7,300 lbs (3 311 kg) | 13,000 lbs (5 897 kg) |
| Escalade AWD 6.0L | 3.73 | 7,800 lbs (3 538 kg) | 14,000 lbs (6 350 kg) |
| Escalade ESV AWD 6.0L | 3.73 | 7,400 lbs (3 357 kg) | 14,000 lbs (6 350 kg) |

*Tongue weight should be 10% to 15% of trailer weight up to 1,000 lbs (454 kg) maximum.

**The Gross Combination Weight Rating (GCWR) is the total allowable weight of the completely loaded vehicle and trailer including any passengers, cargo, equipment and conversions. The GCWR for your vehicle should not be exceeded.

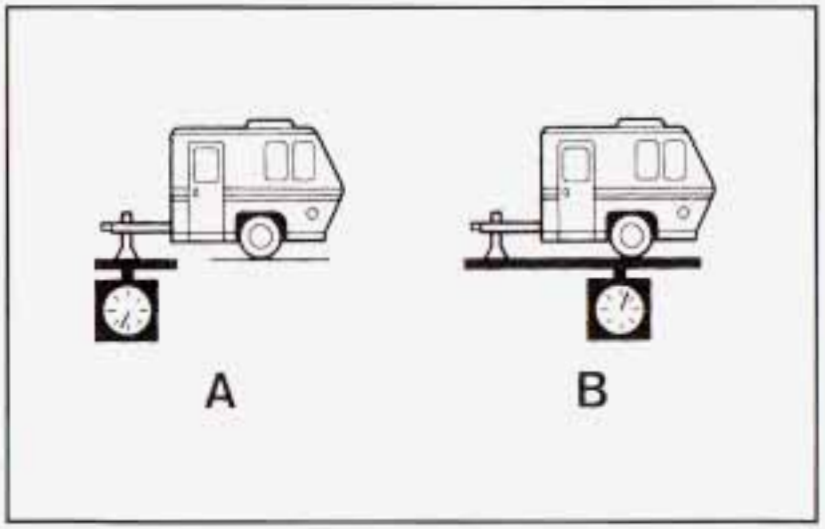
You can ask your dealer for our trailering information or advice, or you can write us at the address listed in your Warranty and Owner Assistance Information Booklet.

In Canada, write to:

General Motors of Canada Limited
Customer Communication Centre, 163-005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa,
Ontario L1H 8P7

## Weight of the Trailer Tongue

The tongue load (A) of any trailer is an important weight to measure because it affects the total or gross weight of your vehicle. The Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) includes the curb weight of the vehicle, any cargo you may carry in it, and the people who will be riding in the vehicle. And if you will tow a trailer, you must add the tongue load to the GVW because your vehicle will be carrying that weight, too. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-48* for more information about your vehicle's maximum load capacity.




If you're using a weight-carrying or a weight-distributing hitch, the trailer tongue weight (A) should be 10 percent to 15 percent of the total loaded trailer weight (B). Do not exceed the maximum allowable tongue weight for your vehicle.

After you've loaded your trailer, weigh the trailer and then the tongue, separately, to see if the weights are proper. If they aren't, you may be able to get them right simply by moving some items around in the trailer.

## Total Weight on Your Vehicle's Tires

Be sure your vehicle's tires are inflated to the upper limit for cold tires. You'll find these numbers on the Certification label at the rear edge of the driver's door or see "Tire Loading". Then be sure you don't go over the GVW and rear axle limits for your vehicle, including the weight of the trailer tongue.

If you use a weight distributing hitch, make sure you don't go over the rear axle limit before you apply the weight distributing spring bars.

## Hitches

It's important to have the correct hitch equipment. Crosswinds, large trucks going by and rough roads are a few reasons why you'll need the right hitch. Here are some rules to follow:

- If you'll be pulling a trailer that, when loaded, will weigh more than 5, 000 lbs (2 268 kg), be sure to use a properly mounted, weight-distributing hitch and sway control of the proper size. This equipment is very important for proper vehicle loading and good handling when you're driving.
- Will you have to make any holes in the body of your vehicle when you install a trailer hitch?

If you do, then be sure to seal the holes later when you remove the hitch. If you don't seal them, deadly carbon monoxide (CO) from your exhaust can get into your vehicle. See "Carbon Monoxide" in the Index. Dirt and water can, too.

## Safety Chains

You should always attach chains between your vehicle and your trailer. Cross the safety chains under the tongue of the trailer to help prevent the tongue from contacting the road if it becomes separated from the hitch. Always leave just enough slack so you can turn with your rig. Never allow safety chains to drag on the ground.

## Trailer Brakes

If your trailer weighs more than 2,000 lbs (900 kg) loaded, then it needs its own brakes — and they must be adequate. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for the trailer brakes so you'll be able to install, adjust and maintain them properly.

Since your vehicle is equipped with Stabilitrak®, your trailer brake system cannot tap into the vehicle's hydraulic brake system.

## Driving with a Trailer

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**If you have a rear-most window open and you pull a trailer with your vehicle, carbon monoxide (CO) could come into your vehicle. You can't see or smell CO. It can cause unconsciousness or death. See "Engine Exhaust" in the Index. To maximize your safety when towing a trailer:**

- **Have your exhaust system inspected for leaks, and make necessary repairs before starting on your trip.**
- **Keep the rear-most windows closed.**
- **If exhaust does come into your vehicle through a window in the rear or another opening, drive with your front, main heating or cooling system on and with the fan on any speed. This will bring fresh, outside air into your vehicle. Do not use the comfort control setting for maximum air because it only recirculates the air inside your vehicle. See "Comfort Controls" in the Index.**

Towing a trailer requires a certain amount of experience. Before setting out for the open road, you'll want to get to know your rig. Acquaint yourself with the feel of handling and braking with the added weight of the trailer. And always keep in mind that the vehicle you are driving is now a good deal longer and not nearly as responsive as your vehicle is by itself.

Before you start, check the trailer hitch and platform (and attachments), safety chains, electrical connector, lamps, tires and mirror adjustment. If the trailer has electric brakes, start your vehicle and trailer moving and then apply the trailer brake controller by hand to be sure the brakes are working. This lets you check your electrical connection at the same time.

During your trip, check occasionally to be sure that the load is secure, and that the lamps and any trailer brakes are still working.

### Following Distance

Stay at least twice as far behind the vehicle ahead as you would when driving your vehicle without a trailer. This can help you avoid situations that require heavy braking and sudden turns.

### Passing

You'll need more passing distance up ahead when you're towing a trailer. And, because you're a good deal longer, you'll need to go much farther beyond the passed vehicle before you can return to your lane.

## Backing Up

Hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. Then, to move the trailer to the left, just move that hand to the left. To move the trailer to the right, move your hand to the right. Always back up slowly and, if possible, have someone guide you.

## Making Turns

***Notice:*** **Making very sharp turns while trailering could cause the trailer to come in contact with the vehicle. Your vehicle could be damaged. Avoid making very sharp turns while trailering.**

When you're turning with a trailer, make wider turns than normal. Do this so your trailer won't strike soft shoulders, curbs, road signs, trees or other objects. Avoid jerky or sudden maneuvers. Signal well in advance.

## Turn Signals When Towing a Trailer

The arrows on your instrument panel will flash whenever you signal a turn or lane change. Properly hooked up, the trailer lamps will also flash, telling other drivers you're about to turn, change lanes or stop.

When towing a trailer, the arrows on your instrument panel will flash for turns even if the bulbs on the trailer are burned out. Thus, you may think drivers behind you are seeing your signal when they are not. It's important to check occasionally to be sure the trailer bulbs are still working.

## Driving On Grades

Reduce speed and shift to a lower gear *before* you start down a long or steep downgrade. If you don't shift down, you might have to use your brakes so much that they would get hot and no longer work well.

You can tow in DRIVE (D). You may want to shift the transmission to THIRD (3) or, if necessary, a lower gear selection if the transmission shifts too often (e.g., under heavy loads and/or hilly conditions).

You may also want to activate the tow/haul mode if the transmission shifts too often. See "Tow/Haul Mode" earlier.

When towing at high altitude on steep uphill grades, consider the following: Engine coolant will boil at a lower temperature than at normal altitudes. If you turn your engine off immediately after towing at high altitude on steep uphill grades, your vehicle may show signs similar to engine overheating. To avoid this, let the engine run while parked (preferably on level ground) with the automatic transmission in PARK (P) for a few minutes before turning the engine off. If you do get the overheat warning, see *Engine Overheating on page 5-28.*

## Parking on Hills

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**You really should not park your vehicle, with a trailer attached, on a hill. If something goes wrong, your rig could start to move. People can be injured, and both your vehicle and the trailer can be damaged.**

But if you ever have to park your rig on a hill, here's how to do it:

1. Apply your regular brakes, but don't shift into PARK (P) yet.
2. Have someone place chocks under the trailer wheels.
3. When the wheel chocks are in place, release the regular brakes until the chocks absorb the load.
4. Reapply the regular brakes. Then apply your parking brake and shift into PARK (P).
5. Release the regular brakes.

## When You Are Ready to Leave After Parking on a Hill

1. Apply your regular brakes and hold the pedal down while you:
   - start your engine,
   - shift into a gear, and
   - release the parking brake.
2. Let up on the brake pedal.
3. Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
4. Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

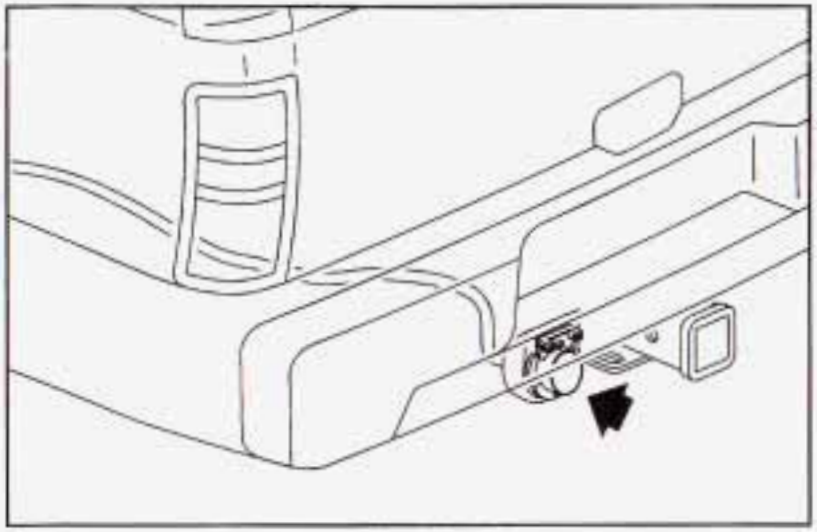
## Maintenance When Trailer Towing

Your vehicle will need service more often when you're pulling a trailer. See the Maintenance Schedule for more on this. Things that are especially important in trailer operation are automatic transmission fluid (don't overfill), engine oil, axle lubricant, belts, cooling system and brake system. Each of these is covered in this manual, and the Index will help you find them quickly. If you're trailering, it's a good idea to review these sections before you start your trip.

Check periodically to see that all hitch nuts and bolts are tight.

## Trailer Wiring Harness

### Heavy-Duty Trailer Wiring Package



Your vehicle is equipped with the seven-wire trailer towing harness.This harness with a seven-pin universal heavy-duty trailer connector is attached to a bracket on the hitch platform.

The Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL) wire is tied next to the trailer wiring harness for use with a trailer.

The seven-wire harness contains the following trailer circuits:

- Yellow: Left Stop/Turn Signal
- Dark Green: Right Stop/Turn Signal
- Brown: Taillamps
- White: Ground
- Light Green: Back-up Lamps
- Red: Battery Feed
- Dark Blue: Trailer Brake

## NOTES

# Section 5 Service and Appearance Care


**Service** ..... 5-3
- Doing Your Own Service Work ..... 5-4
- Adding Equipment to the Outside of Your Vehicle ..... 5-4

**Fuel** ..... 5-5
- Gasoline Octane ..... 5-5
- Gasoline Specifications ..... 5-5
- California Fuel ..... 5-6
- Additives ..... 5-6
- Fuels in Foreign Countries ..... 5-6
- Filling Your Tank ..... 5-7
- Filling a Portable Fuel Container ..... 5-9

**Checking Things Under the Hood** ..... 5-10
- Hood Release ..... 5-10
- Engine Compartment Overview ..... 5-12
- Engine Oil ..... 5-13
- Engine Air Cleaner/Filter ..... 5-19
- Automatic Transmission Fluid ..... 5-21
- Engine Coolant ..... 5-24
- Coolant Surge Tank Pressure Cap ..... 5-27
- Engine Overheating ..... 5-28
- Cooling System ..... 5-31
- Engine Fan Noise ..... 5-36
- Power Steering Fluid ..... 5-37
- Windshield Washer Fluid ..... 5-37
- Brakes ..... 5-39
- Battery ..... 5-42
- Jump Starting ..... 5-43

**All-Wheel Drive** ..... 5-49

**Rear Axle** ..... 5-51

**Headlamp Aiming** ..... 5-52
- Headlamp Horizontal Aiming ..... 5-53
- Headlamp Vertical Aiming ..... 5-54

**Bulb Replacement** ..... 5-56
- High Intensity Discharge (HID) Lighting ..... 5-56
- Halogen Bulbs ..... 5-56
- Headlamps ..... 5-57
- Front Turn Signal, Sidemarker and Daytime Running Lamps ..... 5-60
- Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL) ..... 5-61
- Taillamps ..... 5-61
- Replacement Bulbs ..... 5-63

# Section 5 Service and Appearance Care


**Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement** ..... 5-64

**Tires** ..... 5-65
- Inflation -- Tire Pressure ..... 5-66
- Tire Inspection and Rotation ..... 5-66
- When It Is Time for New Tires ..... 5-68
- Buying New Tires ..... 5-68
- Uniform Tire Quality Grading ..... 5-70
- Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance ..... 5-71
- Wheel Replacement ..... 5-72
- Tire Chains ..... 5-73
- If a Tire Goes Flat ..... 5-74
- Changing a Flat Tire ..... 5-74
- Spare Tire ..... 5-89

**Appearance Care** ..... 5-90
- Cleaning the Inside of Your Vehicle ..... 5-90
- Care of Safety Belts ..... 5-92
- Weatherstrips ..... 5-92
- Cleaning the Outside of Your Vehicle ..... 5-93
- Sheet Metal Damage ..... 5-95
- Finish Damage ..... 5-95
- Underbody Maintenance ..... 5-95
- Chemical Paint Spotting ..... 5-96
- GM Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials ..... 5-96

**Vehicle Identification** ..... 5-98
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) ..... 5-98
- Service Parts Identification Label ..... 5-98

**Electrical System** ..... 5-99
- Add-On Electrical Equipment ..... 5-99
- Windshield Wiper Fuses ..... 5-99
- Power Windows and Other Power Options ..... 5-99
- Fuses and Circuit Breakers ..... 5-100

**Capacities and Specifications** ..... 5-109
- Capacities and Specifications ..... 5-109

**Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts** ..... 5-111

# Service

Your dealer knows your vehicle best and wants you to be happy with it. We hope you'll go to your dealer for all your service needs. You'll get genuine GM parts and GM-trained and supported service people.

We hope you'll want to keep your GM vehicle all GM. Genuine GM parts have one of these marks:

ACDelco

GENUINE GM Parts

GM Goodwrench

## Doing Your Own Service Work

If you want to do some of your own service work, you'll want to use the proper service manual. It tells you much more about how to service your vehicle than this manual can. To order the proper service manual, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 7-10.*

Your vehicle has an air bag system. Before attempting to do your own service work, see *Servicing Your Air Bag-Equipped Vehicle on page 1-86.*

You should keep a record with all parts receipts and list the mileage and the date of any service work you perform. See *Part E: Maintenance Record on page 6-18.*

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**You can be injured and your vehicle could be damaged if you try to do service work on a vehicle without knowing enough about it.**

- **Be sure you have sufficient knowledge, experience, the proper replacement parts and tools before you attempt any vehicle maintenance task.**
- **Be sure to use the proper nuts, bolts and other fasteners. "English" and "metric" fasteners can be easily confused. If you use the wrong fasteners, parts can later break or fall off. You could be hurt.**

## Adding Equipment to the Outside of Your Vehicle

Things you might add to the outside of your vehicle can affect the airflow around it. This may cause wind noise and affect windshield washer performance. Check with your dealer before adding equipment to the outside of your vehicle.

# Fuel

The 8th digit of your vehicle identification number (VIN) shows the code letter or number that identifies your engine. You will find the VIN at the top left of the instrument panel. See *Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) on page 5-98.*

## Gasoline Octane

If your vehicle has the 5.3L engine (VIN Code T), use regular unleaded gasoline with a posted octane of 87 or higher. If the octane is less than 87, you may get a heavy knocking noise when you drive. If this occurs, use a gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher as soon as possible. Otherwise, you might damage your engine. A little pinging noise when you accelerate or drive uphill is considered normal. This does not indicate a problem exists or that a higher-octane fuel is necessary. If you are using 87 octane or higher-octane fuel and you hear heavy knocking, your engine needs service.

If your vehicle has the 6.0L HO engine (VIN Code N), use premium unleaded gasoline with a posted octane of 91 or higher for best performance. You may also use, middle grade or regular unleaded gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher, but your vehicle's acceleration may be slightly reduced. If the octane is less than 87, you may get a heavy knocking noise when you drive. If this occurs, use a gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher as soon as possible. Otherwise, you might damage your engine.

## Gasoline Specifications

It is recommended that gasoline meet specifications which were developed by the American Automobile Manufacturers Association and endorsed by the Canadian Vehicle Manufacturers Association for better vehicle performance and engine protection. Gasoline meeting these specifications could provide improved driveability and emission control system performance compared to other gasoline.



**Canada Only**

In Canada, look for the "Auto Makers' Choice" label on the pump.

## California Fuel

If your vehicle is certified to meet California Emission Standards (see the underhood emission control label), it is designed to operate on fuels that meet California specifications. If this fuel is not available in states adopting California emissions standards, your vehicle will operate satisfactorily on fuels meeting federal specifications, but emission control system performance may be affected. The malfunction indicator lamp may turn on (see *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 3-41*) and your vehicle may fail a smog-check test. If this occurs, return to your authorized GM dealer for diagnosis. If it is determined that the condition is caused by the type of fuel used, repairs may not be covered by your warranty.

## Additives

To provide cleaner air, all gasolines in the United States are now required to contain additives that will help prevent engine and fuel system deposits from forming, allowing your emission control system to work properly. You should not have to add anything to your fuel. Gasolines containing oxygenates, such as ethers and ethanol, and reformulated gasolines may be available in your area to contribute to clean air. General Motors recommends that you use these gasolines, particularly if they comply with the specifications described earlier.

***Notice:*** **Your vehicle was not designed for fuel that contains methanol. Don't use fuel containing methanol. It can corrode metal parts in your fuel system and also damage the plastic and rubber parts. That damage wouldn't be covered under your warranty.**

Some gasolines that are not reformulated for low emissions may contain an octane-enhancing additive called methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT); ask the attendant where you buy gasoline whether the fuel contains MMT. General Motors does not recommend the use of such gasolines. Fuels containing MMT can reduce the life of spark plugs and the performance of the emission control system may be affected. The malfunction indicator lamp may turn on. If this occurs, return to your authorized GM dealer for service.

## Fuels in Foreign Countries

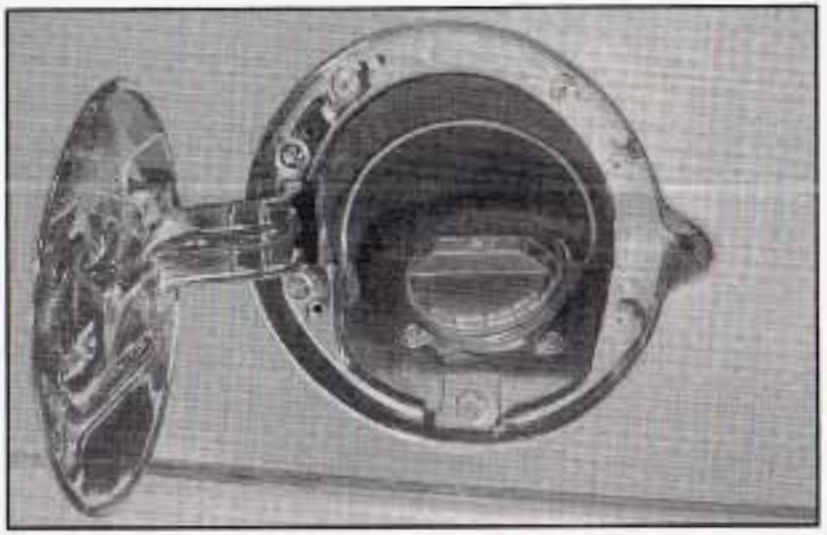
If you plan on driving in another country outside the United States or Canada, the proper fuel may be hard to find. Never use leaded gasoline or any other fuel not recommended in the previous text on fuel. Costly repairs caused by use of improper fuel wouldn't be covered by your warranty.

To check the fuel availability, ask an auto club, or contact a major oil company that does business in the country where you'll be driving.

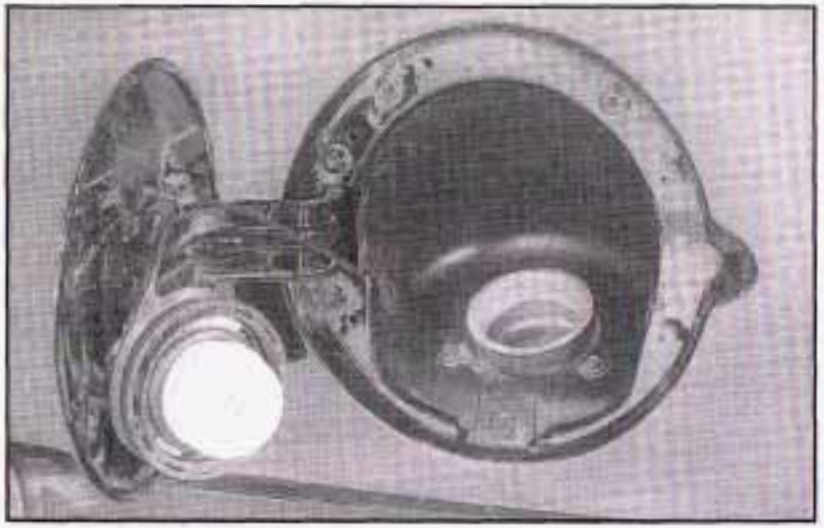
## Filling Your Tank

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Fuel vapor is highly flammable. It burns violently, and that can cause very bad injuries. Don't smoke if you're near fuel or refueling your vehicle. Keep sparks, flames and smoking materials away from fuel.**



The fuel cap is located behind a hinged door on the driver's side of the vehicle.



While refueling, hang the fuel cap by the tether using the hook located on the inside of the filler door.

To remove the fuel cap, turn it slowly to the left (counterclockwise).

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**If you get fuel on yourself and then something ignites it, you could be badly burned. Fuel can spray out on you if you open the fuel cap too**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**quickly. This spray can happen if your tank is nearly full, and is more likely in hot weather. Open the fuel cap slowly and wait for any "hiss" noise to stop. Then unscrew the cap all the way.**

Be careful not to spill fuel. Clean fuel from painted surfaces as soon as possible. See *Cleaning the Outside of Your Vehicle on page 5-93.*

When you put the fuel cap back on, turn it to the right (clockwise) until you hear a clicking sound. Make sure you fully install the cap. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. this would allow fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 3-41.*

***Notice:*** **If you need a new fuel cap, be sure to get the right type. Your dealer can get one for you. If you get the wrong type, it may not fit properly. This may cause your malfunction indicator lamp to light and may damage your fuel tank and emissions system. See "Malfunction Indicator Lamp" in the Index.**

## Filling a Portable Fuel Container

**⚠ CAUTION:**

Never fill a portable fuel container while it is in your vehicle. Static electricity discharge from the container can ignite the gasoline vapor. You can be badly burned and your vehicle damaged if this occurs. To help avoid injury to you and others:

- Dispense gasoline only into approved containers.

CAUTION: (Continued)

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

- Do not fill a container while it is inside a vehicle, in a vehicle's trunk, pickup bed or on any surface other than the ground.
- Bring the fill nozzle in contact with the inside of the fill opening before operating the nozzle. Contact should be maintained until the filling is complete.
- Don't smoke while pumping gasoline.

# Checking Things Under the Hood

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Things that burn can get on hot engine parts and start a fire. These include liquids like fuel, oil, coolant, brake fluid, windshield washer and other fluids, and plastic or rubber. You or others could be burned. Be careful not to drop or spill things that will burn onto a hot engine.**

## Hood Release

To open the hood, do the following:



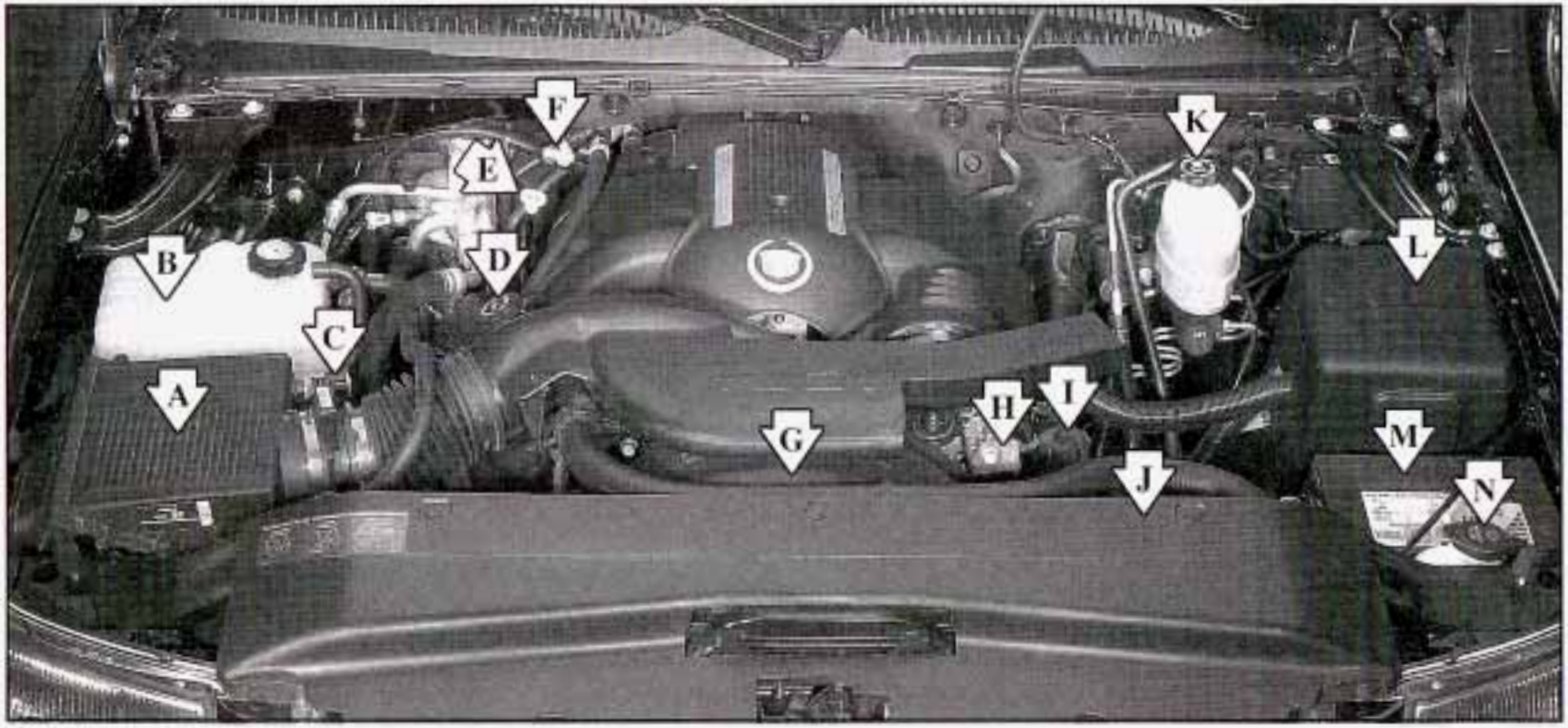
1. Pull the handle located inside the vehicle to the lower left of the steering wheel.



2. Then go to the front of the vehicle and pull up on the secondary hood release, located near the center of the grill.
3. Lift the hood.

## Engine Compartment Overview

When you open the hood on the 6000 H.O. engine (5300 similar), you will see:



A. Engine Air Cleaner/Filter
B. Coolant Surge Tank
C. Air Filter Restriction Indicator (If Equipped)
D. Engine Oil Fill
E. Engine Oil Dipstick
F. Automatic Transmission Dipstick
G. Fan
H. Remote Negative (–) Terminal (GND)
I. Remote Positive (+) Terminal
J. Power Steering Fluid Reservoir (Out of View)
K. Brake Master Cylinder Reservoir
L. Underhood Fuse Block
M. Battery
N. Windshield Washer Fluid Reservoir

## Engine Oil

If the CHECK OIL LEVEL message appears on the instrument cluster, it means you need to check your engine oil level right away.

For more information, see "CHECK OIL LEVEL" under *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-56.*

You should check your engine oil level regularly; this is an added reminder.

## Checking Engine Oil

It's a good idea to check your engine oil every time you get fuel. In order to get an accurate reading, the oil must be warm and the vehicle must be on level ground.



The engine oil dipstick has a yellow loop handle and is located in the engine compartment on the passenger's side of the vehicle. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for more information on location.

Turn off the engine and give the oil several minutes to drain back into the oil pan. If you don't, the oil dipstick might not show the actual level.

Pull out the dipstick and clean it with a paper towel or cloth, then push it back in all the way. Remove it again, keeping the tip down, and check the level.



## When to Add Engine Oil

If the oil is at or below the cross-hatched area at the tip of the dipstick, then you'll need to add at least one quart of oil. But you must use the right kind. This part explains what kind of oil to use. For engine oil crankcase capacity, see *Capacities and Specifications on page 5-109.*

***Notice:*** **Don't add too much oil. If your engine has so much oil that the oil level gets above the cross-hatched area that shows the proper operating range, your engine could be damaged.**




The engine oil fill cap is located on the valve cover on the passenger's side of the vehicle. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for further location information.

Be sure to fill it enough to put the level somewhere in the proper operating range. Push the dipstick all the way back in when you're through.

## What Kind of Engine Oil to Use

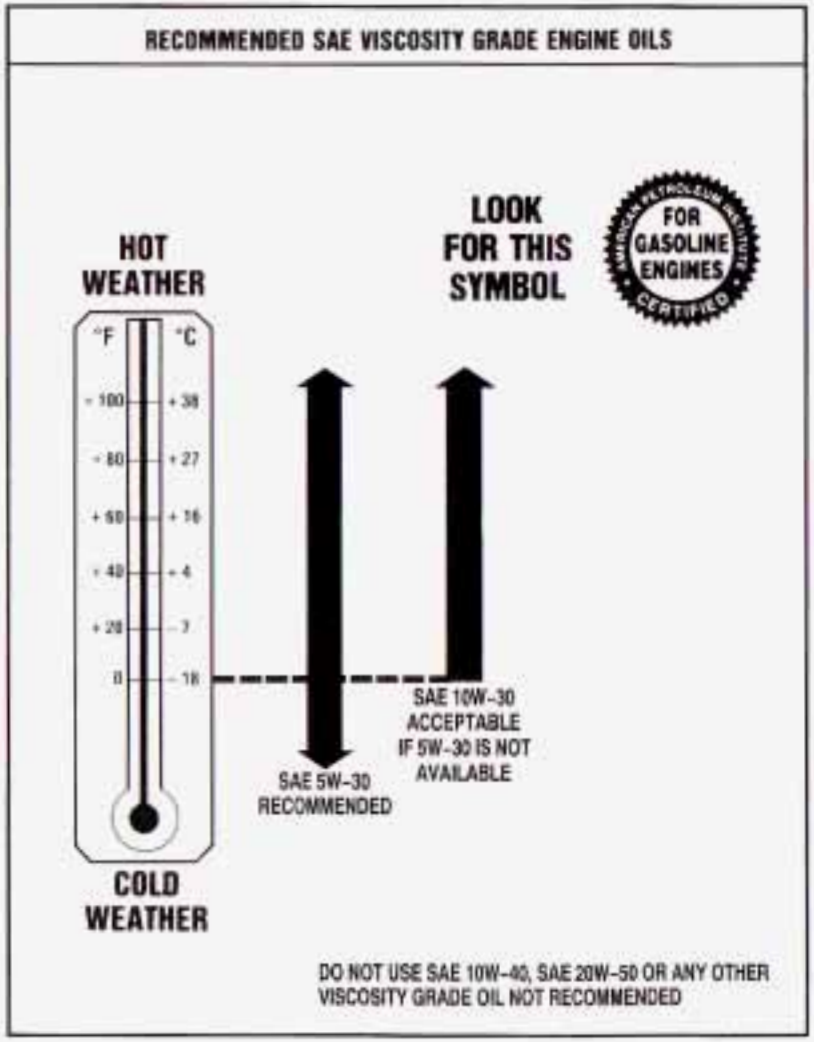
Oils recommended for your vehicle can be identified by looking for the starburst symbol.

This symbol indicates that the oil has been certified by the American Petroleum Institute (API). Do not use any oil which does not carry this starburst symbol.




If you choose to perform the engine oil change service yourself, be sure the oil you use has the starburst symbol on the front of the oil container. If you have your oil changed for you, be sure the oil put into your engine is American Petroleum Institute certified for gasoline engines.

You should also use the proper viscosity oil for your vehicle, as shown in the viscosity chart.



As in the chart shown previously, SAE 5W-30 is the only viscosity grade recommended for your vehicle. You should look for and use only oils which have the API Starburst symbol and which are also identified as SAE 5W-30. If you cannot find such SAE 5W-30 oils, you can use an SAE 10W-30 oil which has the API Starburst symbol, if it's going to be 0°F (–18°C) or above. Do not use other viscosity grade oils, such as SAE 10W–40 or SAE 20W-50 under any conditions.

***Notice:*** **Use only engine oil with the American Petroleum Institute Certified For Gasoline Engines starburst symbol. Failure to use the recommended oil can result in engine damage not covered by your warranty.**

GM Goodwrench® oil meets all the requirements for your vehicle.

If you are in an area of extreme cold, where the temperature falls below –20°F (–29°C), it is recommended that you use either an SAE 5W-30 synthetic oil or an SAE 0W-30 oil. Both will provide easier cold starting and better protection for your engine at extremely low temperatures.

## Engine Oil Additives

Don't add anything to your oil. The recommended oils with the starburst symbol are all you will need for good performance and engine protection.

## When to Change Engine Oil (GM Oil Life System)

Your vehicle has a computer system that lets you know when to change the engine oil and filter. This is based on engine revolutions and engine temperature, and not on mileage. Based on driving conditions, the mileage at which an oil change will be indicated can vary considerably. For the oil life system to work properly, you must reset the system every time the oil is changed.

When the system has calculated that oil life has been diminished, it will indicate that an oil change is necessary. A CHANGE ENGINE OIL message will come on. Change your oil as soon as possible within the next two times you stop for fuel. It is possible that, if you are driving under the best conditions, the oil life system may not indicate that an oil change is necessary for over a year. However, your engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and at this time the system must be reset. It is also important to check your oil regularly and keep it at the proper level.

If the system is ever reset accidentally, you must change your oil at 3,000 miles (5 000 km) since your last oil change. Remember to reset the oil life system whenever the oil is changed.

## How to Reset the CHANGE ENGINE OIL Message

The GM Oil Life System calculates when to change your engine oil and filter based on vehicle use. Anytime your oil is changed, reset the system so it can calculate when the next oil change is required. If a situation occurs where you change your oil prior to a CHANGE ENGINE OIL message being turned on, reset the system.

To reset the CHANGE ENGINE OIL message, see "GM Oil Life System" under *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-47* for vehicles equipped with the DIC, or do the following:

1. Turn the ignition key to RUN with the engine off.
2. Fully press and release the accelerator pedal three times within five seconds.

If the OIL LIFE RESET message flashes for 10 seconds, the system is reset.

If the system does not reset, try the procedure once again. If it still does not reset, see your dealer for service.

## What to Do with Used Oil

Used engine oil contains certain elements that may be unhealthy for your skin and could even cause cancer. Don't let used oil stay on your skin for very long. Clean your skin and nails with soap and water, or a good hand cleaner. Wash or properly dispose of clothing or rags containing used engine oil. See the manufacturer's warnings about the use and disposal of oil products.

Used oil can be a threat to the environment. If you change your own oil, be sure to drain all the oil from the filter before disposal. Never dispose of oil by putting it in the trash, pouring it on the ground, into sewers, or into streams or bodies of water. Instead, recycle it by taking it to a place that collects used oil. If you have a problem properly disposing of your used oil, ask your dealer, a service station or a local recycling center for help.

## Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

The engine air cleaner/filter assembly may have an air filter restriction indicator that lets you know when the engine air cleaner/filter is dirty and needs to be serviced. The air filter restriction indicator is located on the air filter assembly cover. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for more information on location.

See *Part B: Owner Checks and Services on page 6-10* to determine when to check the air filter restriction indicator.




The service window (A) with the percentage scale shows the amount of engine air cleaner/filter life used.

When both service window (A) and service window (B) turn orange, replace the engine air cleaner/filter.

After changing the engine air cleaner/filter, press the button on top of the air filter restriction indicator to reset it.



Your engine air cleaner/filter is located in the air filter housing near the front corner of the engine compartment on the passenger's side of the vehicle. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for more information on location.



1. To remove the engine air cleaner/filter, loosen the screws on the cover.
2. Lift the cover upward and remove the engine air cleaner/filter out of the air cleaner housing. Care should be taken to dislodge as little dirt as possible.
3. Clean the filter sealing surface and the housing.
4. Install the new engine air cleaner/filter.
5. Install the cover and tighten the screws.

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine when to replace the engine air cleaner/filter. See *Part B: Owner Checks and Services on page 6-10.*

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Operating the engine with the air cleaner/filter off can cause you or others to be burned. The air cleaner not only cleans the air, it stops flame if the engine backfires. If it isn't there and the engine backfires, you could be burned. Don't drive with it off, and be careful working on the engine with the air cleaner/filter off.**

***Notice:*** **If the air cleaner/filter is off, a backfire can cause a damaging engine fire. And, dirt can easily get into your engine, which will damage it. Always have the air cleaner/filter in place when you're driving.**

# Automatic Transmission Fluid

## When to Check and Change

A good time to check your automatic transmission fluid level is when the engine oil is changed.

Change both the fluid and filter every 50,000 miles (83 000 km) if the vehicle's GVWR is over 8,600 or if the vehicle is mainly driven under one or more of these conditions:

- In heavy city traffic where the outside temperature regularly reaches 90°F (32°C) or higher.
- In hilly or mountainous terrain.
- When doing frequent trailer towing.
- Uses such as found in taxi, police or delivery service.

If your vehicle's GVWR is not over 8,600 and you do not use your vehicle under any of these conditions, change the fluid and filter every 100,000 miles (166 000 km).

See *Part A: Scheduled Maintenance Services on page 6-4.*

## How to Check

Because this operation can be a little difficult, you may choose to have this done at the dealership service department.

If you do it yourself, be sure to follow all the instructions here, or you could get a false reading on the dipstick.

***Notice:*** **Too much or too little fluid can damage your transmission. Too much can mean that some of the fluid could come out and fall on hot engine part or exhaust system parts, starting a fire. Too little fluid could cause the transmission to overheat. Be sure to get an accurate reading if you check your transmission fluid.**

Wait at least 30 minutes before checking the transmission fluid level if you have been driving:

- When outside temperatures are above 90°F (32°C).
- At high speed for quite a while.
- In heavy traffic – especially in hot weather.
- While pulling a trailer.

To get the right reading, the fluid should be at normal operating temperature, which is 180°F to 200°F (82°C to 93°C).

Get the vehicle warmed up by driving about 15 miles (24 km) when outside temperatures are above 50°F (10°C). If it's colder than 50°F (10°C), drive the vehicle in THIRD (3) until the engine temperature gage moves and then remains steady for 10 minutes.

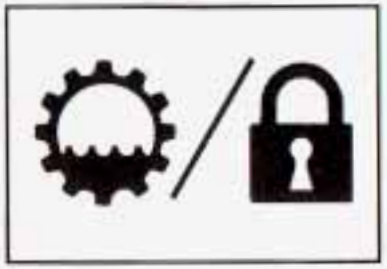
A cold fluid check can be made after the vehicle has been sitting for eight hours or more with the engine off, but this is used only as a reference. Let the engine run at idle for five minutes if outside temperatures are 50°F (10°C) or more. If it's colder than 50°F (10°C), you may have to idle the engine longer. Should the fluid level be low during this cold check, you *must* check the fluid hot before adding fluid. Checking the fluid hot will give you a more accurate reading of the fluid level.

## Checking the Fluid Level

Prepare your vehicle as follows:

- Park your vehicle on a level place. Keep the engine running.
- With the parking brake applied, place the shift lever in PARK (P).
- With your foot on the brake pedal, move the shift lever through each gear range, pausing for about three seconds in each range. Then, position the shift lever in PARK (P).
- Let the engine run at idle for three minutes or more.

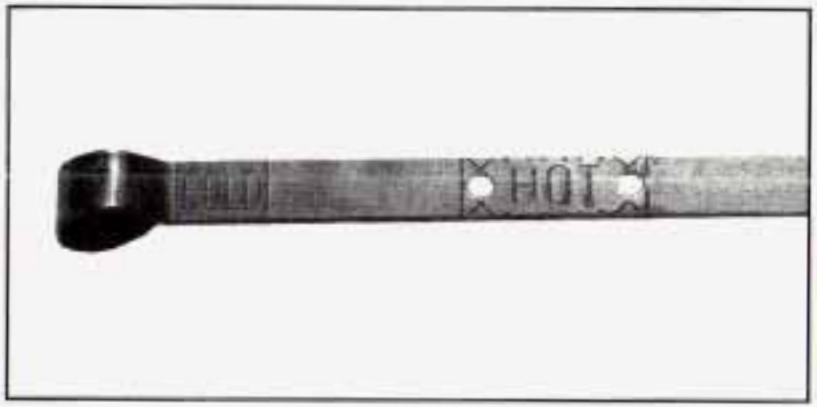
Then, without shutting off the engine, follow these steps:



The transmission dipstick handle with the graphic is located at the rear of the engine compartment, on the passenger's side.

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for more information on location.

1. Flip the handle up and then pull out the dipstick and wipe it with a clean rag or paper towel.
2. Push it back in all the way, wait three seconds and then pull it back out again.




3. Check both sides of the dipstick, and read the lower level. The fluid level must be in the COLD area, below the cross-hatched area, for a cold check or in the HOT area or cross-hatched area for a hot check.
4. If the fluid level is in the acceptable range, push the dipstick back in all the way; then flip the handle down to lock the dipstick in place.

## How to Add Fluid

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine what kind of transmission fluid to use. See *Part D: Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-16.*

Add fluid only after checking the transmission fluid while it is hot. (A cold check is used only as a reference.) If the fluid level is low, add only enough of the proper fluid to bring the level up to the HOT area for a hot check. It doesn't take much fluid, generally less than one pint (0.5 L). *Don't overfill.*

***Notice:*** **We recommend you use only fluid labeled DEXRON® -III, because fluid with that label is made especially for your automatic transmission. Damage caused by fluid other than DEXRON® -III is not covered by your new vehicle warranty.**

- After adding fluid, recheck the fluid level as described under *How to Check.*
- When the correct fluid level is obtained, push the dipstick back in all the way; then flip the handle down to lock the dipstick in place.

## Engine Coolant

The cooling system in your vehicle is filled with DEX-COOL® engine coolant. This coolant is designed to remain in your vehicle for 5 years or 150,000 miles (240 000 km), whichever occurs first, if you add only DEX-COOL® extended life coolant.

The following explains your cooling system and how to add coolant when it is low. If you have a problem with engine overheating, see *Engine Overheating on page 5-28*.

A 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL® coolant will:

- Give freezing protection down to −34°F (−37°C).
- Give boiling protection up to 265°F (129°C).
- Protect against rust and corrosion.
- Help keep the proper engine temperature.
- Let the warning lights and gages work as they should.

***Notice:*** **When adding coolant, it is important that you use only DEX-COOL® (silicate-free) coolant. If coolant other than DEX-COOL® is added to the system, premature engine, heater core or radiator corrosion may result. In addition, the engine coolant will require change sooner -- at 30,000 miles (50,000 km) or 24 months, whichever occurs first. Damage caused by the use of coolant other than DEX-COOL® is not covered by your new vehicle warranty.**

## What to Use

Use a mixture of one-half *clean, drinkable water* and one-half DEX-COOL® coolant which won't damage aluminum parts. If you use this coolant mixture, you don't need to add anything else.

### ⚠ CAUTION:

**Adding only plain water to your cooling system can be dangerous. Plain water, or some other liquid such as alcohol, can boil before the proper coolant mixture will. Your vehicle's coolant warning system is set for the proper coolant mixture. With plain water or the wrong mixture, your engine could get too hot but you wouldn't get the overheat warning. Your engine could catch fire and you or others could be burned. Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL® coolant.**

***Notice:*** **If you use an improper coolant mixture, your engine could overheat and be badly damaged. The repair cost wouldn't be covered by your warranty. Too much water in the mixture can freeze and crack the engine, radiator, heater core and other parts.**

If you have to add coolant more than four times a year, have your dealer check your cooling system.

***Notice:*** **If you use the proper coolant, you don't have to add extra inhibitors or additives which claim to improve the system. These can be harmful.**

## Checking Coolant



The coolant surge tank is located in the engine compartment on the passenger's side of the vehicle.

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for more information on location.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Turning the surge tank pressure cap when the engine and radiator are hot can allow steam and scalding liquids to blow out and burn you**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**badly. Never turn the surge tank pressure cap — even a little — when the engine and radiator are hot.**

The vehicle must be on a level surface. When your engine is cold, the coolant level should be at the FULL COLD mark.

If the LOW COOLANT LEVEL message comes on and stays on, it means you're low on engine coolant.

See "Low Coolant Level" under *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-56.*

## Adding Coolant

If you need more coolant, add the proper DEX-COOL® coolant mixture *at the surge tank*, but only when the engine is cool.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**You can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts. Coolant contains ethylene glycol, and it will burn if the engine parts are hot enough. Don't spill coolant on a hot engine.**

When replacing the pressure cap, make sure it is hand-tight.

## Coolant Surge Tank Pressure Cap




The coolant surge tank pressure cap must be fully installed on the coolant surge tank.

***Notice:*** **Your pressure cap is a pressure-type cap and must be tightly installed to prevent coolant loss and possible engine damage from overheating. See "Capacities and Specifications" for more information.**

## Engine Overheating

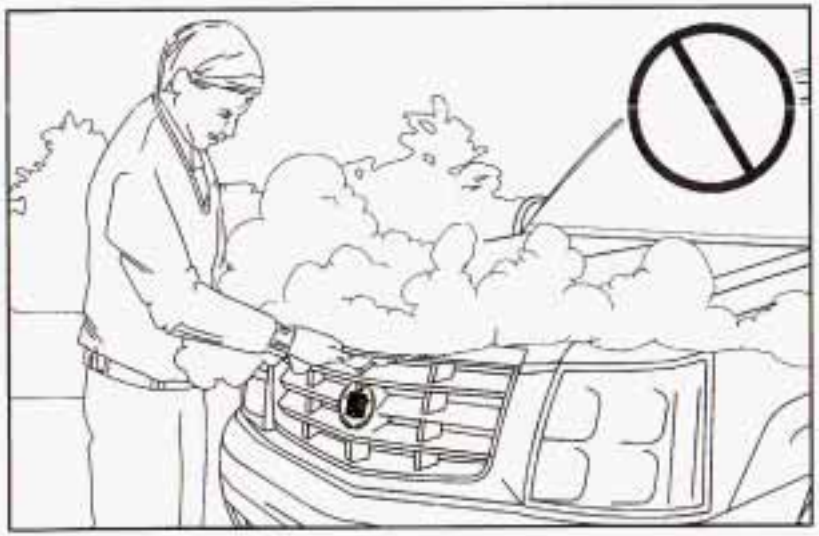
You will find a coolant temperature gage on your vehicle's instrument panel cluster. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Gage on page 3-39*. In addition, you will find a LOW COOLANT, ENGINE COOLANT HOT, ENGINE OVERHEATED and a REDUCED ENGINE POWER message in the DIC on the instrument panel. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 3-47*.

## Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode

If an overheated engine condition exists and the REDUCED ENGINE POWER message is displayed, an overheat protection mode which alternates firing groups of cylinders helps prevent engine damage. In this mode, you will notice a loss in power and engine performance. This operating mode allows your vehicle to be driven to a safe place in an emergency. Driving extended miles (km) and/or towing a trailer in the overheat protection mode should be avoided.

***Notice:*** **After driving in the overheated engine protection operating mode, to avoid engine damage, allow the engine to cool before attempting any repair. The engine oil will be severely degraded. Repair the cause of coolant loss and change the oil. See "Engine Oil" in the Index.**

## If Steam Is Coming From Your Engine



**⚠ CAUTION:**

Steam from an overheated engine can burn you badly, even if you just open the hood. Stay away from the engine if you see or hear steam coming from it. Just turn it off and get

CAUTION: (Continued)

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

everyone away from the vehicle until it cools down. Wait until there is no sign of steam or coolant before you open the hood.

If you keep driving when your engine is overheated, the liquids in it can catch fire. You or others could be badly burned. Stop your engine if it overheats, and get out of the vehicle until the engine is cool.

See "Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode" in the Index for information on driving to a safe place in an emergency.

*Notice:* If your engine catches fire because you keep driving with no coolant, your vehicle can be badly damaged. The costly repairs would not be covered by your warranty. See "Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode" in the Index for information on driving to a safe place in an emergency.

## If No Steam Is Coming From Your Engine

An overheat warning, along with a low coolant message, can indicate a serious problem. See *Low Coolant* under *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-56.*

If you get an engine overheat warning with no low coolant message, but see or hear no steam, the problem may not be too serious. Sometimes the engine can get a little too hot when you:

- Climb a long hill on a hot day.
- Stop after high-speed driving.
- Idle for long periods in traffic.
- Tow a trailer. See "Driving on Grades" under *Towing a Trailer on page 4-50.*

If you get the overheat warning with no sign of steam, try this for a minute or so:

1. Turn on your heater to full hot at the highest fan speed and open the window as necessary.
2. If you're in a traffic jam, shift to NEUTRAL (N); otherwise, shift to the highest gear while driving – DRIVE (D).

If you no longer have the overheat warning, you can drive. Just to be safe, drive slower for about 10 minutes. If the warning doesn't come back on, you can drive normally.

If the warning continues, pull over, stop, and park your vehicle right away.

If there's still no sign of steam, push down the accelerator until the engine speed is about twice as fast as normal idle speed for at least three minutes while you're parked. If you still have the warning, *turn off the engine and get everyone out of the vehicle* until it cools down. Also, see "Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode" listed previously in this section.

You may decide not to lift the hood but to get service help right away.

## Cooling System

When you decide it's safe to lift the hood, here's what you'll see:




A. Coolant Surge Tank

B. Coolant Surge Tank Pressure Cap

C. Engine Fan

If the coolant inside the coolant surge tank is boiling, don't do anything else until it cools down. The vehicle should be parked on a level surface.



The coolant level should be at or above the FULL COLD mark. If it isn't, you may have a leak at the pressure cap or in the radiator hoses, heater hoses, radiator, water pump or somewhere else in the cooling system.

### ⚠ CAUTION:

**Heater and radiator hoses, and other engine parts, can be very hot. Don't touch them. If you do, you can be burned.**

**Don't run the engine if there is a leak. If you run the engine, it could lose all coolant. That could cause an engine fire, and you could be burned. Get any leak fixed before you drive the vehicle.**

If there seems to be no leak, start the engine again. The engine cooling fan speed should increase when idle speed is doubled by pushing the accelerator pedal down. If it doesn't, your vehicle needs service. Turn off the engine.

***Notice:*** **Engine damage from running your engine without coolant isn't covered by your warranty. See "Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode" in the Index for information on driving to a safe place in an emergency.**

***Notice:*** **When adding coolant, it is important that you use only DEX-COOL® (silicate-free) coolant. If coolant other than DEX-COOL® is added to the system, premature engine, heater core or radiator corrosion may result. In addition, the engine coolant will require change sooner — at 30,000 miles (50 000 km) or 24 months, whichever occurs first. Damage caused by the use of coolant other than DEX-COOL® is not covered by your new vehicle warranty.**

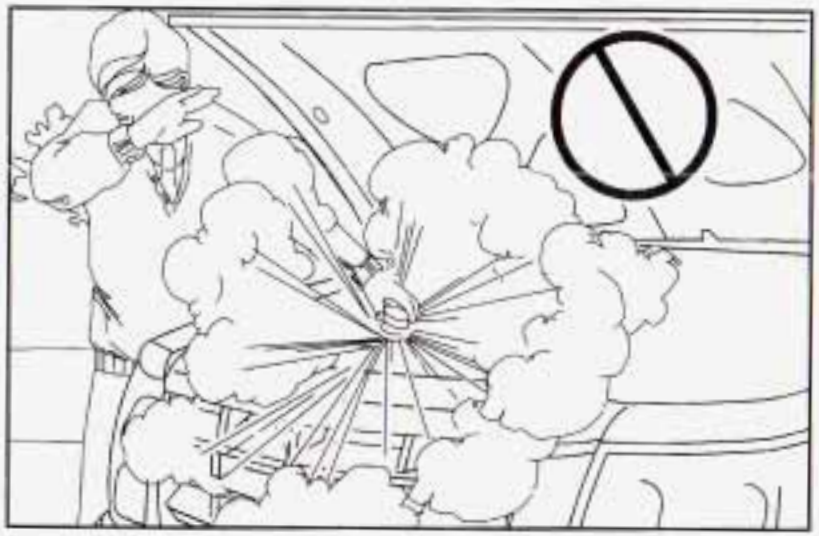
## How to Add Coolant to the Coolant Surge Tank

If you haven't found a problem yet, check to see if coolant is visible in the surge tank. If coolant is visible but the coolant level isn't at or above the FULL COLD mark, add a 50/50 mixture of *clean, drinkable water* and DEX-COOL® coolant at the coolant surge tank, but be sure the cooling system, including the coolant surge tank pressure cap, is cool before you do it. See *Engine Coolant on page 5-24* for more information.

If no coolant is visible in the surge tank, add coolant as follows:

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system can blow out and burn you badly. They are under pressure, and if you turn the radiator pressure cap -- even a little -- they can come out at high speed. Never turn the cap when the cooling system, including the radiator pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and radiator pressure cap to cool if you ever have to turn the pressure cap.**



**⚠ CAUTION:**

Adding only plain water to your cooling system can be dangerous. Plain water, or some other liquid such as alcohol, can boil before the proper coolant mixture will. Your

CAUTION: (Continued)

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

vehicle's coolant warning system is set for the proper coolant mixture. With plain water or the wrong mixture, your engine could get too hot but you wouldn't get the overheat warning. Your engine could catch fire and you or others could be burned. Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX COOL® coolant.

*Notice:* In cold weather, water can freeze and crack the engine, radiator, heater core and other parts. Use the recommended coolant and the proper coolant mixture.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

You can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts. Coolant contains ethylene glycol and it will burn if the engine parts are hot enough. Don't spill coolant on a hot engine.




1. Park the vehicle on a level surface. You can remove the coolant surge tank pressure cap when the cooling system, including the coolant surge tank pressure cap and upper radiator hose, is no longer hot. Turn the pressure cap slowly counterclockwise (left) about one full turn. If you hear a hiss, wait for that to stop. A hiss means there is still some pressure left.



2. Then keep turning the pressure cap slowly, and remove it.



3. Then fill the coolant surge tank with the proper mixture, to the FULL COLD mark.



4. With the coolant surge tank pressure cap off, start the engine and let it run until you can feel the upper radiator hose getting hot. Watch out for the engine cooling fan.

   By this time, the coolant level inside the coolant surge tank may be lower. If the level is lower, add more of the proper mixture to the coolant surge tank until the level reaches the FULL COLD mark.




5. Then replace the pressure cap. Be sure the pressure cap is hand-tight and fully seated.

## Engine Fan Noise

Your vehicle has a clutched engine cooling fan. When the clutch is engaged, the fan spins faster to provide more air to cool the engine. In most everyday driving conditions, the fan is spinning slower and the clutch is not fully engaged. This improves fuel economy and reduces fan noise. Under heavy vehicle loading, trailer towing and/or high outside temperatures, the fan speed increases as the clutch more fully engages. So you may hear an increase in fan noise. This is normal and should not be mistaken as the transmission slipping or making extra shifts. It is merely the cooling system functioning properly. The fan will slow down when additional cooling is not required and the clutch disengages.

You may also hear this fan noise when you start the engine. It will go away as the fan clutch partially disengages.

## Power Steering Fluid



### When to Check Power Steering Fluid

It is not necessary to regularly check power steering fluid unless you suspect there is a leak in the system or you hear an unusual noise. A fluid loss in this system could indicate a problem. Have the system inspected and repaired. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for reservoir location.

### How to Check Power Steering Fluid

Turn the key off, let the engine compartment cool down, wipe the cap and the top of the reservoir clean, then unscrew the cap and wipe the dipstick with a clean rag. Replace the cap and completely tighten it. Then remove the cap again and look at the fluid level on the dipstick.

The level should be at the FULL COLD mark. If necessary, add only enough fluid to bring the level up to the mark.

### What to Use

To determine what kind of fluid to use, see *Part D: Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-16*. Always use the proper fluid. Failure to use the proper fluid can cause leaks and damage hoses and seals.

## Windshield Washer Fluid

### What to Use

When you need windshield washer fluid, be sure to read the manufacturer's instructions before use. If you will be operating your vehicle in an area where the temperature may fall below freezing, use a fluid that has sufficient protection against freezing. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for reservoir location.

## Adding Washer Fluid

Your vehicle has a low washer fluid message that comes on when the washer fluid is low. The message is displayed for 15 seconds at the start of each ignition cycle. When the LOW WASHER FLUID message is displayed, you will need to add washer fluid to the windshield washer fluid reservoir.



The windshield washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment toward the front of the vehicle on the driver's side.

Open the cap with the washer symbol on it. Add washer fluid until the tank is full.

*Notice:*

- **When using concentrated washer fluid, follow the manufacturer's instructions for adding water.**
- **Don't mix water with ready-to-use washer fluid. Water can cause the solution to freeze and damage your washer fluid tank and other parts of the washer system. Also, water doesn't clean as well as washer fluid.**
- **Fill your washer fluid tank only three-quarters full when it's very cold. This allows for expansion if freezing occurs, which could damage the tank if it is completely full.**
- **Don't use engine coolant (antifreeze) in your windshield washer. It can damage your washer system and paint.**

# Brakes

## Brake Fluid

Your brake master cylinder reservoir is filled with DOT-3 brake fluid. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for the location of the reservoir.

There are only two reasons why the brake fluid level in the reservoir might go down. The first is that the brake fluid goes down to an acceptable level during normal brake lining wear. When new linings are put in, the fluid level goes back up. The other reason is that fluid is leaking out of the brake system. If it is, you should have your brake system fixed, since a leak means that sooner or later your brakes won't work well, or won't work at all.

So, it isn't a good idea to "top off" your brake fluid. Adding brake fluid won't correct a leak. If you add fluid when your linings are worn, then you'll have too much fluid when you get new brake linings. You should add (or remove) brake fluid, as necessary, only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system.

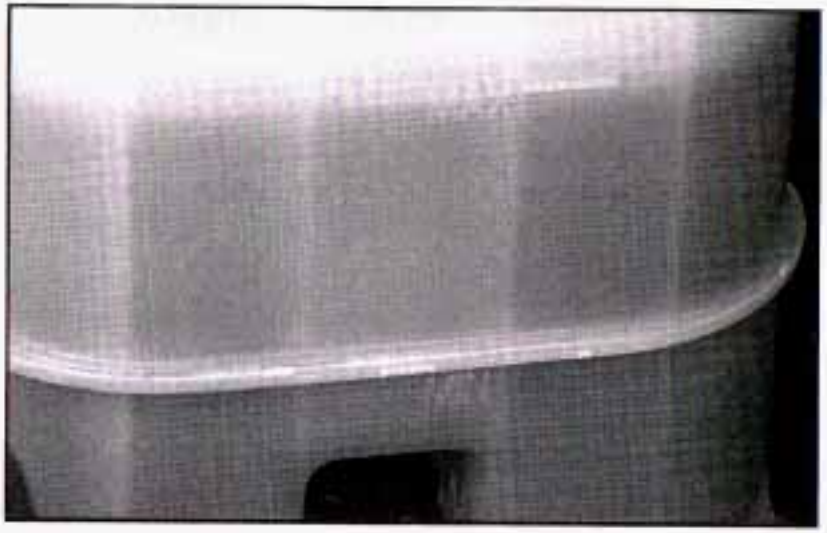
**⚠ CAUTION:**

**If you have too much brake fluid, it can spill on the engine. The fluid will burn if the engine is hot enough. You or others could be burned, and your vehicle could be damaged. Add brake fluid only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system. See "Checking Brake Fluid" in this section.**

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine when to check your brake fluid. See *Part C: Periodic Maintenance Inspections on page 6-14*.

## Checking Brake Fluid

You can check the brake fluid without taking off the cap.



Just look at the brake fluid reservoir. The fluid level should be above MIN. If it isn't have your brake system checked to see if there is a leak.

After work is done on the brake hydraulic system, make sure the level is above the MIN but not over the MAX mark.

## What to Add

When you do need brake fluid, use only DOT-3 brake fluid. Use new brake fluid from a sealed container only. See *Part D: Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-16.*

Always clean the brake fluid reservoir cap and the area around the cap before removing it. This will help keep dirt from entering the reservoir.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**With the wrong kind of fluid in your brake system, your brakes may not work well, or they may not even work at all. This could cause a crash. Always use the proper brake fluid.**

*Notice:*

- **Using the wrong fluid can badly damage brake system parts. For example, just a few drops of mineral-based oil, such as engine oil, in your brake system can damage brake system parts so badly that they'll have to be replaced. Don't let someone put in the wrong kind of fluid.**
- **If you spill brake fluid on your vehicle's painted surfaces, the paint finish can be damaged. Be careful not to spill brake fluid on your vehicle. If you do, wash it off immediately. See "Appearance Care" in the Index.**

## Brake Wear

Your vehicle has four-wheel disc brakes.

Disc brake pads have built-in wear indicators that make a high-pitched warning sound when the brake pads are worn and new pads are needed. The sound may come and go or be heard all the time your vehicle is moving (except when you are pushing on the brake pedal firmly).

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**The brake wear warning sound means that soon your brakes won't work well. That could lead to an accident. When you hear the brake wear warning sound, have your vehicle serviced.**

*Notice:* **Continuing to drive with worn-out brake pads could result in costly brake repair.**

Some driving conditions or climates may cause a brake squeal when the brakes are first applied or lightly applied. This does not mean something is wrong with your brakes.

Properly torqued wheel nuts are necessary to help prevent brake pulsation. When tires are rotated, inspect brake pads for wear and evenly tighten wheel nuts in the proper sequence to GM torque specifications.

Brake linings should always be replaced as complete axle sets.

See *Brake System Inspection on page 6-15.*

## Brake Pedal Travel

See your dealer if the brake pedal does not return to normal height, or if there is a rapid increase in pedal travel. This could be a sign of brake trouble.

## Brake Adjustment

Every time you make a brake stop, your disc brakes adjust for wear.

## Replacing Brake System Parts

The braking system on a vehicle is complex. Its many parts have to be of top quality and work well together if the vehicle is to have really good braking. Your vehicle was designed and tested with top-quality GM brake parts. When you replace parts of your braking system – for example, when your brake linings wear down and you need new ones put in – be sure you get new approved GM replacement parts. If you don't, your brakes may no longer work properly. For example, if someone puts in brake linings that are wrong for your vehicle, the balance between your front and rear brakes can change — for the worse. The braking performance you've come to expect can change in many other ways if someone puts in the wrong replacement brake parts.

## Battery

Your new vehicle comes with a maintenance free ACDelco® battery. When it's time for a new battery, get one that has the replacement number shown on the original battery's label. We recommend an ACDelco® battery. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for battery location.

***Warning:*** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

## Vehicle Storage

If you're not going to drive your vehicle for 25 days or more, remove the black, negative (–) cable from the battery. This will help keep your battery from running down.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Batteries have acid that can burn you and gas that can explode. You can be badly hurt if you aren't careful. See "Jump Starting" next for tips on working around a battery without getting hurt.**

Contact your dealer to learn how to prepare your vehicle for longer storage periods.

Also, for your audio system, see *Theft-Deterrent Feature on page 3-95.*

## Jump Starting

If your battery has run down, you may want to use another vehicle and some jumper cables to start your vehicle. But please use the following steps to do it safely.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Batteries can hurt you. They can be dangerous because:**

- **They contain acid that can burn you.**
- **They contain gas that can explode or ignite.**
- **They contain enough electricity to burn you.**

**If you don't follow these steps exactly, some or all of these things can hurt you.**

***Notice:*** **Ignoring these steps could result in costly damage to your vehicle that wouldn't be covered by your warranty.**

**Trying to start your vehicle by pushing or pulling it won't work, and it could damage your vehicle.**

1. Check the other vehicle. It must have a 12-volt battery with a negative ground system.

***Notice:*** **If the other system isn't a 12-volt system with a negative ground, both vehicles can be damaged.**

2. Get the vehicles close enough so the jumper cables can reach, but be sure the vehicles aren't touching each other. If they are, it could cause a ground connection you don't want. You wouldn't be able to start your vehicle, and the bad grounding could damage the electrical systems.

   To avoid the possibility of the vehicles rolling, set the parking brake firmly on both vehicles involved in the jump start procedure. Put an automatic transmission in PARK (P) or a manual transmission in NEUTRAL before setting the parking brake.

***Notice:*** **If you leave your radio on, it could be badly damaged. The repairs wouldn't be covered by your warranty.**

3. Turn off the ignition on both vehicles. Unplug unnecessary accessories plugged into the cigarette lighter or accessory power outlets. Turn off the radio and all lamps that aren't needed. This will avoid sparks and help save both batteries. And it could save your radio!

4. Open the hoods and locate the positive (+) and negative (–) terminal locations of the other vehicle.

   Your vehicle has a remote positive (+) jump starting terminal and a remote negative (–) jump starting terminal. You should always use these remote terminals instead of the terminals on the battery.



The remote positive (+) terminal is located under a red plastic cover near the engine accessory drive bracket. To access the remote positive (+) terminal, open the red plastic cover.



The remote negative (–) terminal is located on the engine accessory drive bracket and is marked GND.

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for more information on location.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Using a match near a battery can cause battery gas to explode. People have been hurt doing this, and some have been blinded. Use a flashlight if you need more light.**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**Be sure the battery has enough water. You don't need to add water to the ACDelco® battery installed in your new vehicle. But if a battery has filler caps, be sure the right amount of fluid is there. If it is low, add water to take care of that first. If you don't, explosive gas could be present.**

**Battery fluid contains acid that can burn you. Don't get it on you. If you accidentally get it in your eyes or on your skin, flush the place with water and get medical help immediately.**

5. Check that the jumper cables don't have loose or missing insulation. If they do, you could get a shock. The vehicles could be damaged too.

   Before you connect the cables, here are some basic things you should know. Positive (+) will go to positive (+) or to a remote positive terminal (+) if the vehicle has one. Negative (–) will go to a heavy, unpainted metal engine part or to a remote negative (–) terminal, if the vehicle has one.

   Don't connect positive (+) to negative (–) or you'll get a short that would damage the battery and maybe other parts too.

## ⚠ CAUTION:

**Fans or other moving engine parts can injure you badly. Keep your hands away from moving parts once the engine is running.**



6. Connect the red positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the dead battery. Use a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.



7. Don't let the other end touch metal. Connect it to the positive (+) terminal of the good battery. Use a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.



8. Now connect the black negative (–) cable to the negative (–) terminal of the good battery. Use a remote negative (–) terminal if the vehicle has one. Your vehicle's remote negative (–) terminal is marked GND.

Don't let the other end touch anything until the next step. The other end of the negative (–) cable doesn't go to the dead battery. It goes to a heavy, unpainted metal engine part or to a remote negative (–) terminal on the vehicle with the dead battery.

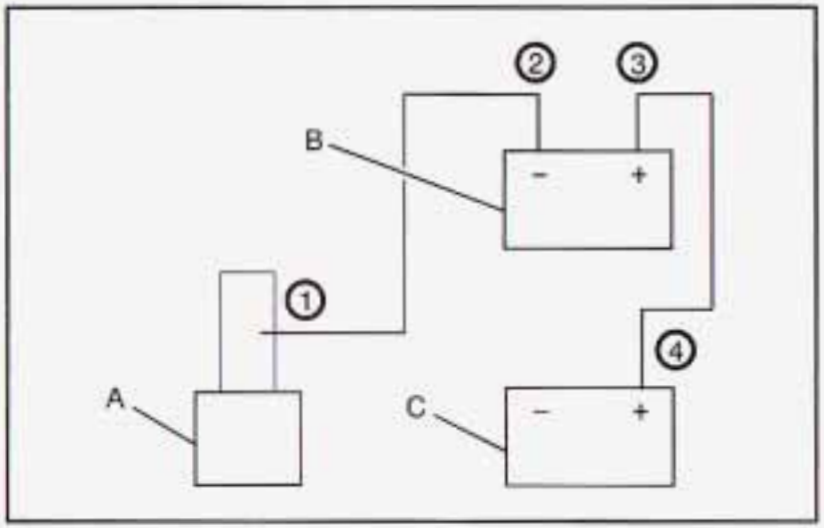


9. Connect the other end of the negative (–) cable at least 18 inches (45 cm) away from the dead battery, but not near engine parts that move.

The electrical connection is just as good there, and the chance of sparks getting back to the battery is much less.

10. Now start the vehicle with the good battery and run the engine for awhile.
11. Try to start the vehicle that had the dead battery. If it won't start after a few tries, it probably needs service.

***Notice:*** **Damage to your vehicle may result from electrical shorting if jumper cables are removed incorrectly. To prevent electrical shorting, take care that the cables don't touch each other or any other metal. The repairs wouldn't be covered by your warranty.**




**Jumper Cable Removal**

A. Heavy, Unpainted Metal Engine Part or Remote Negative (–) Terminal.

B. Good Battery or Remote Positive (+) and Negative (–) Terminals.

C. Dead Battery or Remote Positive (+) Terminal.

To disconnect the jumper cables from both vehicles do the following:

1. Disconnect the black negative (–) cable from the vehicle that had the dead battery.
2. Disconnect the black negative (–) cable from the vehicle with the good battery.
3. Disconnect the red positive (+) cable from the vehicle with the good battery.
4. Disconnect the red positive (+) cable from the other vehicle.
5. Return the positive (+) remote terminal cover to its original position.

# All-Wheel Drive

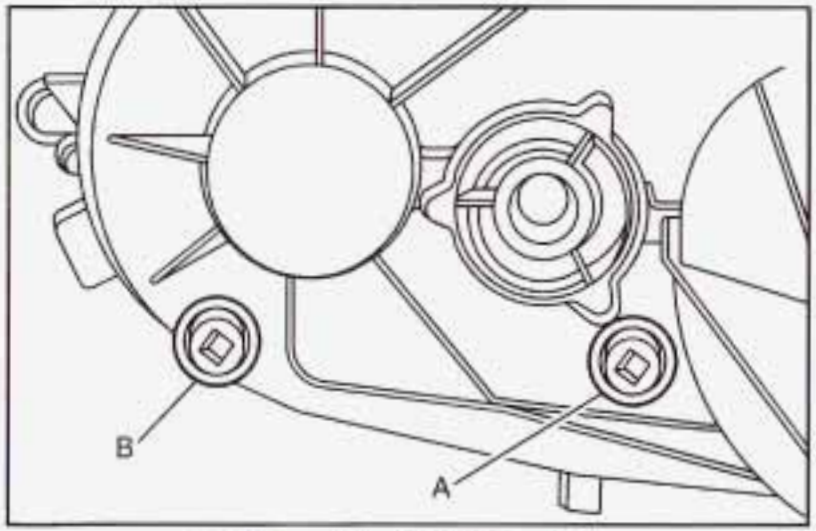
Lubricant checks in this section also apply to these vehicles. However, there are two additional systems that need lubrication.

## Transfer Case

### When to Check Lubricant

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine how often to check the lubricant. See *Part C: Periodic Maintenance Inspections on page 6-14.*

### How to Check Lubricant




**(A) Filler Plug (B) Drain Plug**

To get an accurate reading, the vehicle should be on a level surface.

If the level is below the bottom of the filler plug hole, you'll need to add some lubricant. Add enough lubricant to raise the level to the bottom of the filler plug hole. Use care not to overtighten the plug.

### What to Use

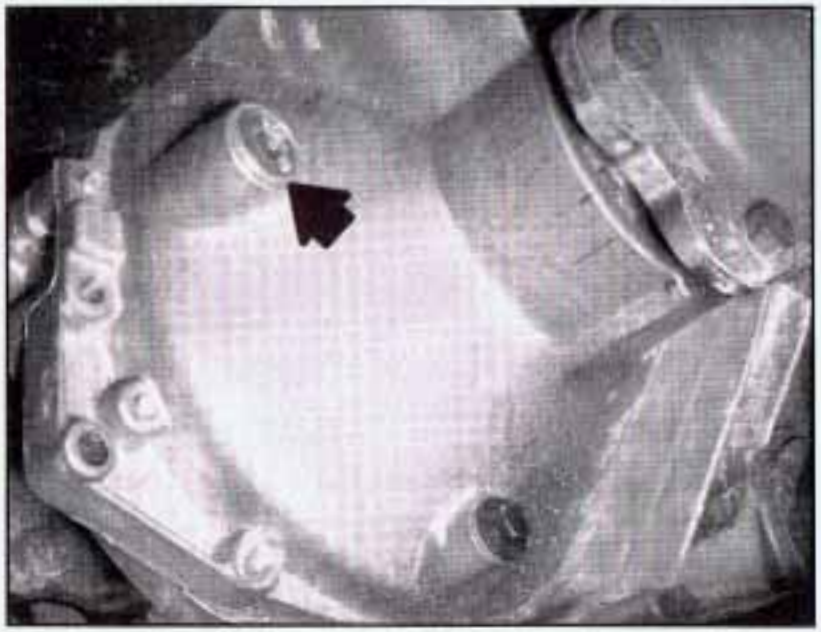
Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine what kind of lubricant to use. See *Part D: Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-16.*

## Front Axle

### When to Check and Change Lubricant

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine how often to check the lubricant and when to change it. See *Part A: Scheduled Maintenance Services on page 6-4.*

## How to Check Lubricant



To get an accurate reading, the vehicle should be on a level surface.

If the level is below the bottom of the filler plug hole, you may need to add some lubricant.

When the differential is cold, add enough lubricant to raise the level to 1/2 inch (12 mm) below the filler plug hole.

When the differential is at operating temperature (warm), add enough lubricant to raise the level to the bottom of the filler plug hole.

## What to Use

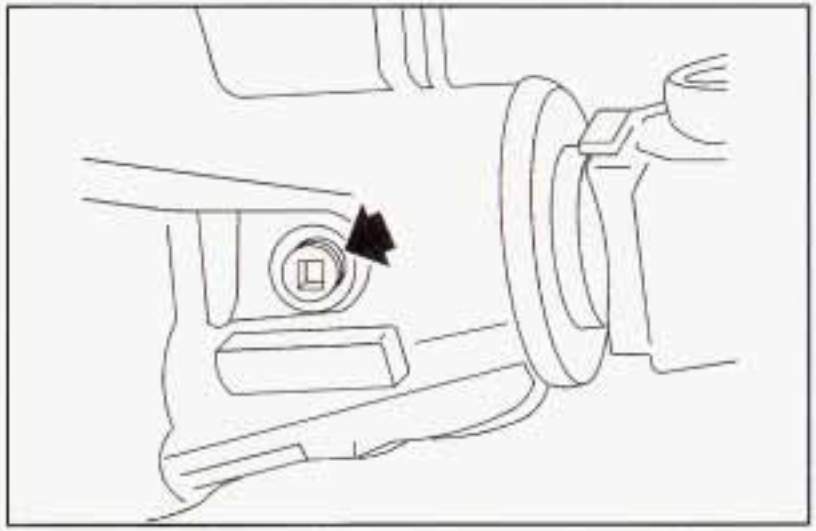
Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine what kind of lubricant to use. See *Part D: Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-16.*

# Rear Axle

## When to Check Lubricant

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine how often to check the lubricant. See *Part A: Scheduled Maintenance Services on page 6-4.*

## How to Check Lubricant



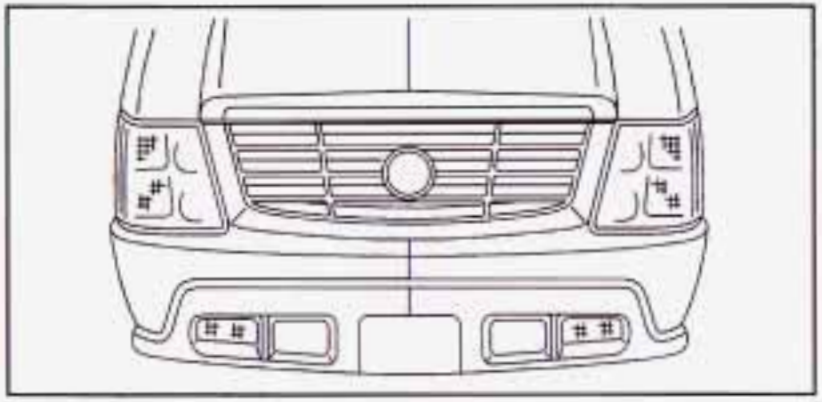
To get an accurate reading, the vehicle should be on a level surface.

The proper level is from 5/8 inch to 1 5/8 inch (15 mm to 40 mm) below the bottom of the filler plug hole. Add only enough fluid to reach the proper level.

## What to Use

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine what kind of lubricant to use. See *Part D: Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-16.*

# Headlamp Aiming



Your vehicle has a visual optical headlamp aiming system equipped with horizontal aim indicators. The aim has been preset at the factory and should need no further adjustment. This is true even though your horizontal aim indicators may not fall exactly on the "0" (zero) marks on their scales.

If your vehicle is damaged in an accident, the headlamp aim may be affected. Aim adjustment to the low beam may be necessary if it is difficult to see lane markers (for horizontal aim), or if oncoming drivers flash their high beams at you (for vertical aim).

If you believe your headlamps need to be re-aimed, we recommend that you take your vehicle to your dealer for service. However, it is possible for you to re-aim your headlamps as described in the following procedure.

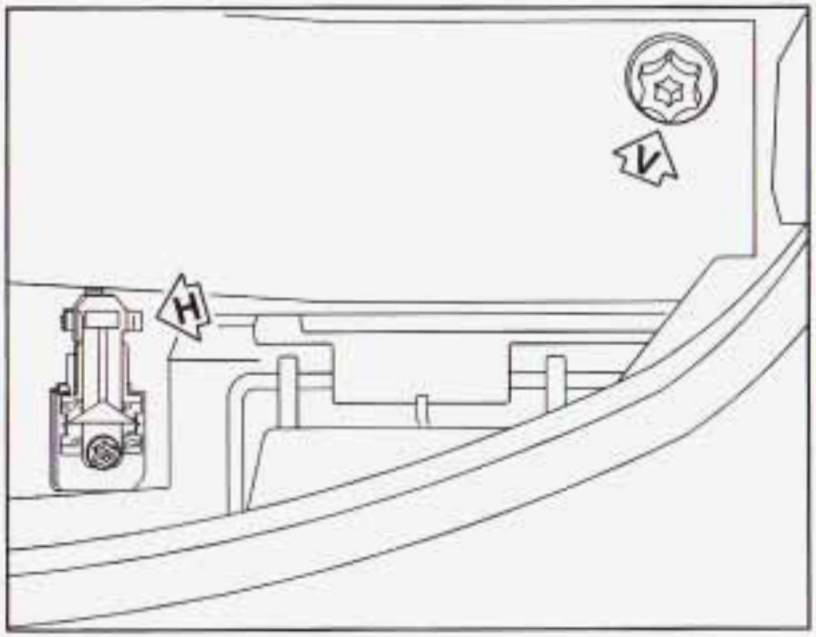
***Notice:*** **To make sure your headlamps are aimed properly, read all the instructions before beginning. Failure to follow these instructions could cause damage to headlamp parts.**

The vehicle should be properly prepared as follows:

- The vehicle should be placed so the headlamps are 25 ft. (7.6 m) from a light colored wall or other flat surface.
- The vehicle must have all four tires on a perfectly level surface which is level all the way to the wall or other flat surface.
- The vehicle should be placed so it is perpendicular to the wall or other flat surface.
- The vehicle should not have any snow, ice or mud attached to it.
- The vehicle should be fully assembled and all other work stopped while headlamp aiming is being done.
- The vehicle should be normally loaded with a full tank of fuel and one person or 160 lbs. (75 kg) on the driver's seat.
- Tires should be properly inflated.
- Start the vehicle and rock it to level the suspension.

Headlamp aiming is done with the vehicle low beam lamps. The high beam lamps will be correctly aimed if the low beam lamps are aimed properly.

The headlamp aiming devices are under the hood near the headlamps.

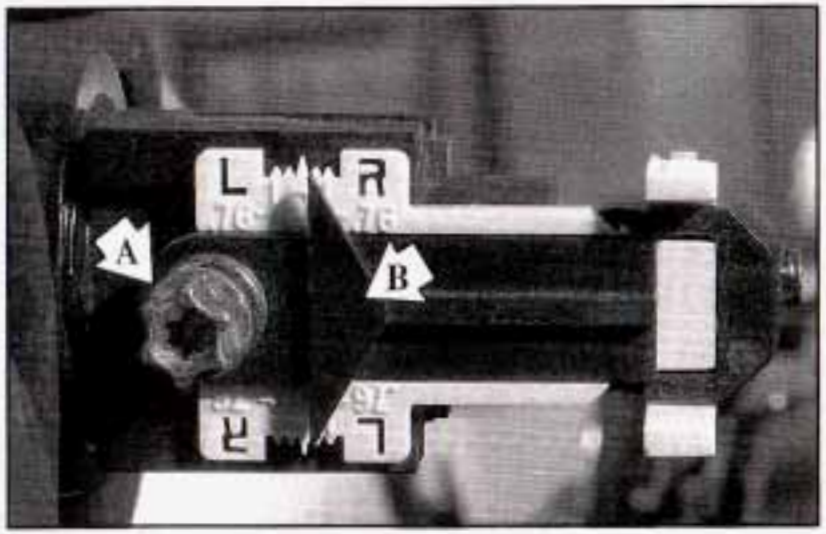



If you believe your headlamps need horizontal (H)(left/right) adjustment, follow the horizontal aiming procedure. If you believe your headlamps need only vertical (V) (up/down) adjustment, follow only the vertical aiming procedure.

Adjustment screws can be turned with an E8 Torx® socket or T15 Torx® screwdriver.

## Headlamp Horizontal Aiming

Turn the horizontal aiming screw (A) until the indicator (B) is lined up with zero.

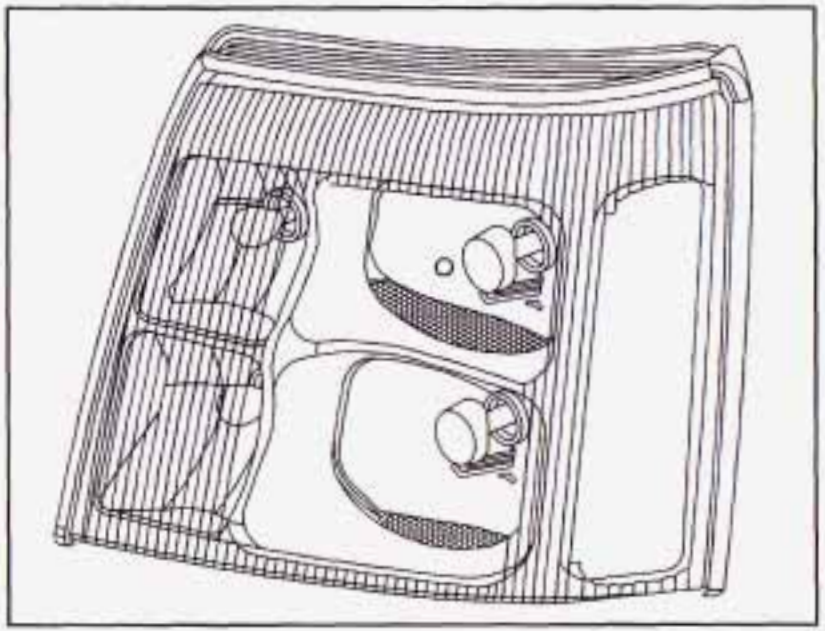



Once the horizontal aim is adjusted, then adjust the vertical aim.

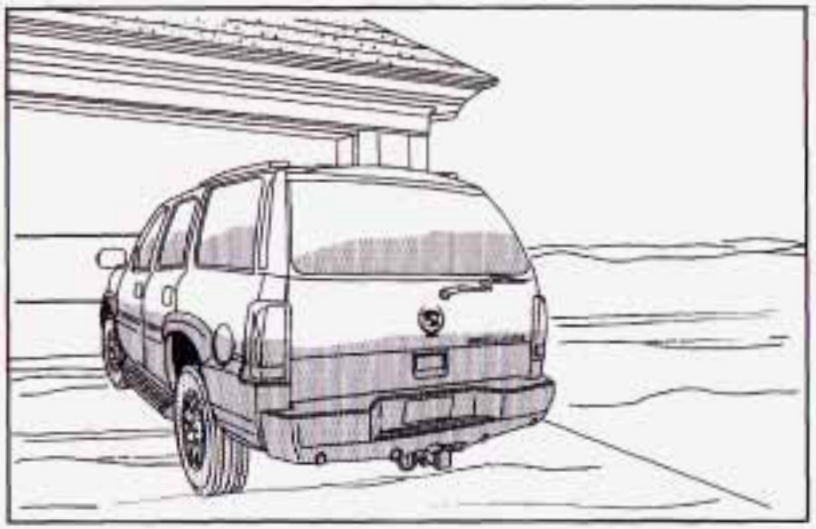
## Headlamp Vertical Aiming

***Notice:*** **Horizontal aiming must be performed before making any adjustments to the vertical aim. Adjusting the vertical aim first will result in an incorrect headlamp aim.**

1. Find the aim dot on the lens of the low beam lamps.

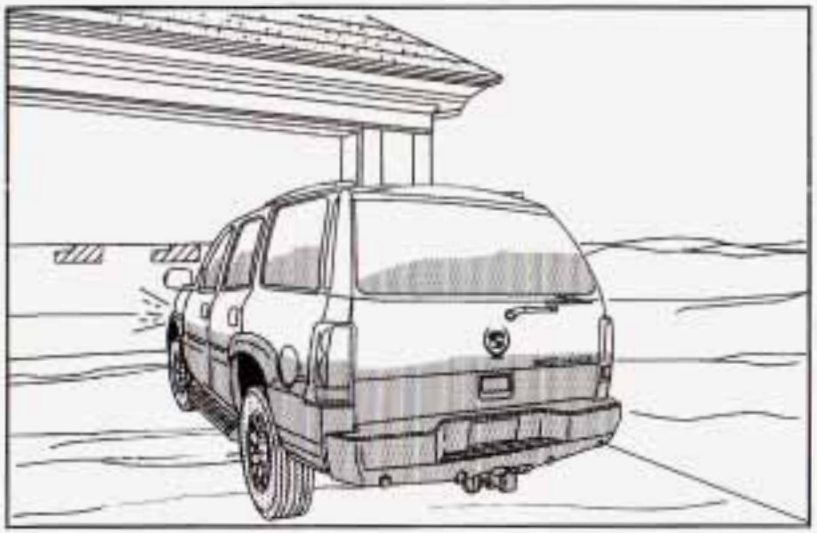


2. Measure the distance from the ground to the aim dot on each low beam lamp. Record this distance.
3. At the wall or other flat surface, measure from the ground upward the recorded distance from Step 2 and draw or tape a horizontal line the width of the vehicle.



4. Turn on the low-beam headlamps and place a piece of cardboard or equivalent in front of the headlamp not being aimed. This should allow only the beam of light from the headlamp being aimed to be seen on the flat surface.

***Notice:*** **Do not cover a headlamp to improve beam cut-off when aiming. Covering a headlamp may cause excessive heat build-up which may cause damage to the headlamp.**



5. Turn the vertical aiming screw (V) until the headlamp beam is aimed to the horizontal tape line. The top edge of the cut-off should be positioned at the bottom edge of the horizontal tape line.
6. Repeat Steps 4 and 5 for the opposite headlamp.

# Bulb Replacement

See *Replacement Bulbs on page 5-63* for the proper type of bulbs to use.

For any bulb changing procedure not listed in this section, contact your dealer.

## High Intensity Discharge (HID) Lighting

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**The low beam high intensity discharge lighting system operates at a very high voltage. If you try to service any of the system components, you could be seriously injured. Have your dealer or a qualified technician service them.**

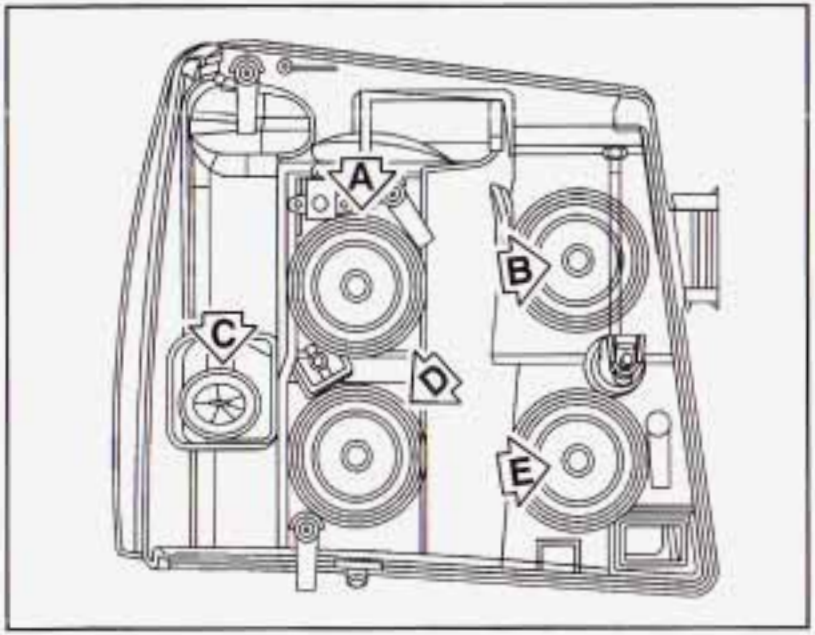
After your vehicle's HID headlamp bulb has been replaced, you may notice that the beam is a slightly different shade than it was originally. This is normal.

## Halogen Bulbs

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Halogen bulbs have pressurized gas inside and can burst if you drop or scratch the bulb. You or others could be injured. Be sure to read and follow the instructions on the bulb package.**

## Headlamps




A. Low-Beam Headlamp (HID)
B. Daytime Running Lamp
C. Sidemarker Lamp
D. High-Beam Headlamp
E. Front Parking and Turn Signal Lamp

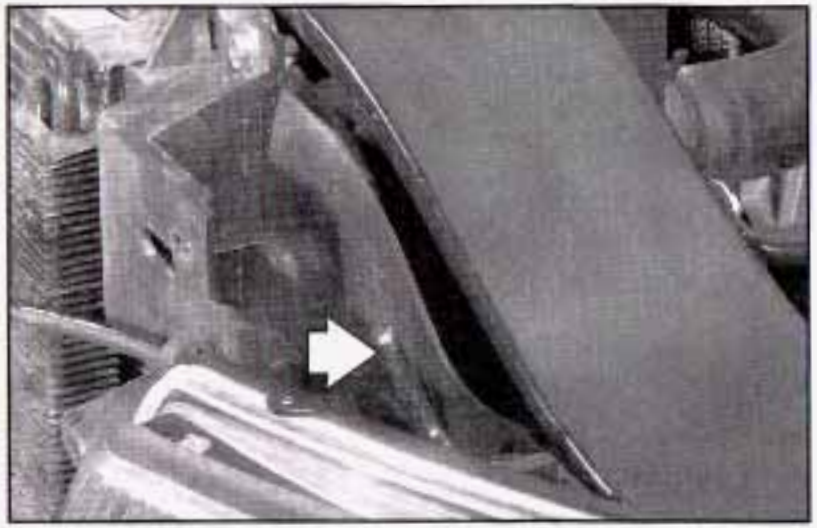
1. Open the hood of the vehicle.



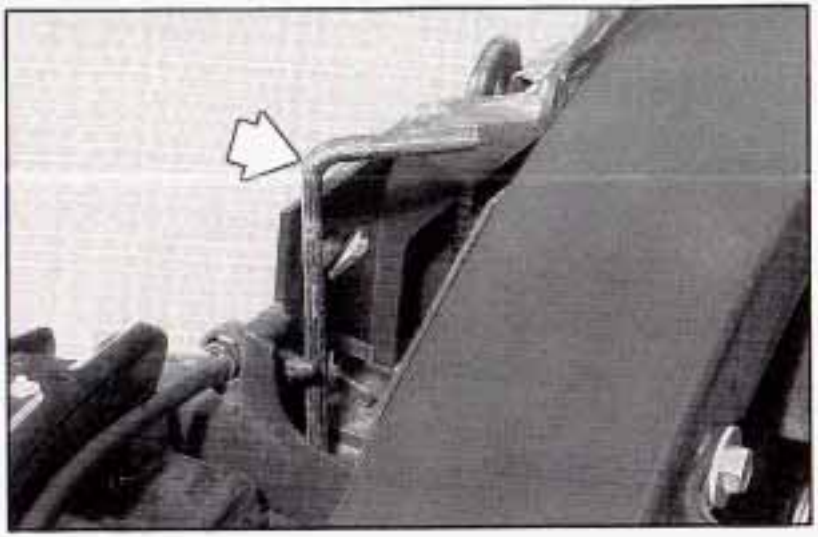
2. Pry up the eight fastener plugs on the radiator cover and pull the fasteners out.
3. Lift off the radiator cover.



4. Pull the top left or right corner of the grill out so the clips release. This will give you the needed clearance for removing the headlamp assembly.



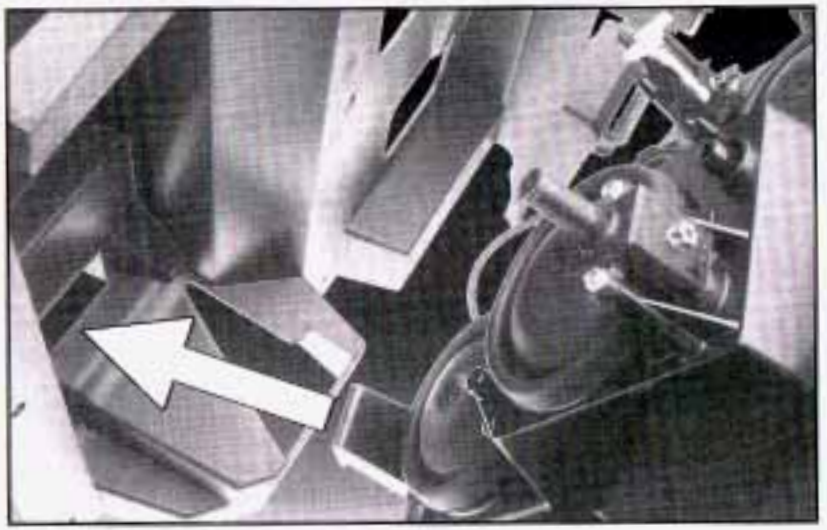
5. Remove the horizontal pin from the headlamp assembly by lifting the end of the pin upward until it unsnaps and then pulling it toward the center of the vehicle.



6. Remove the vertical pin from the headlamp assembly by turning the end of the pin away from you until it unsnaps and then pulling it upward.
7. Remove the headlamp assembly by lifting it up and then pulling it out and away from the front of the vehicle.
8. Disconnect the electrical connector from the lower corner of the headlamp assembly. This will give you better access to the headlamp assembly.

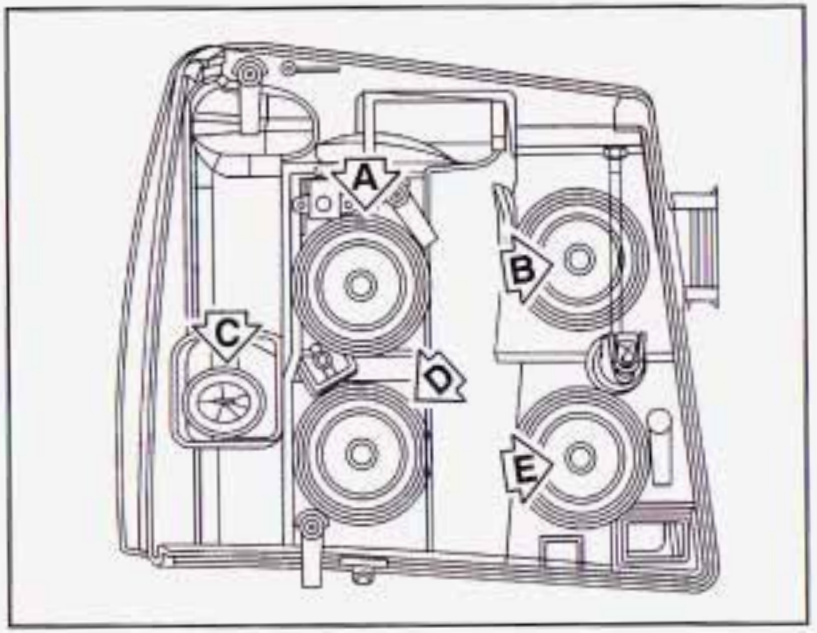


9. Remove the rubber, circular-shaped bulb cap of the affected bulb from the headlamp assembly.
10. Turn the bulb connector counterclockwise and remove it with the old bulb from the headlamp assembly.
11. Unplug the electrical connector from the old bulb.
12. Plug in the electrical connector to the new bulb, using care not to touch the bulb with your hands, fingers or anything damp or oily.
13. Place the connector with the new bulb into the headlamp assembly and turn it clockwise until it is tight.
14. Reinstall the rubber, circular-shaped bulb cap onto the headlamp assembly.
15. Reconnect the electrical connector to the lower corner of the headlamp assembly.



16. Place the headlamp assembly back into the vehicle, being sure to align the lower locator tab with the pocket on the vehicle (see arrow). Push the headlamp assembly straight in and then down into position.
17. Install the two pins and snap the ends into their locked position.
18. Reinstall the grille and radiator cover by reversing the removal procedure described previously.

## Front Turn Signal, Sidemarker and Daytime Running Lamps



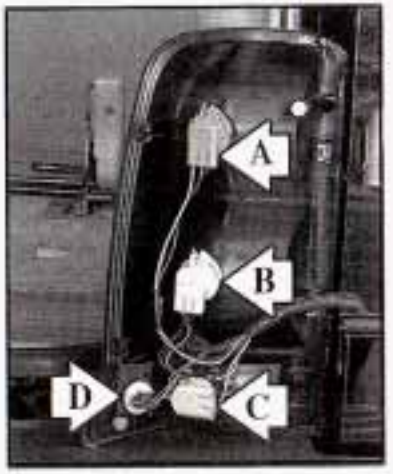

A. Low-Beam Headlamp
B. Daytime Running Lamp
C. Sidemarker Lamp
D. High-Beam Headlamp
E. Front Turn Signal Lamp

1. Remove the headlamp assembly as described previously.
2. Remove the rubber, circular-shaped bulb cap for the affected bulb from the headlamp assembly.
3. Press the locking release lever, turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove it from the headlamp assembly. (There is no lock for the sidemarker lamp.)
4. Remove the old bulb from the bulb socket.
5. Put the new bulb into the bulb socket.
6. Put the bulb socket into the turn signal housing and turn it clockwise until it locks. (There is no lock for the sidemarker lamp.)
7. Reinstall the rubber, circular-shaped bulb cap to the headlamp assembly.
8. Put the headlamp assembly back into the vehicle by reversing the previous mentioned steps.

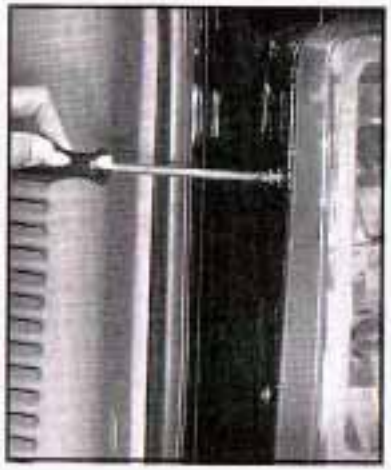
## Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL)

It is recommended that this component be replaced as a unit.

## Taillamps




A. Turn Signal-Taillamp
B. Stop-Taillamp
C. Back-up Lamp
D. Sidemarker Lamp



1. Use a screwdriver to remove the two screws from the lamp assembly.
2. Remove the lamp assembly.
3. Press the release tab and turn the bulb socket counterclockwise to remove it from the taillamp housing. (The sidemarker lamp does not have a release tab.)



4. Pull the bulb straight out from the socket.
5. Press a new bulb into the socket, insert it into the taillamp housing and turn the socket clockwise into the taillamp housing until it clicks. The sidemarker lamp does not have a release tab and therefore will not click when it is installed.
6. Reinstall the rear lamp assembly and tighten the screws.

## Replacement Bulbs

| Exterior Lamp | Bulb Number |
|---|---|
| Low-Beam Headlamps (HID) | * |
| High-Beam Headlamps | 9005 or 9005 LL |
| Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) | 4157K (Preferred) or 3157KX |
| Front Marker Lamp | 194 |
| Front Parking and Turn Lamp | 3157AK |
| Stop Lamp/Taillamp | 3157K |
| Side Marker Lamp | 194 |
| Rear Turn Lamp | 3157K |
| Back-up Lamp | 3157K |

* For replacement bulbs not listed here, please consult your dealer.

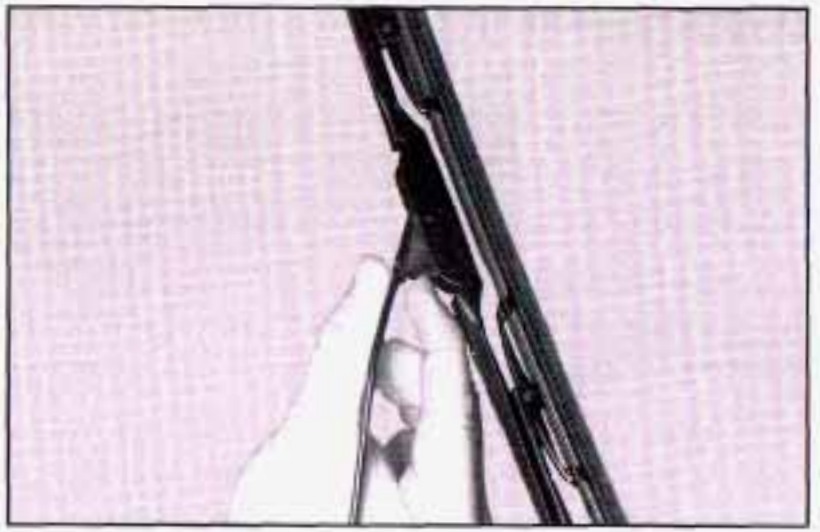
# Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement

Windshield wiper blades should be inspected at least twice a year for wear and cracking. See *Wiper Blade Check* under *At Least Twice a Year on page 6-11* for more information.

Replacement blades come in different types and are removed in different ways. For proper type and length, see *Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts on page 5-111*. Here's how to remove the shephard's hook type.

To replace the windshield wiper blade assembly do the following:

1. Lift the wiper arm and turn the blade until it is facing away from the windshield.



2. Push the release lever and slide the wiper assembly toward the driver's side of the vehicle.
3. Install a new blade by reversing Steps 1 and 2.

# Tires

Your new vehicle comes with high-quality tires made by a leading tire manufacturer. If you ever have questions about your tire warranty and where to obtain service, see your Cadillac Warranty booklet for details.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Poorly maintained and improperly used tires are dangerous.**

- **Overloading your tires can cause overheating as a result of too much friction. You could have an air-out and a serious accident. See "Loading Your Vehicle" in the Index.**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

- **Underinflated tires pose the same danger as overloaded tires. The resulting accident could cause serious injury. Check all tires frequently to maintain the recommended pressure. Tire pressure should be checked when your tires are cold.**
- **Overinflated tires are more likely to be cut, punctured or broken by a sudden impact — such as when you hit a pothole. Keep tires at the recommended pressure.**
- **Worn, old tires can cause accidents. If your tread is badly worn, or if your tires have been damaged, replace them.**

## Inflation -- Tire Pressure

The Certification/Tire label, which is on the rear edge of the driver's door, shows the correct inflation pressures for your tires when they're cold. "Cold" means your vehicle has been sitting for at least three hours or driven no more than 1 mile (1.6 km).

***Notice:*** **Don't let anyone tell you that underinflation or overinflation is all right. It's not. If your tires don't have enough air (underinflation), you can get the following:**

- **Too much flexing**
- **Too much heat**
- **Tire overloading**
- **Bad wear**
- **Bad handling**
- **Bad fuel economy**

**If your tires have too much air (overinflation), you can get the following:**

- **Unusual wear**
- **Bad handling**
- **Rough ride**
- **Needless damage from road hazards**

### When to Check

Check your tires once a month or more.

Also, check the tire pressure of the spare tire.

### How to Check

Use a good quality pocket-type gage to check tire pressure. You can't tell if your tires are properly inflated simply by looking at them. Radial tires may look properly inflated even when they're underinflated.

Be sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. They help prevent leaks by keeping out dirt and moisture.

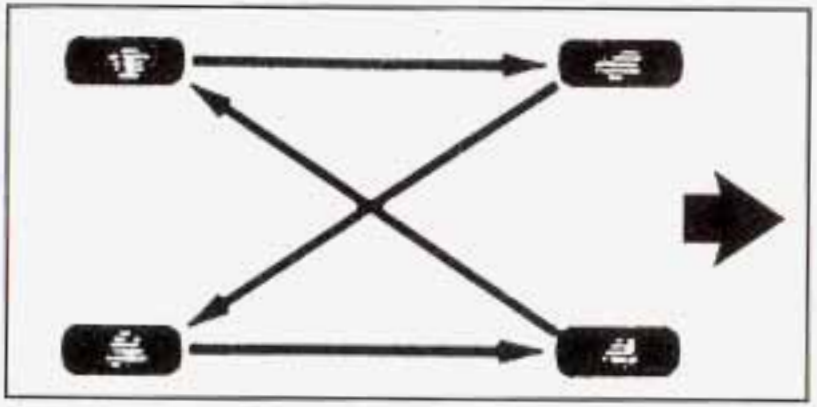
## Tire Inspection and Rotation

Tires should be rotated every 7,500 miles (12,500 km).

Any time you notice unusual wear, rotate your tires as soon as possible and check wheel alignment. Also check for damaged tires or wheels. See *When It Is Time for New Tires on page 5-68* and *Wheel Replacement on page 5-72* for more information.

Make sure the spare tire is stored securely. Push, pull, and then try to rotate or turn the tire. If it moves, use the wheel wrench and jack handle extensions to tighten the cable. See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 5-74.*

The purpose of regular rotation is to achieve more uniform wear for all tires on the vehicle. The first rotation is the most important. See "Part A: Scheduled Maintenance Services," in Section 6, for scheduled rotation intervals.



When rotating your tires, always use the correct rotation pattern shown here.

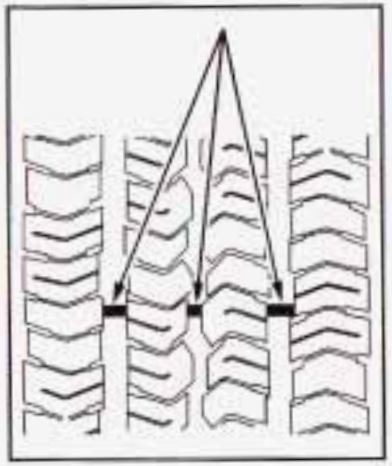
Don't include the spare tire in your tire rotation.

After the tires have been rotated, adjust the front and rear inflation pressures as shown on the Certification/Tire label. Make certain that all wheel nuts are properly tightened. See "Wheel Nut Torque" under *Capacities and Specifications on page 5-109.*

## ⚠ CAUTION:

**Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make wheel nuts become loose after a time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When you change a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, you can use a cloth or a paper towel to do this; but be sure to use a scraper or wire brush later, if you need to, to get all the rust or dirt off. See "Changing a Flat Tire" in the Index.**

## When It Is Time for New Tires



One way to tell when it's time for new tires is to check the treadwear indicators, which will appear when your tires have only 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) or less of tread remaining. Some commercial truck tires may not have treadwear indicators.

You need a new tire if any of the following statements are true:

- You can see the indicators at three or more places around the tire.
- You can see cord or fabric showing through the tire's rubber.
- The tread or sidewall is cracked, cut or snagged deep enough to show cord or fabric.
- The tire has a bump, bulge or split.
- The tire has a puncture, cut or other damage that can't be repaired well because of the size or location of the damage.

## Buying New Tires

To find out what kind and size of tires you need, look at the Certification/Tire label.

The tires installed on your vehicle when it was new had a Tire Performance Criteria Specifications (TPC Spec) number on each tire's sidewall. When you get new tires, get ones with that same TPC Spec number. That way your vehicle will continue to have tires that are designed to give proper endurance, handling, speed rating, traction, ride and other things during normal service on your vehicle. If your tires have an all-season tread design, the TPC number will be followed by an "MS" (for mud and snow).

If you ever replace your tires with those not having a TPC Spec number, make sure they are the same size, load range, speed rating and construction type (bias, bias-belted or radial) as your original tires.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Mixing tires could cause you to lose control while driving. If you mix tires of different sizes or types (radial and bias-belted tires), the**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

vehicle may not handle properly, and you could have a crash. Using tires of different sizes may also cause damage to your vehicle. Be sure to use the same size and type tires on all wheels. If your vehicle has 17 inch road tires (those originally installed on your vehicle) it is all right to drive with the 16 inch spare tire that came with your vehicle. When new, your vehicle included a spare tire and wheel assembly with the same overall diameter as your vehicle's road tires and wheels. Because this spare tire was developed for use on your vehicle, it will not affect vehicle handling or cause damage to your vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

If you use bias-ply tires on your vehicle, the wheel rim flanges could develop cracks after many miles of driving. A tire and/or wheel could fail suddenly, causing a crash. Use only radial-ply tires with the wheels on your vehicle.

## Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

### Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A

The following information relates to the system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, which grades tires by treadwear, traction and temperature performance. (This applies only to vehicles sold in the United States.) The grades are molded on the sidewalls of most passenger car tires. The Uniform Tire Quality Grading system does not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches (25 to 30 cm), or to some limited-production tires.

While the tires available on General Motors passenger cars and light trucks may vary with respect to these grades, they must also conform to federal safety requirements and additional General Motors Tire Performance Criteria (TPC) standards.

### Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half (1.5) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

### Traction – AA, A, B, C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance. Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

### Temperature – A, B, C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

## Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance

The wheels on your vehicle were aligned and balanced carefully at the factory to give you the longest tire life and best overall performance.

Scheduled wheel alignment and wheel balancing are not needed. However, if you notice unusual tire wear or your vehicle pulling one way or the other, the alignment may need to be reset. If you notice your vehicle vibrating when driving on a smooth road, your wheels may need to be rebalanced.

## Wheel Replacement

Replace any wheel that is bent, cracked, or badly rusted or corroded. If wheel nuts keep coming loose, the wheel, wheel bolts and wheel nuts should be replaced. If the wheel leaks air, replace it (except some aluminum wheels, which can sometimes be repaired). See your dealer if any of these conditions exist.

Your dealer will know the kind of wheel you need.

Each new wheel should have the same load-carrying capacity, diameter, width, offset and be mounted the same way as the one it replaces.

If you need to replace any of your wheels, wheel bolts or wheel nuts, replace them only with new GM original equipment parts. This way, you will be sure to have the right wheel, wheel bolts and wheel nuts for your vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Using the wrong replacement wheels, wheel bolts or wheel nuts on your vehicle can be dangerous. It could affect the braking and handling of your vehicle, make your tires lose air and make you lose control. You could have a collision in which you or others could be injured. Always use the correct wheel, wheel bolts and wheel nuts for replacement.**

***Notice:*** **The wrong wheel can also cause problems with bearing life, brake cooling, speedometer or odometer calibration, headlamp aim, bumper height, vehicle ground clearance and tire clearance to the body and chassis.**

See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 5-74* for more information.

## Used Replacement Wheels

**⚠ CAUTION:**

Putting a used wheel on your vehicle is dangerous. You can't know how it's been used or how far it's been driven. It could fail suddenly and cause a crash. If you have to replace a wheel, use a new GM original equipment wheel.

## Tire Chains

**⚠ CAUTION:**

Don't use tire chains. There's not enough clearance. Tire chains used on a vehicle without the proper amount of clearance can cause damage to the brakes, suspension or other vehicle parts. The area damaged by the tire

CAUTION: (Continued)

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

chains could cause you to lose control of your vehicle and you or others may be injured in a crash. Use another type of traction device only if its manufacturer recommends it for use on your vehicle and tire size combination and road conditions. Follow that manufacturer's instructions. To help avoid damage to your vehicle, drive slowly, readjust or remove the device if it's contacting your vehicle, and don't spin your wheels. If you do find traction devices that will fit, install them on the rear tires.

## If a Tire Goes Flat

It's unusual for a tire to "blowout" while you're driving, especially if you maintain your tires properly. If air goes out of a tire, it's much more likely to leak out slowly. But if you should ever have a "blowout", here are a few tips about what to expect and what to do:

If a front tire fails, the flat tire will create a drag that pulls the vehicle toward that side. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and grip the steering wheel firmly. Steer to maintain lane position, and then gently brake to a stop well out of the traffic lane.

A rear blowout, particularly on a curve, acts much like a skid and may require the same correction you'd use in a skid. In any rear blowout, remove your foot from the accelerator pedal. Get the vehicle under control by steering the way you want the vehicle to go. It may be very bumpy and noisy, but you can still steer. Gently brake to a stop — well off the road if possible.

If a tire goes flat, the next part shows how to use your jacking equipment to change a flat tire safely.

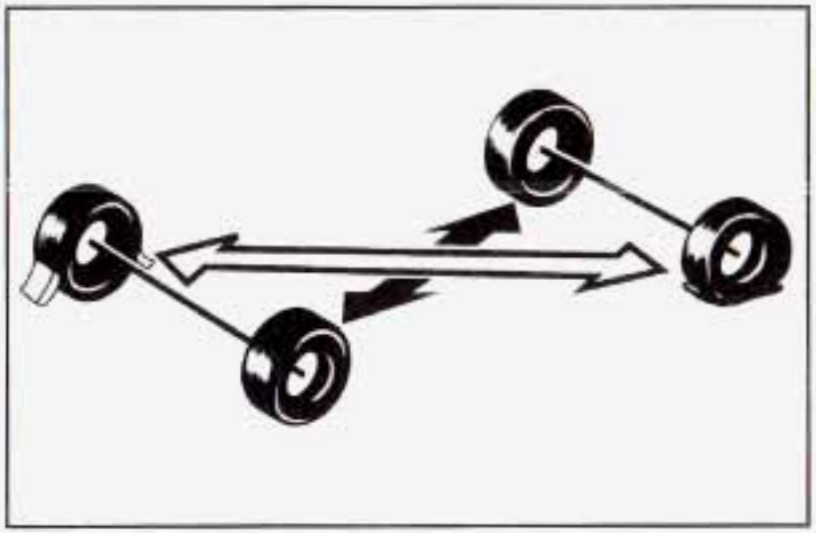
## Changing a Flat Tire

If a tire goes flat, avoid further tire and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place. Turn on your hazard warning flashers.

### ⚠ CAUTION:

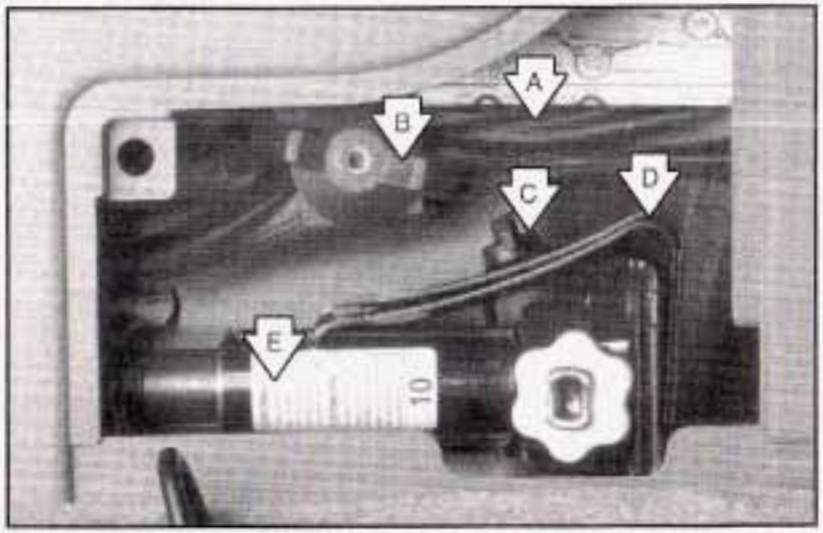
**Changing a tire can cause an injury. The vehicle can slip off the jack and roll over you or other people. You and they could be badly injured. Find a level place to change your tire. To help prevent the vehicle from moving:**

1. **Set the parking brake firmly.**
2. **Put the shift lever in PARK (P).**
3. **Turn off the engine.**
4. **Put the wheel blocks at the front and rear of the tire farthest away from the one being changed. That would be the tire on the other side of the vehicle, at the opposite end.**



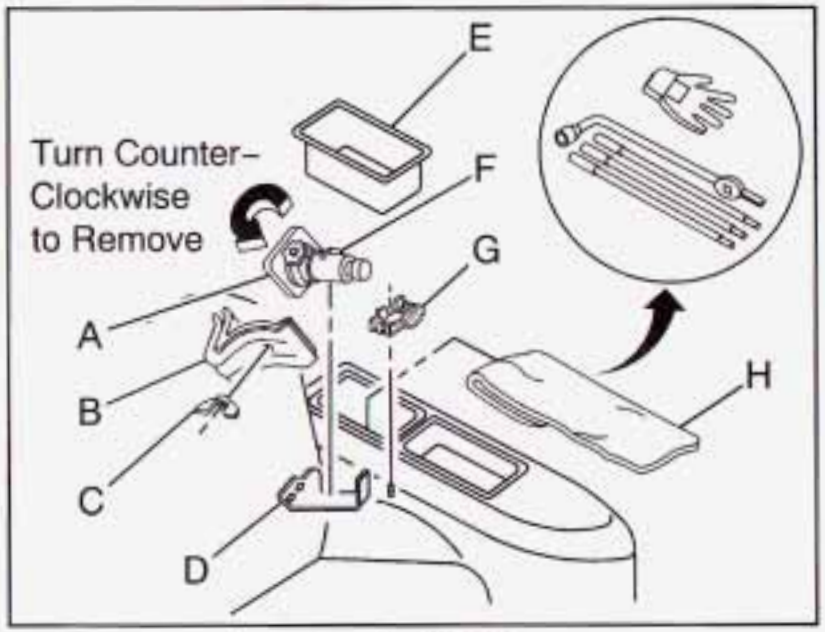
The following steps will tell you how to use the jack and change a tire.

## Removing the Spare Tire and Tools




**Escalade (Rear Access Panel)**

A. Tool Kit with Jack Tools and Gloves
B. Retaining Bracket and Wing Nut
C. Wing Nut Holding Tire Blocks
D. Tire Blocks
E. Bottle Jack




**Escalade ESV**

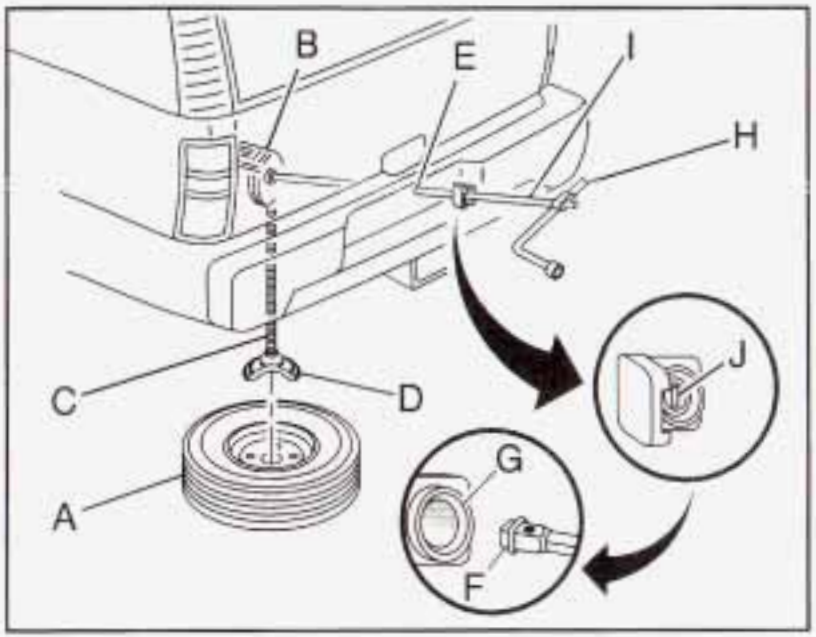
A. Bottle Jack
B. Wheel Blocks
C. Wing Nut Holding Tire Blocks
D. Mounting Bracket
E. Removable Tray
F. Retaining Hook
G. Retaining Bracket and Wing Nut
H. Tool Kit with Jack Tools and Gloves

For Escalade, the equipment is located behind the left trim panel in the rear of the vehicle. Unlatch the release lever to open the trim panel door. Skip the first step and follow the last three.

For Escalade ESV, the equipment you'll need is under the storage tray in the left trim panel.

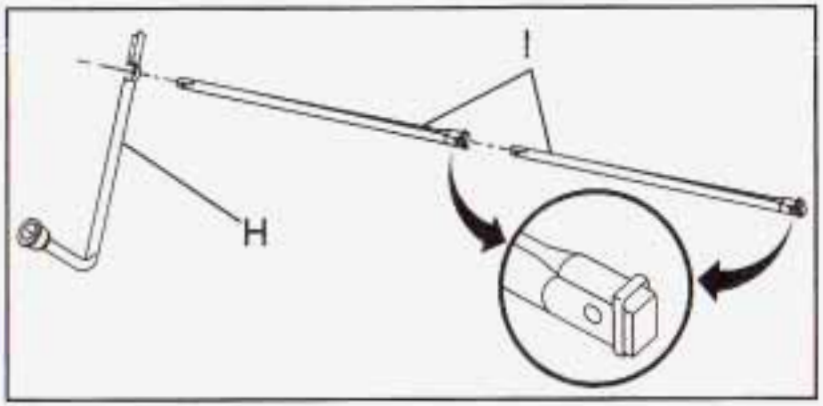
1. Remove the tray to access the tools.
2. There is a wing nut used to retain the tool kit. To remove it, turn the wing nut counterclockwise.
3. To release the bottle jack from its holder, turn the knob on the bottle jack counterclockwise to lower the jack head.
4. The wheel blocks and the wheel block retainer can be removed by turning the wing nut counterclockwise.

You'll use the jack handle extensions and the wheel wrench to remove the underbody-mounted spare tire.

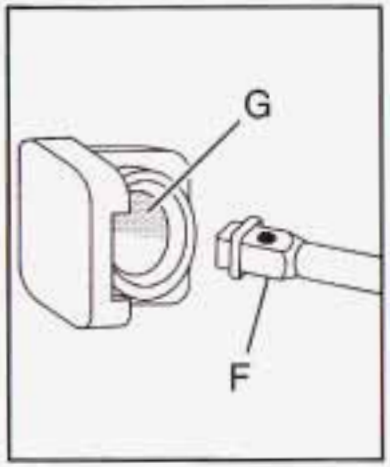



A. Spare Tire (Valve Stem Pointed Up)
B. Hoist Assembly
C. Hoist Cable
D. Tire Retainer
E. Hoist Shaft
F. Hoist End of Extension Tool
G. Hoist Shaft Access Hole
H. Wheel Wrench
I. Jack Handle Extensions
J. Hoist Lock (If Equipped)

1. If your vehicle is equipped with a hoist lock (J), open the spare tire lock cover on the bumper and use the ignition key to remove the lock.



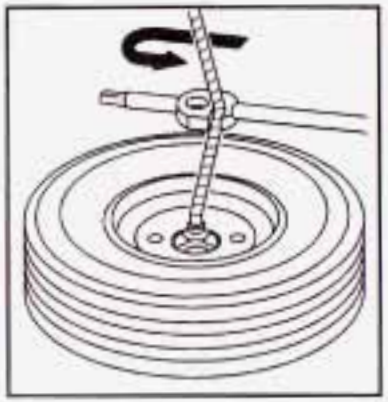

2. Assemble the wheel wrench (H) and the two jack handle extensions (I) as shown.



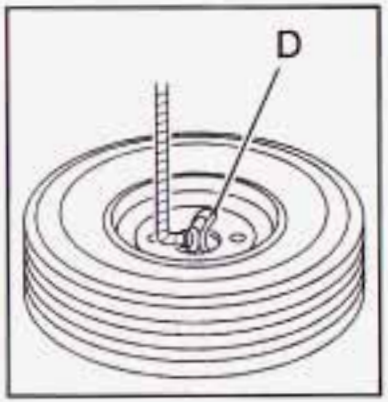

3. Insert the hoist end (open end) (F) of the extension through the hole (G) in the rear bumper.

Be sure the hoist end of the extension connects into the hoist shaft (E). The ribbed square end of the extension is used to lower the spare tire.

4. Turn the wheel wrench (H) counterclockwise to lower the spare tire to the ground. Continue to turn the wheel wrench until the spare tire can be pulled out from under the vehicle.



The wheel wrench has a hook that allows you to pull the hoist cable towards you to assist in reaching the spare tire.

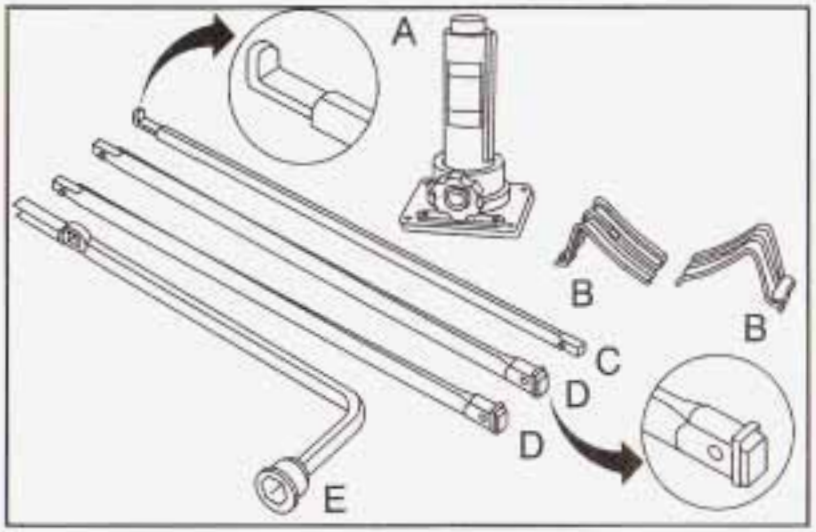



5. When the tire has been lowered, tilt the retainer (D) at the end of the cable so it can be pulled up through the wheel opening.

6. Put the spare tire near the flat tire.

## Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire

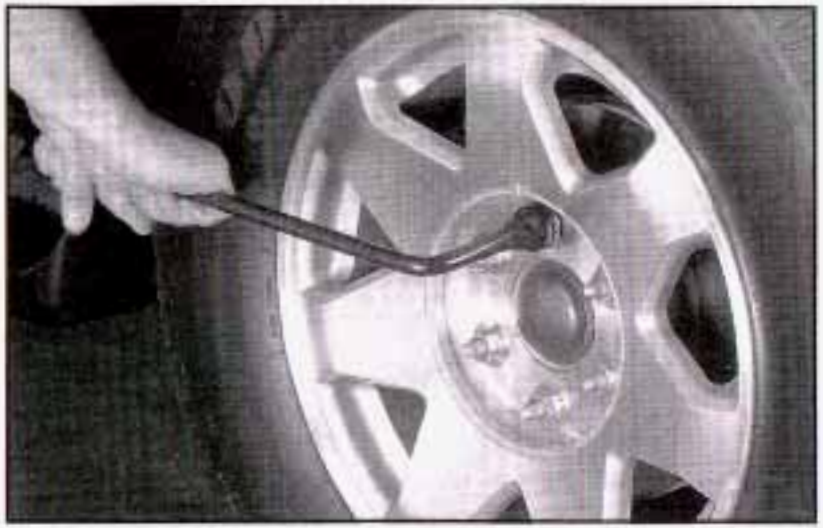
Use the following pictures and instructions to remove the flat tire and raise the vehicle.



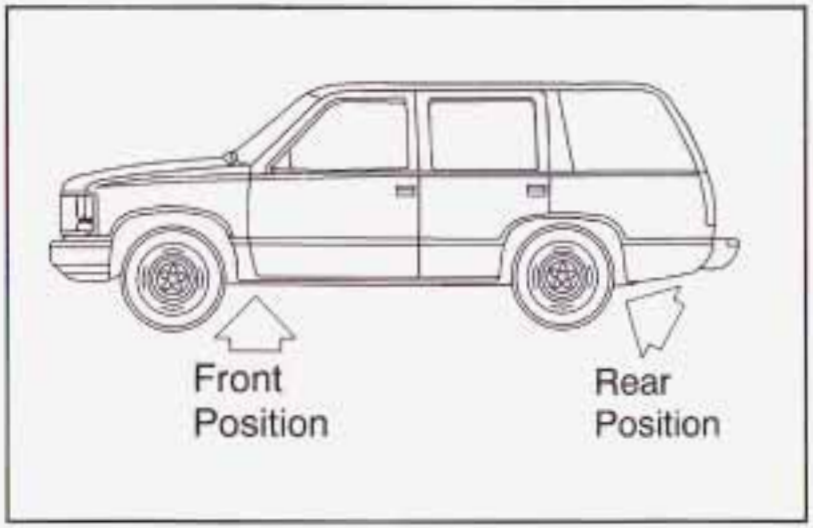

The tools you'll be using include the bottle jack (A), the wheel blocks (B), the jack handle (C), the jack handle extensions (D), and the wheel wrench (E).



1. Remove the center cap by placing the chisel end of the wheel wrench in the slot on the wheel and gently prying the cap out.



2. Use the wheel wrench to loosen all the wheel nuts. Turn the wheel wrench counterclockwise to loosen the wheel nuts. Don't remove the wheel nuts yet.




**Jack Positions (overall view)**

These locations are the general area of jack placement. See text and art following for the exact jack placement.

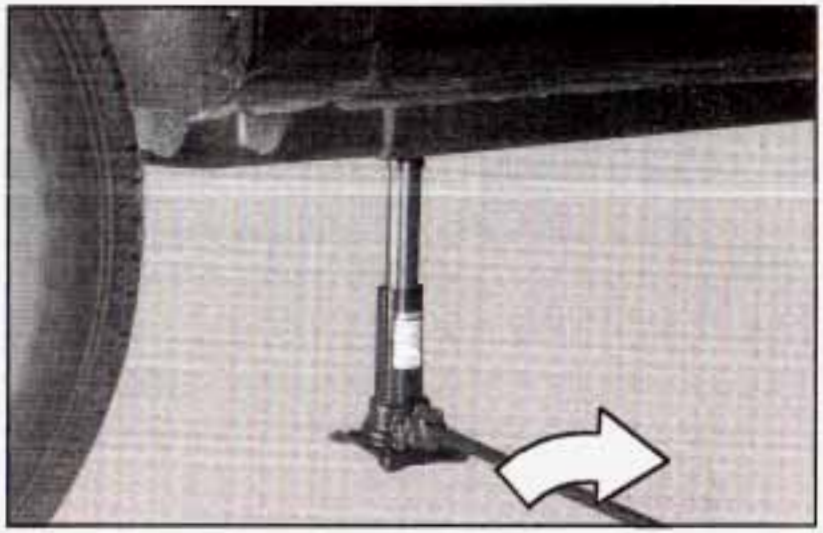
## ⚠ CAUTION:

**Getting under a vehicle when it is jacked up is dangerous. If the vehicle slips off the jack you could be badly injured or killed. Never get under a vehicle when it is supported only by a jack.**

## ⚠ CAUTION:

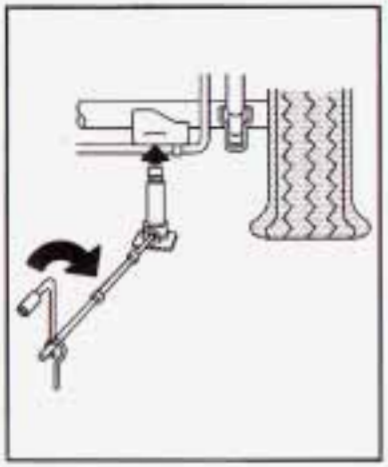
**Raising your vehicle with the jack improperly positioned can damage the vehicle and even make the vehicle fall. To help avoid personal injury and vehicle damage, be sure to fit the jack lift head into the proper location before raising the vehicle.**

3. Position the jack under the vehicle.



**Front Position**

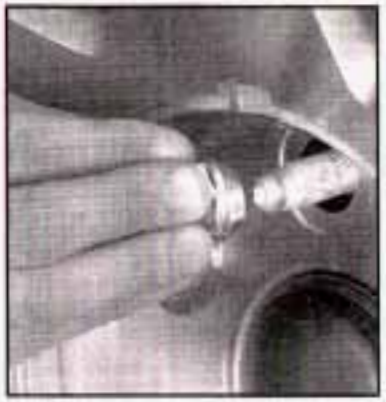
**Front Tire Flat:** If the flat tire is on a front tire of the vehicle, you'll need to use the jack handle (C) and only one jack handle extension (D). Attach the wheel wrench to the jack handle extension. Attach the jack handle to the jack. Position the jack on the frame behind the flat tire where the frame sections overlap. Turn the wheel wrench clockwise to raise the vehicle. Raise the vehicle far enough off the ground so there is enough room for the spare tire to clear the ground.



**Rear Position**

**Rear Tire Flat:** If the flat tire is on a rear tire of the vehicle, you'll need to use the jack handle (C) and both jack handle extensions (D). Attach the wheel wrench to the jack handle extensions. Attach the jack handle to the jack. Use the jacking pad provided on the rear axle.

Turn the wheel wrench clockwise to raise the vehicle. Raise the vehicle far enough off the ground so there is enough room for the spare tire to clear the ground.



4. Remove all the wheel nuts and take off the flat tire.



5. Remove any rust or dirt from the wheel bolts, mounting surfaces and spare wheel.

## ⚠ CAUTION:

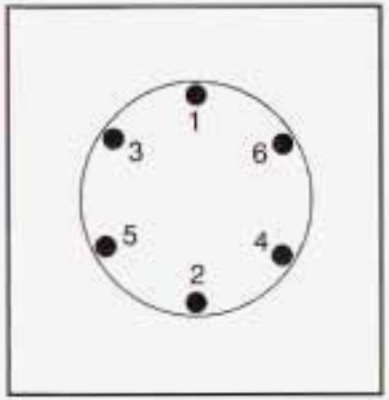
Rust or dirt on the wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make the wheel nuts become loose after a time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When you change a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from the places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, you can use a cloth or a paper towel to do this; but be sure to use a scraper or wire brush later, if you need to, to get all the rust or dirt off.

## ⚠ CAUTION:

Never use oil or grease on studs or nuts. If you do, the nuts might come loose. Your wheel could fall off, causing a serious accident.



6. After mounting the spare, put the wheel nuts back on with the rounded end of the nuts toward the wheel. Tighten each wheel nut by hand. Then use the wheel wrench to tighten the nuts until the wheel is held against the hub.
7. Turn the wheel wrench counterclockwise to lower the vehicle. Lower the jack completely.




8. Tighten the nuts firmly in a crisscross sequence as shown by turning the wheel wrench clockwise.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Incorrect wheel nuts or improperly tightened wheel nuts can cause the wheel to come loose and even come off. This could lead to an accident. Be sure to use the correct wheel nuts. If you have to replace them, be sure to get new GM original equipment wheel nuts.**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**Stop somewhere as soon as you can and have the nuts tightened with a torque wrench to the proper torque specification. See "Capacities and Specifications" in the Index for wheel nut torque specification.**

***Notice:*** **Improperly tightened wheel nuts can lead to brake pulsation and rotor damage. To avoid expensive brake repairs, evenly tighten the wheel nuts in the proper sequence and to the proper torque specification. See "Capacities and Specifications" in the index for the wheel nut torque specification.**

When you reinstall the regular wheel and tire, you must also reinstall the center cap. Place the cap on the wheel and tap it into place until it seats flush with the wheel. The cap only goes on one way. Be sure to line up the tab on the center cap with the indentation on the wheel.

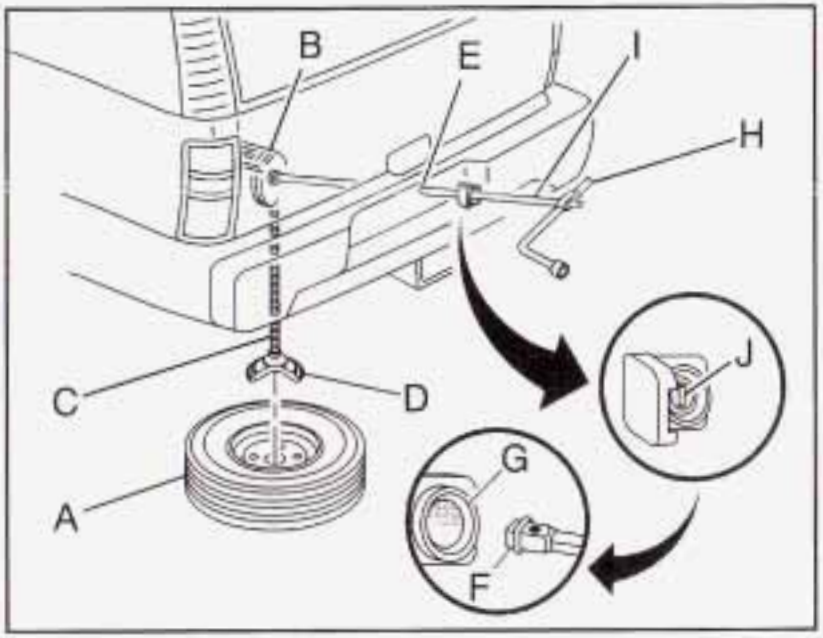
## Storing a Flat or Spare Tire, Jack and Tools

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Storing a jack, a tire, or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store all these in the proper place.**

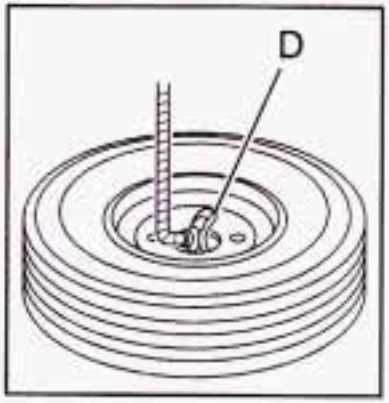
***Notice:*** **An aluminum wheel with a flat tire should always be stored under the vehicle with the hoist. However, storing it that way for an extended period of time could damage the wheel. To avoid this, always stow the wheel properly with the valve stem pointing up and have the wheel repaired as soon as possible.**

Store the tire under the rear of the vehicle in the spare tire carrier. Use the art and text following to help you:

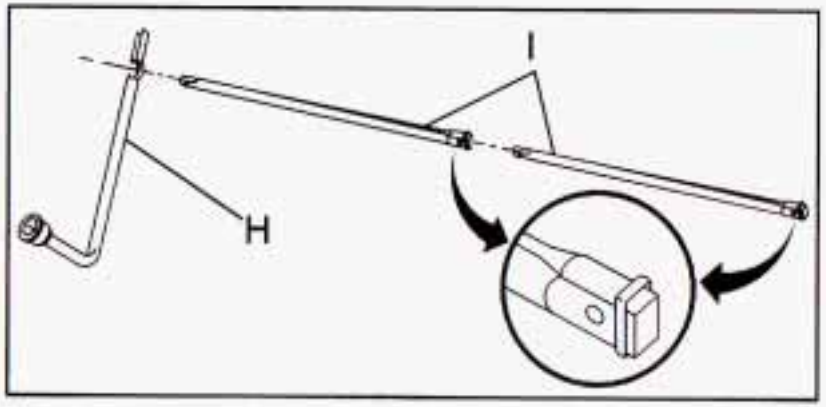



A. Spare Tire (Valve Stem Pointed Up)
B. Hoist Assembly
C. Hoist Cable
D. Tire Retainer
E. Hoist Shaft
F. Hoist End of Extension Tool
G. Hoist Shaft Access Hole
H. Wheel Wrench
I. Jack Handle Extensions
J. Hoist Lock (If Equipped)

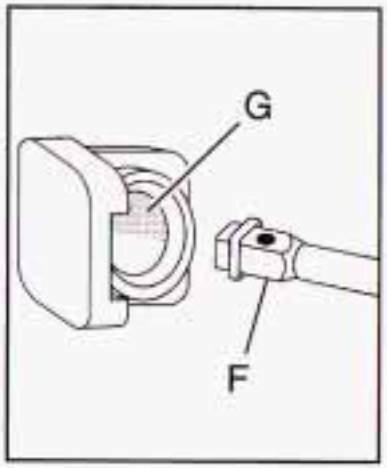
1. Put the tire on the ground at the rear of the vehicle with the valve stem pointed up.




2. Tilt the retainer (D) downward and through the wheel opening. Make sure the retainer is fully seated across the underside of the wheel.



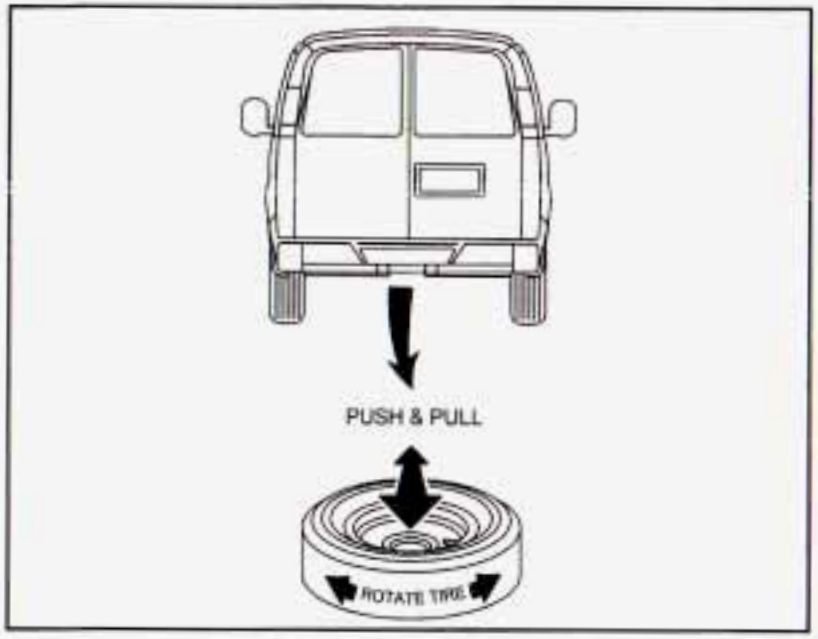

3. Attach the wheel wrench (H) and extensions (I) together.




4. Insert the hoist end (F) through the hole (G) in the rear bumper and into the hoist shaft.

5. Raise the tire part way upward. Make sure the retainer is seated in the wheel opening.

6. Raise the tire fully against the underside of the vehicle by turning the wheel wrench clockwise until you hear two clicks or feel it skip twice. You cannot overtighten the cable.




7. Make sure the tire is stored securely. Push, pull, and then try to rotate or turn the tire. If the tire moves, use the wheel wrench to tighten the cable. Reinstall the spare tire lock (if equipped).

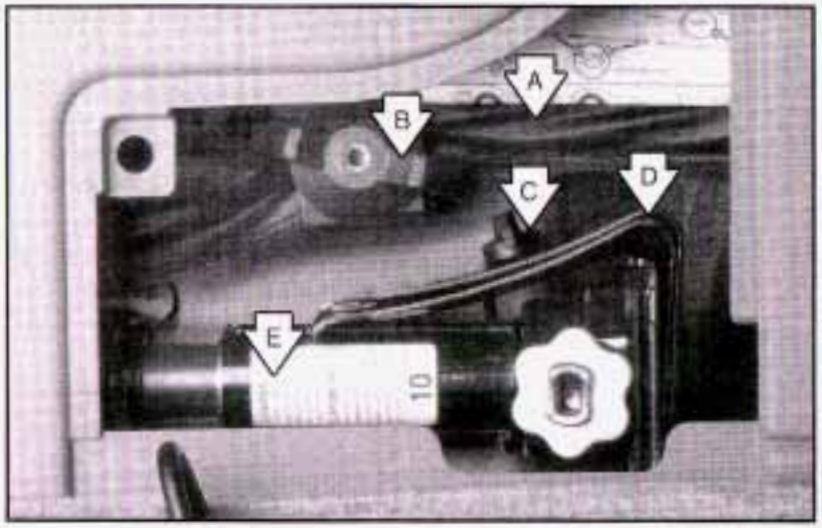
To store the tools, follow these procedures:

**For Escalade, do the following:**

1. Put the tool kit, with the jack tools and gloves, in the tool bag and place in the retaining clip above the jack.
2. Tighten down with the wing nut.
3. Then, assemble wheel chocks and bottle jack together with the wing nut and retaining hook.
4. Position behind the jack storage cover in the left rear side panel and tighten, adjusting clockwise until the jack is secured tight in the mounting bracket. Be sure to position the holes in the base of the jack onto the pin in the mounting bracket.

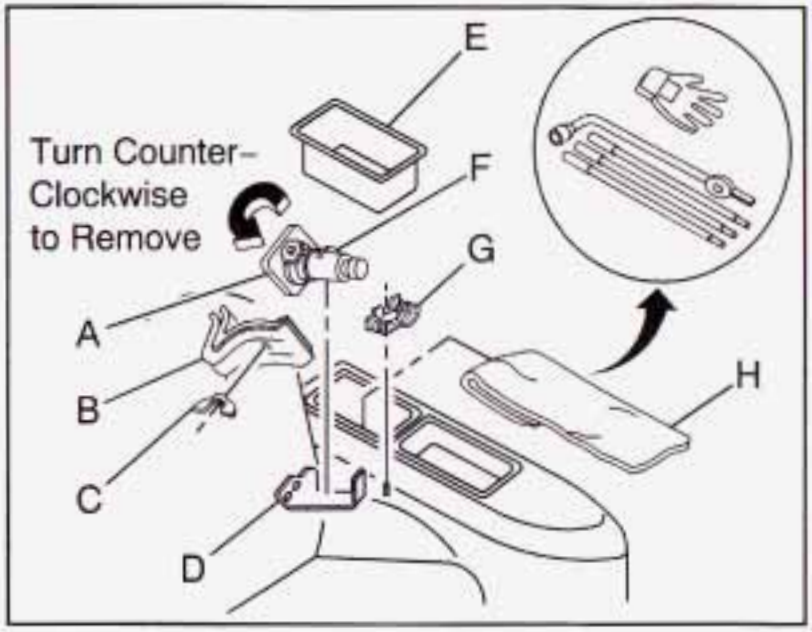
**For Escalade ESV, do the following:**

1. Return the tool kit (jack tools and gloves) to the tool bag.
2. Assemble wheel chocks and bottle jack together with the wing nut and retaining hook.
3. Position under the jack storage tray in the left rear side panel below the wheelbase and tighten, adjusting clockwise until the jack is secured tight in the mounting bracket. Be sure to position the holes in the base of the jack onto the pin in the mounting bracket.
4. Use the retaining clip to fasten the tool kit on the stud in the storage compartment in the rear left trim panel and turn the wing nut clockwise to secure.
5. Return the storage tray.




**Escalade (Rear Access Panel)**

A. Tool Kit with Jack Tools and Gloves
B. Retaining Bracket and Wing Nut
C. Wing Nut Holding Tire Blocks
D. Tire Blocks
E. Bottle Jack




**Escalade ESV**

A. Bottle Jack
B. Wheel Blocks
C. Wing Nut Holding Tire Blocks
D. Mounting Bracket
E. Removable Tray
F. Retaining Hook
G. Retaining Bracket and Wing Nut
H. Tool Kit with Jack Tools and Gloves

## Spare Tire

Your vehicle, when new, had a fully inflated spare tire. A spare tire may lose air over time, so check its inflation pressure regularly. See *Inflation -- Tire Pressure on page 5-66* and *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-48* for information regarding proper tire inflation and loading your vehicle. For instruction on how to remove, install or store a spare tire, see *Changing a Flat Tire on page 5-74*.

After installing the spare tire on your vehicle, you should stop as soon as possible and make sure the spare is correctly inflated. Have the damaged or flat road tire repaired or replaced as soon as you can and installed back onto your vehicle. This way, a spare tire will be available in case you need it again.

If your vehicle has a spare tire that does not match your vehicle's original road tires and wheels in size and type, do not include the spare in the tire rotation.

# Appearance Care

Remember, cleaning products can be hazardous. Some are toxic. Others can burst into flames if you strike a match or get them on a hot part of the vehicle. Some are dangerous if you breathe their fumes in a closed space. When you use anything from a container to clean your vehicle, be sure to follow the manufacturer's warnings and instructions. And always open your doors or windows when you're cleaning the inside.

*Never* use these to clean your vehicle:

- Gasoline
- Benzene
- Naphtha
- Carbon Tetrachloride
- Acetone
- Paint Thinner
- Turpentine
- Lacquer Thinner
- Nail Polish Remover

They can all be hazardous — some more than others — and they can all damage your vehicle, too.

Don't use any of these unless this manual says you can. In many uses, these will damage your vehicle:

- Alcohol
- Laundry Soap
- Bleach
- Reducing Agents

## Cleaning the Inside of Your Vehicle

Use a vacuum cleaner often to get rid of dust and loose dirt. Wipe vinyl, leather, plastic and painted surfaces with a clean, damp cloth.

## Fabric/Carpet

Your dealer has cleaners for the cleaning of fabric and carpet. They will clean normal spots and stains very well.

You and get GM-approved cleaning products from your dealer. See *GM Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials on page 5-96.*

Here are some cleaning tips:

- Always read the instructions on the cleaner label.
- Clean up stains as soon as you can — before they set.
- Carefully scrape off any excess stain.
- Use a clean cloth or sponge, and change to a clean area often. A soft brush may be used if stains are stubborn.
- If a ring forms on fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately or it will set.

## Vinyl

Use warm water and a clean cloth.

- Rub with a clean, damp cloth to remove dirt. You may have to do this more than once.
- Things like tar, asphalt and shoe polish will stain if you don't get them off quickly. Use a clean cloth and vinyl/leather cleaner. See your dealer for this product.

## Leather

Use a soft cloth with lukewarm water and a mild soap or saddle soap and wipe dry with a soft cloth. Then, let the leather dry naturally. Do not use heat to dry.

- For stubborn stains, use a leather cleaner. See your dealer for this product.
- *Never* use oils, varnishes, solvent-based or abrasive cleaners, furniture polish or shoe polish on leather.
- Soiled or stained leather should be cleaned immediately. If dirt is allowed to work into the finish, it can harm the leather.

## Top of the Instrument Panel

Use only mild soap and water to clean the top surfaces of the instrument panel. Sprays containing silicones or waxes may cause annoying reflections in the windshield and even make it difficult to see through the windshield under certain conditions.

## Interior Plastic Components

Use on a mild soap and water solution on a soft cloth or sponge. Commercial cleaners may affect the surface finish.

## Wood Panels

Use a clean cloth moistened in warm, soapy water (use mild dish washing soap). Dry the wood immediately with a clean cloth.

## Speaker Covers

Vacuum around a speaker cover gently, so that the speaker won't be damaged. Clean spots with just water and mild soap.

## Glass Surfaces

Glass should be cleaned often. GM Glass Cleaner or a liquid household glass cleaner will remove normal tobacco smoke and dust films on interior glass. See *GM Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials on page 5-96.*

***Notice:*** **Don't use abrasive cleaners on glass, because they may cause scratches. Avoid placing decals on the inside rear window, since they may have to be scraped off later. If abrasive cleaners are used on the inside of the rear window, an electric defogger element may be damaged. Any temporary license should not be attached across the defogger grid.**

## Care of Safety Belts

Keep belts clean and dry.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Do not bleach or dye safety belts. If you do, it may severely weaken them. In a crash, they might not be able to provide adequate protection. Clean safety belts only with mild soap and lukewarm water.**

## Weatherstrips

Silicone grease on weatherstrips will make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak. Apply silicone grease with a clean cloth at least every six months. During very cold, damp weather more frequent application may be required. See *Part D: Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-16.*

## Cleaning the Outside of Your Vehicle

The paint finish on your vehicle provides beauty, depth of color, gloss retention and durability.

## Washing Your Vehicle

The best way to preserve your vehicle's finish is to keep it clean by washing it often with lukewarm or cold water.

Don't wash your vehicle in the direct rays of the sun. Use a car washing soap. Don't use strong soaps or chemical detergents. Be sure to rinse the vehicle well, removing all soap residue completely. You can get GM-approved cleaning products from your dealer. See *GM Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials on page 5-96*. Don't use cleaning agents that are petroleum based, or that contain acid or abrasives. All cleaning agents should be flushed promptly and not allowed to dry on the surface, or they could stain. Dry the finish with a soft, clean chamois or an all-cotton towel to avoid surface scratches and water spotting.

High pressure car washes may cause water to enter your vehicle.

## Cleaning Exterior Lamps/Lenses

Use only lukewarm or cold water, a soft cloth and a car washing soap to clean exterior lamps and lenses. Follow instructions under "Washing Your Vehicle."

## Finish Care

Occasional waxing or mild polishing of your vehicle by hand may be necessary to remove residue from the paint finish. You can get GM-approved cleaning products from your dealer. See *GM Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials on page 5-96*.

If your vehicle has a "basecoat/clearcoat" paint finish. The clearcoat gives more depth and gloss to the colored basecoat. Always use waxes and polishes that are non-abrasive and made for a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish.

***Notice:*** **Machine compounding or aggressive polishing on a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish may dull the finish or leave swirl marks.**

Foreign materials such as calcium chloride and other salts, ice melting agents, road oil and tar, tree sap, bird droppings, chemicals from industrial chimneys, etc., can damage your vehicle's finish if they remain on painted surfaces. Wash the vehicle as soon as possible. If necessary, use non-abrasive cleaners that are marked safe for painted surfaces to remove foreign matter.

Exterior painted surfaces are subject to aging, weather and chemical fallout that can take their toll over a period of years. You can help to keep the paint finish looking new by keeping your vehicle garaged or covered whenever possible.

## Protecting Exterior Bright Metal Parts

Bright metal parts should be cleaned regularly to keep their luster. Washing with water is all that is usually needed. However, you may use chrome polish on chrome or stainless steel trim, if necessary.

Use special care with aluminum trim. To avoid damaging protective trim, never use auto or chrome polish, steam or caustic soap to clean aluminum. A coating of wax, rubbed to high polish, is recommended for all bright metal parts.

## Windshield, Backglass and Wiper Blades

If the windshield is not clear after using the windshield washer, or if the wiper blade chatters when running, wax, sap or other material may be on the blade or windshield.

Clean the outside of the windshield with a full-strength glass cleaning liquid. The windshield is clean if beads do not form when you rinse it with water.

Grime from the windshield will stick to the wiper blades and affect their performance. Clean the blade by wiping vigorously with a cloth soaked in full-strength windshield washer solvent. Then rinse the blade with water.

Check the wiper blades and clean them as necessary; replace blades that look worn.

## Aluminum or Chrome-Plated Wheels

Your vehicle may be equipped with either aluminum or chrome-plated wheels.

Keep your wheels clean using a soft clean cloth with mild soap and water. Rinse with clean water. After rinsing thoroughly, dry with a soft clean towel. A wax may then be applied.

The surface of these wheels is similar to the painted surface of your vehicle. Don't use strong soaps, chemicals, abrasive polishes, abrasive cleaners, cleaners with acid, or abrasive cleaning brushes on them because you could damage the surface. Do not use chrome polish on aluminum wheels.

Use chrome polish only on chrome-plated wheels, but avoid any painted surface of the wheel, and buff off immediately after application.

Don't take your vehicle through an automatic car wash that has silicone carbide tire cleaning brushes. These brushes can also damage the surface of these wheels.

## Tires

To clean your tires, use a stiff brush with tire cleaner.

***Notice:*** **When applying a tire dressing, always take care to wipe off any overspray or splash from all painted surfaces on the body or wheels of the vehicle. Petroleum-based products may damage the paint finish and tires.**

## Sheet Metal Damage

If your vehicle is damaged and requires sheet metal repair or replacement, make sure the body repair shop applies anti-corrosion material to parts repaired or replaced to restore corrosion protection.

Original manufacturer replacement parts will provide the corrosion protection while maintaining the warranty.

## Finish Damage

Any stone chips, fractures or deep scratches in the finish should be repaired right away. Bare metal will corrode quickly and may develop into major repair expense.

Minor chips and scratches can be repaired with touch-up materials avaliable from your dealer or other service outlets. Larger areas of finish damage can be corrected in your dealer's body and paint shop.

## Underbody Maintenance

Chemicals used for ice and snow removal and dust control can collect on the underbody. If these are not removed, accelerated corrosion (rust) can occur on the underbody parts such as fuel lines, frame, floor pan and exhaust system even though they have corrosion protection.

At least every spring, flush these materials from the underbody with plain water. Clean any areas where mud and debris can collect. Dirt packed in close areas of the frame should be loosened before being flushed. Your dealer or an underbody car washing system can do this for you.

## Chemical Paint Spotting

Some weather and atmospheric conditions can create a chemical fallout. Airborne pollutants can fall upon and attack painted surfaces on your vehicle. This damage can take two forms; blotchy, ringlet-shaped discolorations, and small irregular dark spots etched into the paint surface.

Although no defect in the paint job causes this, GM will repair, at no charge to the owner, the surfaces of new vehicles damaged by this fallout condition within 12 months or 12,000 miles (20 000 km) of purchase, whichever occurs first.

## GM Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials

See your GM dealer for more information on purchasing the following products.

## GM Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials

| Description | Usage |
|---|---|
| Polishing Cloth Wax–Treated | Interior and exterior polishing cloth. |
| Tar and Road Oil Remover | Removes tar, road oil and asphalt. |
| Chrome Cleaner and Polish | Use on chrome or stainless steel. |
| White Sidewall Tire Cleaner | Removes soil and black marks from whitewalls. |
| Vinyl Cleaner | Cleans vinyl tops, upholstery and convertible tops. |
| Glass Cleaner | Removes dirt, grime, smoke and fingerprints. |
| Chrome and Wire Wheel Cleaner | Removes dirt and grime from chrome wheels and wire wheel covers. |
| Finish Enhancer | Removes dust, fingerprints, and surface contaminants, Spray on wipe off. |
| Swirl Remover Polish | Removes swirl marks, fine scratches and other light surface contamination. |

## GM Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials (cont'd)

| Description | Usage |
|---|---|
| Cleaner Wax | Removes light scratches and protects finish. |
| Foaming Tire Shine Low Gloss | Cleans, shines and protects in one easy step, no wiping necessary. |
| Wash Wax Concentrate | Medium foaming shampoo. Cleans and lightly waxes. Biodegradable and phosphate free. |
| Spot Lifter | Quickly and easily removes spots and stains from carpets, vinyl and cloth upholstery. |
| Odor Eliminator | Odorless spray odor eliminator used on fabrics, vinyl, leather and carpet. |
| See your General Motors parts department for these products. See *Part D: Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-16.* | |

# Vehicle Identification

## Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)




This is the legal identifier for your vehicle. It appears on a plate in the front corner of the instrument panel, on the driver's side. You can see it if you look through the windshield from outside your vehicle. The VIN also appears on the Vehicle Certification and Service Parts labels and the certificates of title and registration.

### Engine Identification

The 8th character in your VIN is the engine code. This code will help you identify your engine, specifications and replacement parts.

## Service Parts Identification Label

You'll find this label located in the glove box. It's very helpful if you ever need to order parts. On this label is:

- your VIN,
- the model designation,
- paint information and
- a list of all production options and special equipment.

Be sure that this label is not removed from the vehicle.

# Electrical System

## Add-On Electrical Equipment

*Notice:* **Don't add anything electrical to your vehicle unless you check with your dealer first. Some electrical equipment can damage your vehicle and the damage wouldn't be covered by your warranty. Some add-on electrical equipment can keep other components from working as they should.**

Your vehicle has an air bag system. Before attempting to add anything electrical to your vehicle, see *Servicing Your Air Bag-Equipped Vehicle on page 1-86.*

## Windshield Wiper Fuses

The windshield wiper motor is protected by an internal circuit breaker and a fuse. If the motor overheats due to heavy snow, etc., the wiper will stop until the motor cools. If the overload is caused by some electrical problem and not snow, etc., be sure to get it fixed.

## Power Windows and Other Power Options

Circuit breakers protect the power windows and other power accessories. When the current load is too heavy, the circuit breaker opens and closes, protecting the circuit until the problem is fixed or goes away.

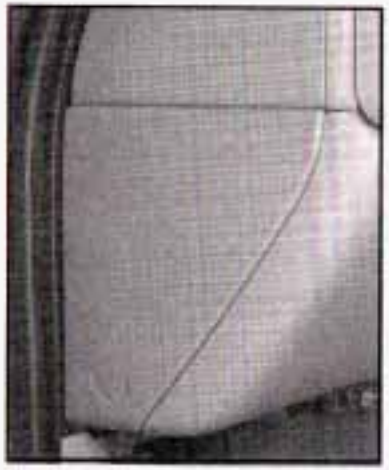
## Fuses and Circuit Breakers

The wiring circuits in your vehicle are protected from short circuits by a combination of fuses, circuit breakers and fusible thermal links. This greatly reduces the chance of fires caused by electrical problems.

Look at the silver-colored band inside the fuse. If the band is broken or melted, replace the fuse. Be sure you replace a bad fuse with a new one of the identical size and rating.

If you ever have a problem on the road and don't have a spare fuse, you can borrow one that has the same amperage. Just pick some feature of your vehicle that you can get along without – like the radio or cigarette lighter – and use its fuse, if it is the correct amperage. Replace it as soon as you can.

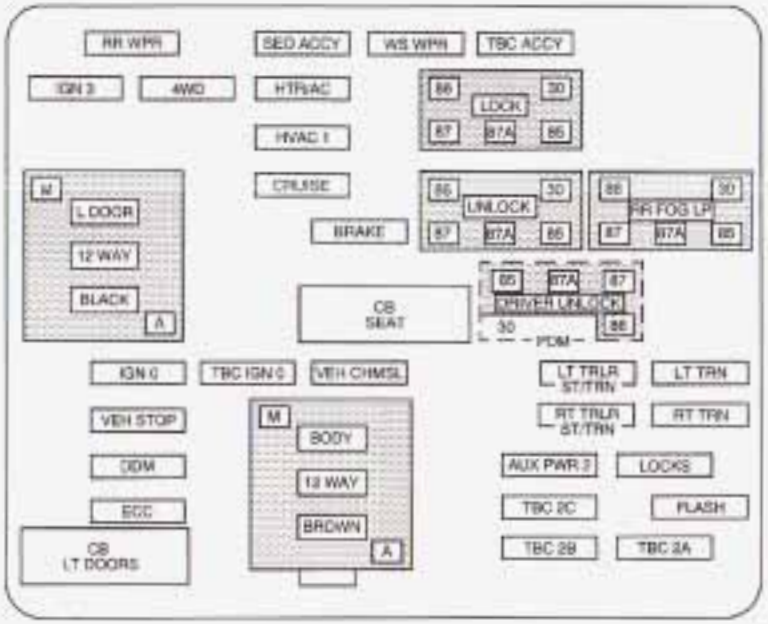
## Instrument Panel Fuse Block



The fuse block access door is on the driver's side edge of the instrument panel. Pull off the cover to access the fuse block.

You can remove fuses with a fuse extractor which is mounted to the fuse block access door. To remove fuses if you don't have a fuse extractor, hold the end of the fuse between your thumb and index finger and pull straight out.

You may have spare fuses located behind the fuse block access door. These can be used to replace a bad fuse. However, make sure it is of the correct amperage.




| Fuses | Usage |
|---|---|
| RR Wiper | Rear Window Wiper Switch |
| SEO ACCY | Special Equipment Option Accessory |
| WS WPR | Windshield Wipers |
| TBC ACCY | Truck Body Controller Accessory |
| IGN 3 | Ignition, Heated Seats |
| 4WD | Four-Wheel Drive System |

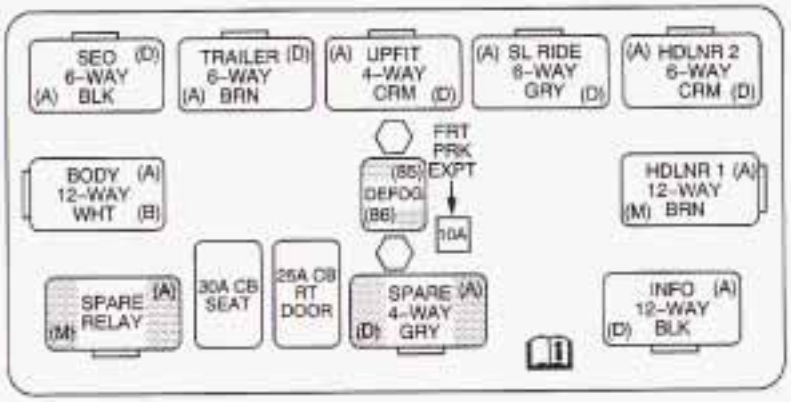
| Fuses | Usage |
|---|---|
| HTR A/C | Climate Control System |
| LOCK | Power Door Lock Relay (Lock Function) |
| HVAC 1 | Inside Rearview Mirror, Climate Control System |
| L DOOR | Driver's Door Harness Connection |
| CRUISE | Cruise Control |
| UNLOCK | Power Door Lock Relay (Unlock Function) |
| RR FOG LP | Rear Fog Lamp (Export Only) |
| BRAKE | Anti-Lock Brake System |
| DRIVER UNLOCK | Power Door Lock Relay (Driver's Door Unlock Function) |
| IGN 0 | PCM, TCM |
| TBC IGN 0 | Truck Body Controller |
| VEH CHMSL | Vehicle and Trailer High Mounted Stoplamp |
| LT TRLR ST/TRN | Left Turn Signal/Stop Trailer |
| LT TRN | Left Turn Signals and Sidemarkers |
| VEH STOP | Vehicle Stoplamps, Brake Module, Electronic Throttle Control Module |
| RT TRLR ST/TRN | Right Turn Signal/Stop Trailer |

| Fuses | Usage |
|---|---|
| RT TRN | Right Turn Signals and Sidemarkers |
| BODY | Harness Connector |
| DDM | Driver Door Module |
| AUX PWR 2 | Rear Cargo Area Power Outlets |
| LOCKS | Power Door Lock System |
| ECC | Rear Electronic Climate Control |
| TBC 2C | Truck Body Controller |
| FLASH | Flasher Module |

| Fuses | Usage |
|---|---|
| CB LT DOORS | Left Power Window Circuit Breaker |
| TBC 2B | Truck Body Controller |
| TBC 2A | Truck Body Controller |

## Center Instrument Panel Fuse Block

The center instrument panel utility block is located underneath the instrument panel, to the left of the steering column.




| Device | Usage |
|---|---|
| SEO | Special Equipment Option |
| TRAILER | Trailer Brake Wiring |
| UPFIT | Upfitter (Not Used) |
| SL RIDE | Ride Control Harness Connection |
| HDLR 2 | Headliner Wiring Connector |
| BODY | Body Wiring Connector |
| DEFOG | Rear Defogger Relay |
| HDLNR 1 | Headliner Wiring Connector 1 |
| SPARE RELAY | Not Used |
| CB SEAT | Driver and Passenger Seat Module Circuit Breaker |
| CB RT DOOR | Right Power Window Circuit Breaker |
| SPARE | Not Used |
| INFO | Infotainment Harness Connection |

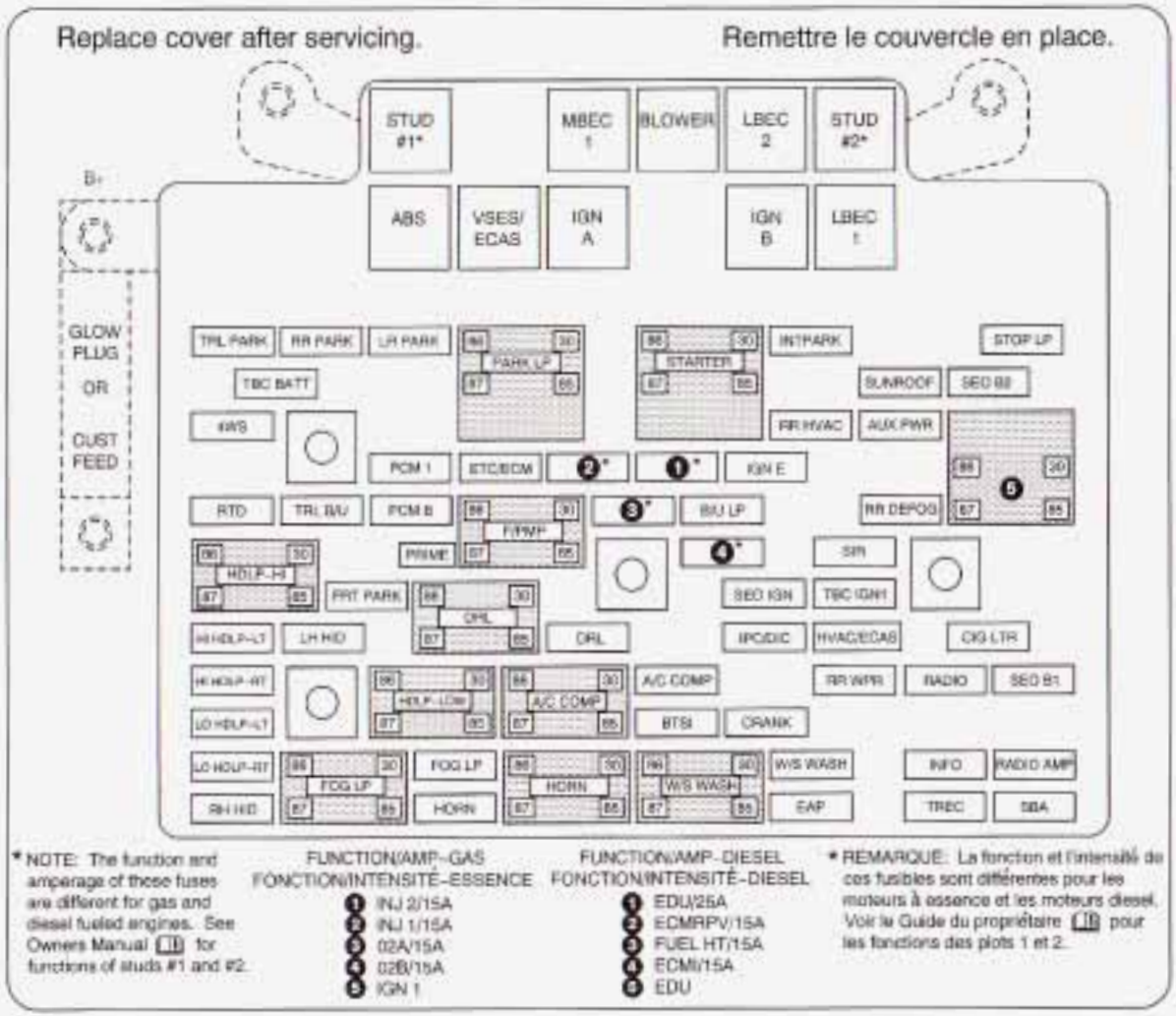
## Underhood Fuse Block



The underhood fuse block in the engine compartment on the driver's side of the vehicle near the battery. Lift the cover for access to the fuse/relay block.

To remove fuses, hold the end of the fuse between your thumb and index finger and pull straight out.

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for more information on its location.




* NOTE: The function and amperage of these fuses are different for gas and diesel fueled engines. See Owners Manual for functions of studs #1 and #2.

FUNCTION/AMP - GAS
FONCTION/INTENSITÉ - ESSENCE

1. INJ 2/15A
2. INJ 1/15A
3. 02A/15A
4. 02B/15A
5. IGN 1

FUNCTION/AMP - DIESEL
FONCTION/INTENSITÉ - DIESEL

1. EDU/25A
2. ECMRPV/15A
3. FUEL HT/15A
4. ECMI/15A
5. EDU

* REMARQUE: La fonction et l'intensité de ces fusibles sont différentes pour les moteurs à essence et les moteurs diesel. Voir le Guide du propriétaire pour les fonctions des plots 1 et 2.

*1 — Gasoline Engine and Fuel Injection Rail #2.

*2 — Gasoline Engine and Fuel Injection Rail #1.

*3 — Gasoline Engine; Oxygen Sensors.

*4 — Gasoline Engine; Oxygen Sensors.

*5 — PCM Ignition

| Fuses | Usage |
|---|---|
| GLOW PLUG | Not Used |
| CUST FEED | Accessory Power |
| STUD #1 | Auxiliary Power |
| MBEC | Mid Bussed Electrical Center Power Feed, Front Seats, Right Doors |
| BLOWER | Front Climate Control Fan |
| LBEC | Left Bussed Electrical Center, Door Modules, Door Locks, Auxiliary Power Outlet—Rear Cargo Area and Instrument Panel |
| STUD 2 | Accessory Power/Trailer Wiring Brake Feed |
| ABS | Anti-Lock Brakes |
| VSES/ECAS | Vehicle Stability |
| IGN A | Ignition Power |
| IGN B | Ignition Power |

| Fuses | Usage |
|---|---|
| LBEC 1 | Left Bussed Electrical Center, Left Doors, Truck Body Controller, Flasher Module |
| TRL PARK | Parking Lamps Trailer Wiring |
| RR PARK | Right Rear Parking and Sidemarker Lamps |
| LR PARK | Left Rear Parking and Sidemarker Lamps |
| PARK LP | Parking Lamps Relay |
| STARTER | Starter Relay |
| INTPARK | Interior Lamps |
| STOP LP | Stoplamps |
| TBC BATT | Truck Body Controller Battery Feed |
| SUNROOF | Sunroof |
| SEO B2 | Off-Road Lamps |
| 4WS | Vent Solenoid Canister/Quadrasteer Module Power |
| RR HVAC | Rear Climate Control |
| AUX PWR | Auxiliary Power Outlet — Console |
| IGN 1 | Ignition Relay |
| PCM 1 | Powertrain Control Module |
| ETC/ECM | Electronic Throttle Control, Electronic Brake Controller |

| Fuses | Usage |
|---|---|
| IGN E | Instrument Panel Cluster, Air Conditioning Relay, Turn Signal/Hazard Switch, Starter Relay |
| RTD | Ride Control |
| TRL B/U | Backup Lamps Trailer Wiring |
| PCM B | Powertrain Control Module, Fuel Pump |
| F/PMP | Fuel Pump (Relay) |
| B/U LP | Back-up Lamps, Automatic Transmission Shift Lock Control System |
| RR DEFOG | Rear Window Defogger |
| HDLP-HI | Headlamp High Beam Relay |
| PRIME | Not Used |
| SIR | Supplemental Inflatable Restraint System |
| FRT PARK | Front Parking Lamps, Sidemarker Lamps |
| DRL | Daytime Running Lamps (Relay) |

| Fuses | Usage |
|---|---|
| SEO IGN | Rear Defog Relay |
| TBC IGN1 | Truck Body Controller Ignition |
| HI HDLP-LT | High Beam Headlamp-Left |
| LH HID | Left Hand High Intensity Discharge Lamps |
| DRL | Daytime Running Lamps |
| IPC/DIC | Instrument Panel Cluster/Driver Information Center |
| HVAC/ECAS | Climate Control Controller |
| CIG LTR | Cigarette Lighter |
| HI HDLP-RT | High Beam Headlamp-Right |
| HDLP-LOW | Headlamp Low Beam Relay |
| A/C COMP | Air Conditioning Compressor |
| A/C COMP | Air Conditioning Compressor Relay |
| RR WPR | Rear Wiper/Washer |
| RADIO | Audio System |

| Fuses | Usage |
|---|---|
| SEO B1 | Mid Bussed Electrical Center, HomeLink, Rear Heated Seats |
| LO HDLP-LT | Headlamp Low Beam-Left |
| BTSI | Brake Transmission Shift Interlock System |
| CRANK | Starting System |
| LO HDLP-RT | Headlamp Low Beam-Right |
| FOG LP | Fog Lamp Relay |
| FOG LP | Fog Lamps |
| HORN | Horn Relay |
| W/S WASH | Windshield and Rear Window Washer Pump Relay |

| Fuses | Usage |
|---|---|
| W/S WASH | Windshield and Rear Window Washer Pump |
| INFO | OnStar/Rear Seat Entertainment |
| RADIO AMP | Radio Amplifier |
| RH HID | Right Hand High Intensity Discharge Lamp |
| HORN | Horn Fuse |
| EAP | Electric Adjustable Pedals |
| TREC | All-Wheel Drive Module |
| SBA | Supplemental Brake Assist |

# Capacities and Specifications

Please refer to *Part D: Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-16* for more information. See refrigerant charge label under the hood for charge capacity information and requirements.

## Capacities and Specifications

| Engine | VIN Code | Spark Plug Gap |
|---|---|---|
| VORTEC™ 5300 V8 | T | 0.060 inches (1.52 mm) |
| VORTEC™ 6000 H.O. V8 | N | 0.060 inches (1.52 mm) |

| Application | Capacities | |
|---|---|---|
| | English | Metric |
| **Cooling System Capacity**<br>VORTEC™ 5300 V8<br>VORTEC™ 6000 H.O. V8 | <br>18.6 quarts<br>19.0 quarts | <br>17.6 L<br>18.0 L |
| After refill, the level must be rechecked. See *Cooling System on page 5-31.* | | |
| **Crankcase Capacity**<br>VORTEC™ 5300 V8 (T)<br>VORTEC™ 6000 H.O. V8 (N) | <br>6.0 quarts<br>6.0 quarts | <br>5.7 L<br>5.7 L |
| After refill, the level must be rechecked. Add enough engine oil so that the fluid is within the proper operating range. See *Engine Oil on page 5-13.* | | |

| Application | Capacities | |
|---|---|---|
| | English | Metric |
| **Fuel Tank Capacity** | | |
| Escalade | 26.0 gallons | 98.0 L |
| Escalade ESV | 31.0 gallons | 117.0 L |
| **Air Conditioning Refrigerant Capacity** | | |
| Escalade | 2.71 lbs | 1.23 kg |
| Escalade ESV | 3.0 lbs | 1.36 kg |

## Wheels and Tires

| Application | Capacities | |
|---|---|---|
| | English | Metric |
| Wheel Nut Torque | 140 lb-ft | 190 N•m |
| Tire Pressure | See the Certification/Tire label on the rear edge of the driver's door. | |

# Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts

Replacement part numbers listed in this section are based on the latest information available at the time of printing, and are subject to change. If a part listed in this manual is not the same as the part used in your vehicle when it was built, or if you have any questions, please contact your GM dealer.

These specifications are for information only. If you have any questions, see the service manual.

| Part | Number |
|---|---|
| Oil Filter | PF44* |
| Engine Air Cleaner/Filter | A1518C* |
| PCV Valve* | CV2001–C* |
| Spark Plugs | 41–974* / PZTR5A15† |
| Fuel Filter | GF626* |
| Wiper Blades (Front) | 15153642** |
| Wiper Blade Type (Front) | ITTA |
| Wiper Blade Length (Front) | 22.0 inches (56.0 cm) |
| Wiper Blades (Rear) | 22154396** |
| Wiper Blade Type (Rear) | ITTA |
| Wiper Blade Length (Rear) | 18.0 inches (45.0 cm) |
| *ACDelco® Part No.<br>**GM Part No.<br>†NGK | |

## NOTES

# Section 6 Maintenance Schedule


**Maintenance Schedule** ..... 6-2
- Introduction ..... 6-2
- Your Vehicle and the Environment ..... 6-2
- Maintenance Requirements ..... 6-2
- How This Section is Organized ..... 6-3
- Part A: Scheduled Maintenance Services ..... 6-4
- Using Your Maintenance Schedule ..... 6-4
- Scheduled Maintenance ..... 6-5
- Part B: Owner Checks and Services ..... 6-10
- At Each Fuel Fill ..... 6-10
- At Least Once a Month ..... 6-10
- At Least Twice a Year ..... 6-11
- At Least Once a Year ..... 6-12
- Part C: Periodic Maintenance Inspections ..... 6-14
- Steering and Suspension Inspection ..... 6-14
- Exhaust System Inspection ..... 6-14
- Fuel System Inspection ..... 6-14
- Engine Cooling System Inspection ..... 6-14
- Transfer Case and Front Axle (All-Wheel Drive) Inspection ..... 6-15
- Brake System Inspection ..... 6-15
- Part D: Recommended Fluids and Lubricants ..... 6-16
- Part E: Maintenance Record ..... 6-18

# Maintenance Schedule

## Introduction

IMPORTANT:
KEEP ENGINE OIL AT THE PROPER LEVEL AND CHANGE AS RECOMMENDED

GM Protection Plan

*Have you purchased the GM Protection Plan? The Plan supplements your new vehicle warranties. See your Warranty and Owner Assistance booklet or your dealer for details.*

## Your Vehicle and the Environment

Proper vehicle maintenance not only helps to keep your vehicle in good working condition, but also helps the environment. All recommended maintenance procedures are important. Improper vehicle maintenance can even affect the quality of the air we breathe. Improper fluid levels or the wrong tire inflation can increase the level of emissions from your vehicle. To help protect our environment, and to keep your vehicle in good condition, please maintain your vehicle properly.

## Maintenance Requirements

Maintenance intervals, checks, inspections and recommended fluids and lubricants as prescribed in this manual are necessary to keep your vehicle in good working condition. Any damage caused by failure to follow recommended maintenance may not be covered by warranty.

## How This Section is Organized

This maintenance schedule is divided into five parts:

**"Part A: Scheduled Maintenance Services"** explains what to have done and how often. Some of these services can be complex, so unless you are technically qualified and have the necessary equipment, you should let your dealer's service department or another qualified service center do these jobs.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Performing maintenance work on a vehicle can be dangerous. In trying to do some jobs, you can be seriously injured. Do your own maintenance work only if you have the required know-how and the proper tools and equipment for the job. If you have any doubt, have a qualified technician do the work.**

If you want to get the service information, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 7-10.*

**"Part B: Owner Checks and Services"** tells you what should be checked and when. It also explains what you can easily do to help keep your vehicle in good condition.

**"Part C: Periodic Maintenance Inspections"** explains important inspections that your dealer's service department or another qualified service center should perform.

**"Part D: Recommended Fluids and Lubricants"** lists some recommended products necessary to help keep your vehicle properly maintained. These products, or their equivalents, should be used whether you do the work yourself or have it done.

**"Part E: Maintenance Record"** is a place for you to record and keep track of the maintenance performed on your vehicle. Keep your maintenance receipts. They may be needed to qualify your vehicle for warranty repairs.

## Part A: Scheduled Maintenance Services

This part contains engine oil and chassis lubrication scheduled maintenance which explains the engine oil life system and how it indicates when to change the engine oil and filter. Lubricate chassis components with each oil change. Also, listed are scheduled maintenance services which are to be performed at the mileage intervals specified.

## Using Your Maintenance Schedule

We at General Motors want to help you keep your vehicle in good working condition. But we don't know exactly how you'll drive it. You may drive very short distances only a few times a week. Or you may drive long distances all the time in very hot, dusty weather. You may use your vehicle in making deliveries. Or you may drive it to work, to do errands or in many other ways.

Because of all the different ways people use their vehicles, maintenance needs vary. You may need more frequent checks and replacements. So please read the following and note how you drive. If you have any questions on how to keep your vehicle in good condition, see your dealer.

This part tells you the maintenance services you should have done and when you should schedule them. When you go to your dealer for your service needs, you'll know that GM-trained and supported service people will perform the work using genuine GM parts.

The proper fluids and lubricants to use are listed in Part D. Make sure whoever services your vehicle uses these. All parts should be replaced and all necessary repairs done before you or anyone else drives the vehicle.

This schedule is for vehicles that:

- carry passengers and cargo within recommended limits. You will find these limits on your vehicle's Certification/Tire label. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-48*.
- are driven on reasonable road surfaces within legal driving limits.
- are driven off-road in the recommended manner. See *Operating Your All-Wheel-Drive Vehicle Off Paved Roads on page 4-17*.
- use the recommended fuel. See *Gasoline Octane on page 5-5*.

## Scheduled Maintenance

The services shown in this schedule up to 100,000 miles (166 000 km) should be repeated after 100,000 miles (166 000 km) at the same intervals for the life of this vehicle. The services shown at 150,000 miles (240 000 km) should be repeated at the same interval after 150,000 miles (240 000 km) for the life of this vehicle.

See *Part B: Owner Checks and Services on page 6-10* and *Part C: Periodic Maintenance Inspections on page 6-14.*

## Footnotes

† *The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency or the California Air Resources Board has determined that the failure to perform this maintenance item will not nullify the emission warranty or limit recall liability prior to the completion of the vehicle 's useful life. We, however, urge that all recommended maintenance services be performed at the indicated intervals and the maintenance be recorded.*

+ *A good time to check your brakes is during tire rotation. See Brake System Inspection on page 6-15.*

## Engine Oil and Chassis Lubrication Scheduled Maintenance

**Change engine oil and filter as indicated by the GM Oil Life System (or every 12 months, whichever occurs first). Reset the system.**

Your vehicle has a computer system that lets you know when to change the engine oil and filter. This is based on engine revolutions and engine temperature, and not on mileage. Based on driving conditions, the mileage at which an oil change will be indicated can vary considerably. For the oil life system to work properly, you must reset the system every time the oil is changed.

When the system has calculated that oil life has been diminished, it will indicate that an oil change is necessary. A CHANGE ENGINE OIL message will come on. Change your oil as soon as possible within the next two times you stop for fuel. It is possible that, if you are driving under the best conditions, the oil life system may not indicate that an oil change is necessary for over a year. However, your engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and at this time the system must be reset. It is also important to check your oil regularly and keep it at the proper level.

If the system is ever reset accidentally, you must change your oil at 3,000 miles (5 000 km) since your last oil change. Remember to reset the oil life system whenever the oil is changed. See *Engine Oil on page 5-13* for information on resetting the system.

*An Emission Control Service.*

**Lubricate chassis components with each engine oil and filter change.**

Lubricate the front suspension, ball joints, steering linkage, transmission shift linkage and parking brake cable guides. Ball joints should not be lubricated unless their temperature is 10°F (-12°C) or higher, or they could be damaged.

After the services are performed, record the date, odometer reading and who performed the service on the maintenance record pages in Part E of this schedule.

## 7,500 Miles (12 500 km)

- ❑ Check rear/front axle fluid level and add fluid as needed. Check constant velocity joints and axle seals for leaking.
- ❑ Rotate tires. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 5-66* for proper rotation pattern and additional information. *(See footnote +.)*

## 15,000 Miles (25 000 km)

- ❑ 5.3 L Engine Only: Inspect engine air cleaner filter if you are driving in dusty conditions. Replace filter if necessary. *An Emission Control Service. (See footnote †.)*

  6.0 L Engine: See *Part B: Owner Checks and Services on page 6-10.*
- ❑ Check rear/front axle fluid level and add fluid as needed. Check constant velocity joints and axle seals for leaking.
- ❑ Rotate tires. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 5-66* for proper rotation pattern and additional information. *(See footnote +.)*

## 22,500 Miles (37 500 km)

- ❑ Check rear/front axle fluid level and add fluid as needed. Check constant velocity joints and axle seals for leaking.
- ❑ Rotate tires. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 5-66* for proper rotation pattern and additional information. *(See footnote +.)*

## 30,000 Miles (50 000 km)

- ❑ Check rear/front axle fluid level and add fluid as needed. Check constant velocity joints and axle seals for leaking.
- ❑ Rotate tires. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 5-66* for proper rotation pattern and additional information. *(See footnote +.)*
- ❑ Replace fuel filter. *An Emission Control Service. (See footnote †.)*
- ❑ 5.3 L Engine Only: Replace engine air cleaner filter. *An Emission Control Service.*

  6.0 L Engine: See *Part B: Owner Checks and Services on page 6-10.*

## 37,500 Miles (62 500 km)

- ❑ Check rear/front axle fluid level and add fluid as needed. Check constant velocity joints and axle seals for leaking.
- ❑ Rotate tires. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 5-66* for proper rotation pattern and additional information. *(See footnote +.)*

## 45,000 Miles (75 000 km)

- ❑ 5.3 L Engine Only: Inspect engine air cleaner filter if you are driving in dusty conditions. Replace filter if necessary. *An Emission Control Service. (See footnote †.)*

  6.0 L Engine: See *Part B: Owner Checks and Services on page 6-10.*
- ❑ Check rear/front axle fluid level and add fluid as needed. Check constant velocity joints and axle seals for leaking.
- ❑ Rotate tires. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 5-66* for proper rotation pattern and additional information. *(See footnote +.)*

## 50,000 Miles (83 000 km)

- ❑ Change automatic transmission fluid and filter if the vehicle is mainly driven under one or more of these conditions:
  - In heavy city traffic where the outside temperature regularly reaches 90°F (32°C) or higher.
  - In hilly or mountainous terrain.
  - When doing frequent trailer towing.
  - Uses such as found in taxi, police or delivery service.

*If you do not use your vehicle under any of these conditions, change the fluid and filter at 100,000 miles (166 000 km).*

## 52,500 Miles (87 500 km)

- ❑ Check rear/front axle fluid level and add fluid as needed. Check constant velocity joints and axle seals for leaking.
- ❑ Rotate tires. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 5-66* for proper rotation pattern and additional information. *(See footnote +.)*

## 60,000 Miles (100 000 km)

- ❑ Check rear/front axle fluid level and add fluid as needed. Check constant velocity joints and axle seals for leaking.
- ❑ Rotate tires. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 5-66* for proper rotation pattern and additional information. *(See footnote +.)*
- ❑ Replace fuel filter. *An Emission Control Service. (See footnote †.)*
- ❑ 5.3 L Engine Only: Replace engine air cleaner filter. *An Emission Control Service.*

  6.0 L Engine: See *Part B: Owner Checks and Services on page 6-10.*
- ❑ Inspect Evaporative Control System. Check all fuel and vapor lines and hoses for proper hook-up, routing and condition. Check that the purge valve works properly, if equipped. Replace as needed. *An Emission Control Service. (See footnote †.)*

## 67,500 Miles (112 500 km)

- ❑ Check rear/front axle fluid level and add fluid as needed. Check constant velocity joints and axle seals for leaking.
- ❑ Rotate tires. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 5-66* for proper rotation pattern and additional information. *(See footnote +.)*

## 75,000 Miles (125 000 km)

- ❑ 5.3 L Engine Only: Inspect engine air cleaner filter if you are driving in dusty conditions. Replace filter if necessary. *An Emission Control Service. (See footnote †.)*

  6.0 L Engine: See *Part B: Owner Checks and Services on page 6-10.*
- ❑ Check rear/front axle fluid level and add fluid as needed. Check constant velocity joints and axle seals for leaking.
- ❑ Rotate tires. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 5-66* for proper rotation pattern and additional information. *(See footnote +.)*

## 82,500 Miles (137 500 km)

- ❑ Check rear/front axle fluid level and add fluid as needed. Check constant velocity joints and axle seals for leaking.
- ❑ Rotate tires. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 5-66* for proper rotation pattern and additional information. *(See footnote +.)*

## 90,000 Miles (150 000 km)

- ❑ Check rear/front axle fluid level and add fluid as needed. Check constant velocity joints and axle seals for leaking.
- ❑ Replace fuel filter. *An Emission Control Service. (See Footnote †.)*
- ❑ 5.3 L Engine Only: Replace engine air cleaner filter. *An Emission Control Service.*

  6.0 L Engine: See *Part B: Owner Checks and Services on page 6-10.*
- ❑ Rotate tires. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 5-66* for proper rotation pattern and additional information. *(See footnote +.)*

## 97,500 Miles (162 500 km)

- ❑ Check rear/front axle fluid level and add fluid as needed. Check constant velocity joints and axle seals for leaking.
- ❑ Rotate tires. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 5-66* for proper rotation pattern and additional information. *(See footnote +.)*

## 100,000 Miles (166 000 km)

- ❑ Inspect spark plug wires. *An Emission Control Service.*
- ❑ Replace spark plugs. *An Emission Control Service.*
- ❑ Change automatic transmission fluid and filter if the vehicle is mainly driven under one or more of these conditions:
  - In heavy city traffic where the outside temperature regularly reaches 90°F (32°C) or higher.
  - In hilly or mountainous terrain.
  - When doing frequent trailer towing.
  - Uses such as found in taxi, police or delivery service.
- ❑ If you haven't used your vehicle under severe service conditions listed previously and, therefore, haven't changed your automatic transmission fluid, change both the fluid and filter.
- ❑ Inspect Positive Crankcase Ventilation (PCV) valve. *An Emission Control Service.*

## 150,000 Miles (240 000 km)

- ❑ Drain, flush and refill cooling system (or every 60 months since last service, whichever occurs first). See *Engine Coolant on page 5-24* for what to use. Inspect hoses. Clean radiator, condenser, pressure cap and neck. Pressure test the cooling system and pressure cap. *An Emission Control Service.*
- ❑ Inspect engine accessory drive belt. *An Emission Control Service.*

## Part B: Owner Checks and Services

Listed in this part are owner checks and services which should be performed at the intervals specified to help ensure the safety, dependability and emission control performance of your vehicle.

Be sure any necessary repairs are completed at once. Whenever any fluids or lubricants are added to your vehicle, make sure they are the proper ones, as shown in Part D.

## At Each Fuel Fill

*It is important for you or a service station attendant to perform these underhood checks at each fuel fill.*

### Engine Oil Level Check

Check the engine oil level and add the proper oil if necessary. See *Engine Oil on page 5-13* for further details.

### Engine Coolant Level Check

Check the engine coolant level and add DEX-COOL® coolant mixture if necessary. See *Engine Coolant on page 5-24* for further details.

### Windshield Washer Fluid Level Check

Check the windshield washer fluid level in the windshield washer tank and add the proper fluid if necessary. See *Windshield Washer Fluid on page 5-37* for further details.

## At Least Once a Month

### Tire Inflation Check

Make sure tries are inflated to the correct pressures. Don't forget to check your spare tire. See *Tires on page 5-65* for further details.

### Cassette Tape Player Service

Clean cassette tape player. Cleaning should be done every 50 hours of tape play. See *Audio System(s) on page 3-64* for further details.

## At Least Twice a Year

### Restraint System Check

Make sure the safety belt reminder light and all your belts, buckles, latch plates, retractors and anchorages are working properly. Look for any other loose or damaged safety belt system parts. If you see anything that might keep a safety belt system from doing its job, have it repaired. Have any torn or frayed safety belts replaced.

Also look for any opened or broken air bag coverings, and have them repaired or replaced. (The air bag system does not need regular maintenance.)

### Wiper Blade Check

Inspect wiper blades for wear or cracking. Replace blade inserts that appear worn or damaged or that streak or miss areas of the windshield. Also see *Cleaning the Outside of Your Vehicle on page 5-93.*

### Spare Tire Check

At least twice a year, after the monthly inflation check of the spare tire determines that the spare is inflated to the correct tire inflation pressure, make sure that the spare tire is stored securely. Push, pull, and then try to rotate or turn the tire. If it moves, use the wheel wrench/ratchet to tighten the cable. See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 5-74.*

### Engine Air Cleaner Filter Restriction Indicator Check

6.0 L Engine Only: Your vehicle has an engine air cleaner filter restriction indicator located on the air cleaner in the engine compartment. The indicator lets you know when the air cleaner filter is dirty and needs to be changed. Check the indicator at least twice a year or when your engine oil is changed, whichever occurs first. See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 5-19* for more information. Inspect your air cleaner filter restriction indicator more often if the vehicle is used in dusty areas or under off road conditions.
5.3 L Engine: See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-5.*

### Weatherstrip Lubrication

Silicone grease on weatherstrips will make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak. Apply silicone grease with a clean cloth. During very cold, damp weather more frequent application may be required. See *Part D: Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-16.*

### Automatic Transmission Check

Check the transmission fluid level; add if needed. See *Automatic Transmission Fluid on page 5-21.* A fluid loss may indicate a problem. Check the system and repair if needed.

## At Least Once a Year

### Key Lock Cylinders Service

Lubricate the key lock cylinders with the lubricant specified in Part D.

### Body Lubrication Service

Lubricate all hood latch assembly, secondary latch, pivots, spring anchor, release pawl, rear compartment hinges, outer tailgate handle pivot points, latch bolt, fuel door hinge and folding seat hardware. Part D tells you what to use. More frequent lubrication may be required when exposed to a corrosive environment.

### Starter Switch Check

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**When you are doing this check, the vehicle could move suddenly. If it does, you or others could be injured. Follow the steps below.**

1. Before you start, be sure you have enough room around the vehicle.
2. Firmly apply both the parking brake and the regular brake. See *Parking Brake on page 2-24* if necessary.

   Do not use the accelerator pedal, and be ready to turn off the engine immediately if it starts.
3. Try to start the engine in each gear. The starter should work only in PARK (P) or NEUTRAL (N). If the starter works in any other position, your vehicle needs service.

### Automatic Transmission Shift Lock Control System Check

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**When you are doing this check, the vehicle could move suddenly. If it does, you or others could be injured. Follow the steps below.**

1. Before you start, be sure you have enough room around the vehicle. It should be parked on a level surface.
2. Firmly apply the parking brake. See *Parking Brake on page 2-24* if necessary.

   Be ready to apply the regular brake immediately if the vehicle begins to move.

3. With the engine off, turn the key to the RUN position, but don't start the engine. Without applying the regular brake, try to move the shift lever out of PARK (P) with normal effort. If the shift lever moves out of PARK (P), your vehicle needs service.

## Ignition Transmission Lock Check

While parked, and with the parking brake set, try to turn the ignition key to LOCK in each shift lever position.

- The key should turn to LOCK only when the shift lever is in PARK (P).
- The key should come out only in LOCK.

## Parking Brake and Automatic Transmission Park (P) Mechanism Check

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**When you are doing this check, your vehicle could begin to move. You or others could be injured and property could be damaged. Make**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**CAUTION: (Continued)**

**sure there is room in front of your vehicle in case it begins to roll. Be ready to apply the regular brake at once should the vehicle begin to move.**

Park on a fairly steep hill, with the vehicle facing downhill. Keeping your foot on the regular brake, set the parking brake.

- To check the parking brake's holding ability: With the engine running and transmission in NEUTRAL (N), slowly remove foot pressure from the regular brake pedal. Do this until the vehicle is held by the parking brake only.
- To check the PARK (P) mechanism's holding ability: With the engine running, shift to PARK (P). Then release the parking brake followed by the regular brake.

## Underbody Flushing Service

At least every spring, use plain water to flush any corrosive materials from the underbody. Take care to clean thoroughly any areas where mud and other debris can collect.

## Part C: Periodic Maintenance Inspections

Listed in this part are inspections and services which should be performed at least twice a year (for instance, each spring and fall). *You should let your dealer's service department or other qualified service center do these jobs. Make sure any necessary repairs are completed at once.*

Proper procedures to perform these services may be found in a service manual. See *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 7-10.*

## Steering and Suspension Inspection

Inspect the front and rear suspension and steering system for damaged, loose or missing parts, signs of wear or lack of lubrication. Inspect the power steering lines and hoses for proper hook-up, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc.

## Exhaust System Inspection

Inspect the complete exhaust system. Inspect the body near the exhaust system. Look for broken, damaged, missing or out-of-position parts as well as open seams, holes, loose connections or other conditions which could cause a heat build-up in the floor pan or could let exhaust fumes into the vehicle. See *Engine Exhaust on page 2-28.*

## Fuel System Inspection

Inspect the complete fuel system for damage or leaks.

## Engine Cooling System Inspection

Inspect the hoses and have them replaced if they are cracked, swollen or deteriorated. Inspect all pipes, fittings and clamps; replace as needed. Clean the outside of the radiator and air conditioning condenser. To help ensure proper operation, a pressure test of the cooling system and pressure cap is recommended at least once a year.

## Transfer Case and Front Axle (All-Wheel Drive) Inspection

Every 12 months, or at engine oil change intervals, check front axle and transfer case and add lubricant when necessary. A fluid loss could indicate a problem. Check and have it repaired, if needed. Check vent hose at transfer case for kinks and proper installation.

## Brake System Inspection

Inspect the complete system. Inspect brake lines and hoses for proper hook-up, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc. Inspect disc brake pads for wear and rotors for surface condition. Inspect other brake parts, including calipers, parking brake, etc. You may need to have your brakes inspected more often if your driving habits or conditions result in frequent braking.

## Part D: Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

Fluids and lubricants identified below by name, part number or specification may be obtained from your dealer.

| Usage | Fluid/Lubricant |
|---|---|
| Engine Oil | Engine oil with the American Petroleum Institute Certified for Gasoline Engines starburst symbol of the proper viscosity. To determine the preferred viscosity for your vehicle's engine, see *Engine Oil on page 5-13.* |
| Engine Coolant | 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and use only DEX-COOL®Coolant. See *Engine Coolant on page 5-24.* |
| Hydraulic Brake System | Delco Supreme 11 Brake Fluid or equivalent DOT-3 brake fluid. |
| Windshield Washer Solvent | GM Optikleen®Washer Solvent or equivalent. |
| Power Steering System | GM Power Steering Fluid (GM Part No. U.S. 1052884, in Canada 993294, or equivalent). |
| Automatic Transmission | DEXRON®-III Automatic Transmission Fluid. |
| Key Lock Cylinders | Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12346241, in Canada 10953474, or equivalent). |
| Chassis Lubrication | Chassis Lubricant (GM Part No. U.S. 12377985, in Canada 88901242, or equivalent) or lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI #2, Category LB or GC-LB. |
| Front and Rear Axle | SAE 75W-90 Synthetic Axle Lubricant (GM Part No. U.S. 12378261, in Canada 10953455) or equivalent meeting GM Specification 9986115. |
| Transfer Case | DEXRON®-III Automatic Transmission Fluid. |
| Front Axle Propshaft Spline or One-Piece Propshaft Spline (Two-Wheel Drive with Auto. Trans.) | Spline Lubricant, Special Lubricant (GM Part No. U.S. 12345879, in Canada 10953511) or lubricant meeting requirements of GM 9985830. |

| Usage | Fluid/Lubricant |
|---|---|
| Hood Hinges | Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12346241, in Canada 10953474, or equivalent). |
| Body Door Hinge Pins, Tailgate Hinge and Linkage, Folding Seat and Fuel Door Hinge | Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12346241, in Canada 10953474, or equivalent). |
| Outer Tailgate Handle Pivot Points | Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12346241, in Canada 10953474, or equivalent). |

| Usage | Fluid/Lubricant |
|---|---|
| Weatherstrip Conditioning | Dielectric Silicone Grease (GM Part No. U.S. 12345579, in Canada 10953014, or equivalent). |
| Weatherstrip Squeaks | Synthetic Grease with Teflon, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12371287, in Canada 10953437, or equivalent). |

## Part E: Maintenance Record

After the scheduled services are performed, record the date, odometer reading and who performed the service and any additional information from "Owner Checks and Services" or "Periodic Maintenance" on the following record pages. Also, you should retain all maintenance receipts.

### Maintenance Record

| Date | Odometer Reading | Serviced By | Maintenance Record |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |

## Maintenance Record (cont'd)

| Date | Odometer Reading | Serviced By | Maintenance Record |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |

## Maintenance Record (cont'd)

| Date | Odometer Reading | Serviced By | Maintenance Record |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |

# Section 7 Customer Assistance Information


**Customer Assistance Information** ..... 7-2
- Customer Satisfaction Procedure ..... 7-2
- Online Owner Center ..... 7-3
- Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users ..... 7-4
- Customer Assistance Offices ..... 7-4
- GM Mobility Program for Persons with Disabilities ..... 7-5
- Roadside Service ..... 7-5
- Courtesy Transportation ..... 7-7

**Reporting Safety Defects** ..... 7-9
- Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government ..... 7-9
- Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian Government ..... 7-9
- Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors ..... 7-10
- Service Publications Ordering Information ..... 7-10

# Customer Assistance Information

## Customer Satisfaction Procedure

Your satisfaction and goodwill are important to your dealer and to Cadillac. Normally, any concerns with the sales transaction or the operation of your vehicle will be resolved by your dealer's sales or service departments. Sometimes, however, despite the best intentions of all concerned, misunderstandings can occur. If your concern has not been resolved to your satisfaction, the following steps should be taken:

**STEP ONE:** Discuss your concern with a member of dealership management. Normally, concerns can be quickly resolved at that level. If the matter has already been reviewed with the sales, service or parts manager, contact the owner of the dealership or the general manager.

**STEP TWO:** If after contacting a member of dealership management, it appears your concern cannot be resolved by the dealership without further help, contact the Cadillac Customer Assistance Center, 24 hours a day, by calling 1-800-458-8006. In Canada, contact GM of Canada Customer Communication Centre in Oshawa by calling 1-800-263-3777 (English) or 1-800-263-7854 (French).

We encourage you to call the toll-free number in order to give your inquiry prompt attention. Please have the following information available to give the Customer Assistance Representative:

- Vehicle Identification Number (This is available from the vehicle registration or title, or the plate at the top left of the instrument panel and visible through the windshield.)
- Dealership name and location
- Vehicle delivery date and present mileage

When contacting Cadillac, please remember that your concern will likely be resolved at a dealer's facility. That is why we suggest you follow Step One first if you have a concern.

**STEP THREE:** Both General Motors and your dealer are committed to making sure you are completely satisfied with your new vehicle. However, if you continue to remain unsatisfied after following the procedure outlined in Steps One and Two, you should file with the GM/BBB Auto Line Program to enforce any additional rights you may have. Canadian owners refer to your Warranty and Owner Assistance Information booklet for information on the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

The BBB Auto Line Program is an out of court program administered by the Council of Better Business Bureaus to settle automotive disputes regarding vehicle repairs or the interpretation of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Although you may be required to resort to this informal dispute resolution program prior to filing a court action, use of the program is free of charge and your case will generally be heard within 40 days. If you do not agree with the decision given in your case, you may reject it and proceed with any other venue for relief available to you.

You may contact the BBB using the toll-free telephone number or write them at the following address:

BBB Auto Line
Council of Better Business Bureaus, Inc.
4200 Wilson Boulevard
Suite 800
Arlington, VA 22203-1804

Telephone: 1-800-955-5100

This program is available in all 50 states and the District of Columbia. Eligibility is limited by vehicle age, mileage and other factors. General Motors reserves the right to change eligibility limitations and/or discontinue its participation in this program.

## Online Owner Center

The Owner Center at MyGMLink is a resource for your GM ownership needs. You can find your specific vehicle information all in one place.

**The Owner Center allows you to:**

- Get e-mail service reminders.
- Access information about your specific vehicle, including tips and videos and an electronic version of this owner's manual.
- Keep track of your vehicle's service history and maintenance schedule.
- Find GM dealers for service nationwide.
- Receive special promotions and privileges only available to MyGMLink members.

Refer to the web for updated information.

To register your vehicle visit www.MyGMLink.com.

## Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users

To assist customers who are deaf, hard of hearing, or speech-impaired and who use Text Telephones (TTYs), Cadillac has TTY equipment available at its Customer Assistance Center. Any TTY user can communicate with Cadillac by dialing: 1-800-833-CMCC (2622). (TTY users in Canada can dial 1-800-263-3830.)

## Customer Assistance Offices

Cadillac encourages customers to call the toll-free number for assistance. If a U.S. customer wishes to write to Cadillac, the letter should be addressed to Cadillac's Customer Assistance Center.

### United States

Cadillac Customer Assistance Center
Cadillac Motor Car Division
P.O. Box 33169
Detroit, MI 48232-5169

1-800-458-8006
1-800-833-2622 (For Text Telephone devices (TTYs))
Roadside Assistance: 1-800-882-1112
Fax Number: 313-381-0022

From Puerto Rico:
1-800-496-9992 (English)
1-800-496-9993 (Spanish)
Fax Number: 313-381-0022

From U.S. Virgin Islands:
1-800-496-9994
Fax Number: 313-381-0022

### Canada

General Motors of Canada Limited
Customer Communication Centre, 163-005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

1-800-263-3777 (English)
1-800-263-7854 (French)
1-800-263-3830 (For Text Telephone devices (TTYs))
Roadside Assistance: 1-800-882-1112

### All Overseas Locations

Please contact the local General Motors Business Unit.

### Mexico, Central America and Caribbean Islands/Countries (Except Puerto Rico and U.S. Virgin Islands)

General Motors de Mexico, S. de R.L. de C.V.
Customer Assistance Center
Paseo de la Reforma # 2740
Col. Lomas de Bezares
C.P. 11910, Mexico, D.F.
01-800-508-0000
Long Distance: 011-52-53 29 0 800

## GM Mobility Program for Persons with Disabilities



This program, available to qualified applicants, can reimburse you up to $1,000 toward aftermarket driver or passenger adaptive equipment you may require for your vehicle (hand controls, wheelchair/scooter lifts, etc.).

This program can also provide you with free resource information, such as area driver assessment centers and mobility equipment installers. The program is available for a limited period of time from the date of vehicle purchase/lease. See your dealer for more details or call the GM Mobility Assistance Center at 1-800-323-9935. Text telephone (TTY) users, call 1-800-833-9935.

GM of Canada also has a Mobility Program. Call 1-800-GM-DRIVE (463-7483) for details. All TTY users call 1-800-263-3830.

## Roadside Service

Cadillac's exceptional Roadside Service is more than an auto club or towing service. It provides every Cadillac owner with the advantage of contacting a Cadillac advisor and, where available, a Cadillac trained dealer technician who can provide on-site service.

Each technician travels with a specially equipped service vehicle complete with the necessary Cadillac parts and tools required to handle most roadside repairs.

Cadillac Roadside Service® can be reached by dialing 1-800-882-1112, 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. This service is provided at no charge for any warranty-covered situation and for a nominal charge if the Cadillac is no longer under warranty. Roadside Service is available only in the United States and Canada.

## Cadillac Owner Privileges™

Roadside Service provides several Cadillac Owner Privileges™ at "no charge," throughout your *Cadillac Warranty Period – 48 months/50,000 miles (80 000 km).*

Emergency Road Service is performed on site for the following situations:

- Towing Service
- Battery Jump Starting
- Lock Out Assistance
- Fuel Delivery
- Flat Tire Change (Covers change only)
- Trip Interruption – If your trip is interrupted due to a warranty failure, incidental expenses may be reimbursed during the 48 months/50,000 miles (80 000 km) warranty period. Items covered are hotel, meals and rental car.

## Roadside Service Availability

Wherever you drive in the United States or Canada, an advisor is available to assist you over the phone. A dealer technician, if available, can travel to your location within a 30 mile (50 km) radius of a participating Cadillac dealership. If beyond this radius, we will arrange to have your car towed to the nearest Cadillac dealership.

## Reaching Roadside Service

Dial the toll-free Roadside Service number: 1-800-882-1112. An experienced Roadside Service Advisor will assist you and request the following information:

- A description of the problem
- Name, home address, home telephone number
- Location of your Cadillac and number you are calling from
- The model year, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), mileage and date of delivery

## Roadside Service for the Hearing or Speech Impaired

Roadside Service is prepared to assist owners who have hearing difficulties or are speech impaired. Cadillac has installed special telecommunication devices called Text Telephone (TTY) in the Roadside Service Center.

Any customer who has access to a (TTY) or a conventional teletypewriter can communicate with Cadillac by dialing from the United States or Canada 1-888-889-2438 – daily, 24 hours.

## Courtesy Transportation

Cadillac has always exemplified quality and value in its offering of motor vehicles. To enhance your ownership experience, we and our participating dealers are proud to offer Courtesy Transportation, a customer support program for new vehicles.

The Courtesy Transportation program is offered to retail purchase/lease customers in conjunction with the Bumper-to-Bumper coverage provided by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Several transportation options are available when warranty repairs are required. This will reduce your inconvenience during warranty repairs.

## Plan Ahead When Possible

When your vehicle requires warranty service, you should contact your dealer and request an appointment. By scheduling a service appointment and advising your service consultant of your transportation needs, your dealer can help minimize your inconvenience.

If your vehicle cannot be scheduled into the service department immediately, keep driving it until it can be scheduled for service, unless, of course, the problem is safety-related. If it is, please call your dealership, let them know this, and ask for instructions.

If the dealer requests that you simply drop the vehicle off for service, you are urged to do so as early in the work day as possible to allow for same day repair.

## Transportation Options

Warranty service can generally be completed while you wait. However, if you are unable to wait Cadillac helps minimize your inconvenience by providing several transportation options. Depending on the circumstances, your dealer can offer you one of the following:

### Shuttle Service

Participating dealers can provide you with shuttle service to get you to your destination with minimal interruption of your daily schedule. This includes a one way shuttle ride to a destination up to 10 miles from the dealership.

### Public Transportation or Fuel Reimbursement

If your vehicle requires overnight warranty repairs, reimbursement up to $30 per day (five days maximum) may be available for the use of public transportation such as taxi or bus. In addition, should you arrange transportation through a friend or relative, reimbursement for reasonable fuel expenses up to $10 per day (five day maximum) may be available. Claim amounts should reflect actual costs and be supported by original receipts.

## Courtesy Rental Vehicle

When your vehicle is unavailable due to overnight warranty repairs, your dealer may arrange to provide you with a courtesy rental vehicle or reimburse you for a rental vehicle you obtained, at actual cost, up to a maximum of $37.00 per day supported by receipts. This requires that you sign and complete a rental agreement and meet state, local and rental vehicle provider requirements. Requirements vary and may include minimum age requirements, insurance coverage, credit card, etc. You are responsible for fuel usage charges and may also be responsible for taxes, levies, usage fees, excessive mileage or rental usage beyond the completion of the repair.

Generally it is not possible to provide a like-vehicle as a courtesy rental.

## Additional Program Information

Courtesy Transportation is available during the Bumper-to-Bumper warranty coverage period, but it *is not* part of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. A separate booklet entitled *Warranty and Owner Assistance Information* furnished with each new vehicle provides detailed warranty coverage information.

Courtesy Transportation is available only at participating dealers and all program options, such as shuttle service, may not be available at every dealer. Please contact you dealer for specific information about availability. All Courtesy Transportation arrangements will be administered by appropriate dealer personnel.

**Canadian Vehicles:** For warranty repairs during the Complete Vehicle Coverage period of the General Motors of Canada New Vehicle Limited Warranty, alternative transportation may be available under the Courtesy Transportation Program. Please consult your dealer for details.

*General Motors reserves the right to unilaterally modify, change or discontinue Courtesy Transportation at any time and to resolve all questions of claim eligibility pursuant to the terms and conditions described herein at its sole discretion.*

# Reporting Safety Defects

## Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), in addition to notifying General Motors.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer or General Motors.

To contact NHTSA, you may either call the Auto Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-800-424-9393 (or 366-0123 in the Washington, D.C. area) or write to:

NHTSA, U.S. Department of Transportation
Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from the hotline.

## Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian Government

If you live in Canada, and you believe that your vehicle has a safety defect, you should immediately notify Transport Canada, in addition to notifying General Motors of Canada Limited. You may write to:

Transport Canada
330 Sparks Street
Tower C
Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0N5

## Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors

In addition to notifying NHTSA (or Transport Canada) in a situation like this, we certainly hope you'll notify us. Please call us at 1-800-458-8006, or write:

Cadillac Customer Assistance Center
Cadillac Motor Car Division
P.O. Box 33169
Detroit, MI 48232-5169

In Canada, please call us at 1-800-263-3777 (English) or 1-800-263-7854 (French). Or, write:

Customer Communication Centre, 163-005
General Motors of Canada Limited
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

## Service Publications Ordering Information

### Service Manuals

Service Manuals have the diagnosis and repair information on engines, transmission, axle, suspension, brakes, electrical, steering, body, etc.

RETAIL SELL PRICE: $120.00

### Transmission, Transaxle, Transfer Case Unit Repair Manual

This manual provides information on unit repair service procedures, adjustments and specifications for GM transmissions, transaxles and transfer cases.

RETAIL SELL PRICE: $50.00

## Service Bulletins

Service Bulletins give technical service information needed to knowledgeably service General Motors cars and trucks. Each bulletin contains instructions to assist in the diagnosis and service of your vehicle.

In Canada, information pertaining to Product Service Bulletins can be obtained by contacting your General Motors dealer or by calling 1-800-GM-DRIVE (1-800-463-7483).

## Owner's Information

Owner publications are written specifically for owners and intended to provide basic operational information about the vehicle. The owner's manual will include the Maintenance Schedule for all models.

Owner's Manual

RETAIL SELL PRICE: $25.00

## Current and Past Model Order Forms

Service Publications are available for current and past model GM vehicles. To request an order form, please specify year and model name of the vehicle.

**ORDER TOLL FREE: 1-800-551-4123**
**Monday-Friday 8:00 AM - 6:00 PM**
**Eastern Time**

For Credit Card Orders Only
(VISA-MasterCard-Discover), visit Helm, Inc. on the World Wide Web at: www.helminc.com

Or you can write to:

Helm, Incorporated
P. O. Box 07130
Detroit, MI 48207

Prices are subject to change without notice and without incurring obligation. Allow ample time for delivery.

Note to Canadian Customers: All listed prices are quoted in U.S. funds. Canadian residents are to make checks payable in U.S. funds.

## NOTES

# Supplement to the 2003 Yukon Denali, Yukon XL Denali, Escalade, Escalade ESV, Escalade EXT Owner's Manual

*The following information Supplements the "Changing a Flat Tire" information in Section 5 of your owner's manual.*

## Secondary Latch System

Your vehicle has an underbody mounted tire hoist assembly equipped with a secondary latch system. It's designed to stop the spare tire from suddenly falling off your vehicle. For the secondary latch to work, the spare or flat tire must be installed with the valve stem pointing down.

Please refer to your vehicle's jacking label for additional information.

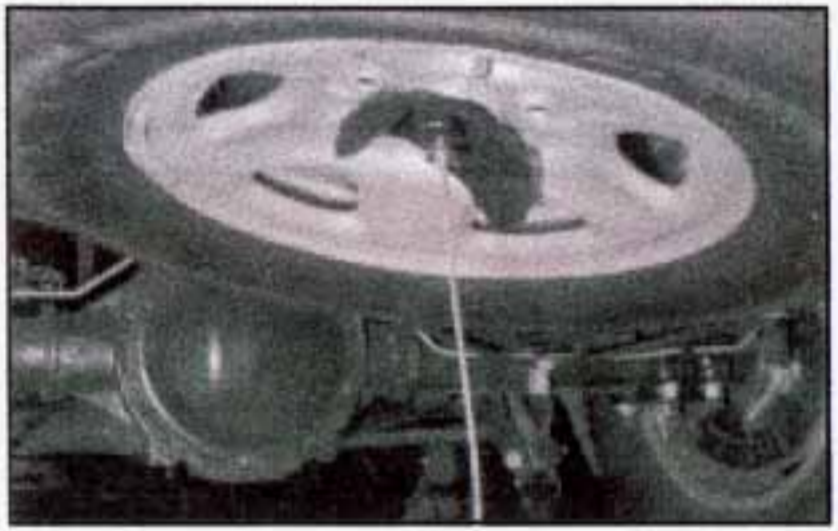
**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Before beginning this procedure read all the instructions. Failure to read and follow the instructions could damage the hoist assembly and you and others could get hurt. Read and follow the instructions listed below.**

If the spare tire does not lower to the ground, the secondary latch is engaging causing the tire not to lower. If this ever happens, do the following to release the spare tire from the secondary latch:

Litho in U.S.A.
Part No. 15190862

©Copyright General Motors Corporation 06/24/02
All Rights Reserved

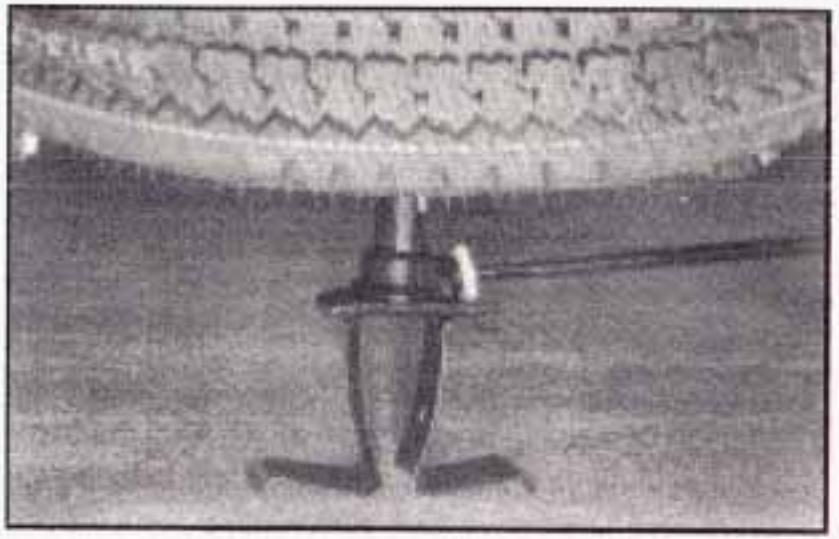


1. Check under the vehicle to see if the cable end is visible.
2. If the cable is not visible proceed to Step 6.

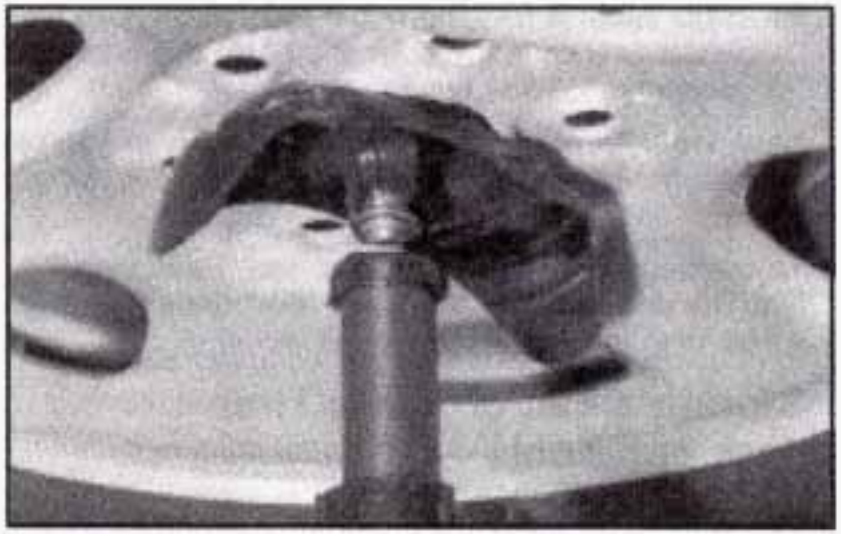
   If it is visible, first try to tighten the cable by turning the wheel wrench clockwise until you hear two clicks or feel it skip twice. You cannot overtighten the cable.
3. Loosen the cable by turning the wrench counterclockwise three or four turns.
4. Repeat this procedure at least two times. If the spare tire lowers to the ground, continue with Step 5 of "Removing the Spare Tire and Tools" under "Changing a Flat Tire" in Section 5.
5. Turn the wrench counterclockwise until approximately six inches (15 cm) of cable is exposed.



6. Stand the wheel blocks on their shortest ends, with the backs facing each other.



7. Place the bottom edge of the jack on the wheel blocks, separating them so that the jack is balanced securely.



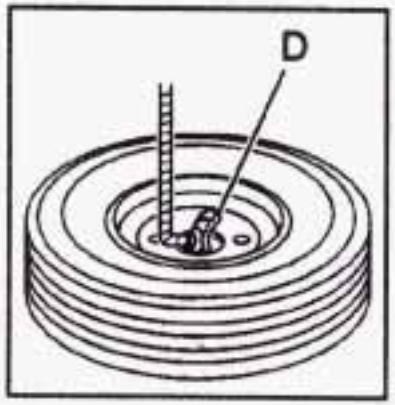
8. Attach the jack handle, extension, and wheel wrench to the jack and place it (with the wheel blocks) under the vehicle towards the front of the rear bumper. Position the center lift point of the jack under the center of the spare tire.
9. Turn the wrench clockwise to raise the jack until it lifts the end fitting.
10. Continue raising the jack until the spare tire stops moving upward and is held firmly in place. The secondary latch has released and the spare tire is balancing on the jack.
11. Lower the jack by turning the wheel wrench counterclockwise. Keep lowering the jack until the spare tire slides off the jack or is hanging by the cable.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

**Someone standing too close during the procedure could be injured by the jack. If the spare tire does not slide off the jack completely, make sure no one is behind you or on either side of you as you pull the jack out from the spare.**

12. Disconnect the jack handle from the jack and carefully remove the jack. Use one hand to push against the spare while firmly pulling the jack out from under the spare tire with the other hand.

    If the spare tire is hanging from the cable, insert the hoist handle, extension and wheel wrench into the hoist shaft hole in the bumper and turn the wheel wrench counterclockwise to lower the spare the rest of the way.




13. Tilt the retainer at the end of the cable and pull it through the wheel opening. Pull the tire out from under the vehicle.

14. If the cable is hanging under the vehicle, turn the wheel wrench in the hoist shaft hole in the bumper clockwise to raise the cable back up.

Have the hoist assembly inspected as soon as you can. You will not be able to store a spare or flat tire using the hoist assembly until it has been replaced.

To continue changing the flat tire, see "Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire" under "Changing a Flat Tire" in Section 5.

## Storing a Flat or Spare Tire, Jack and Tools

When storing a flat or spare tire, see "Storing a Flat or Spare Tire, Jack and Tools" in the owner's manual, however the valve stem must point down.

# A


Accessory Power Outlets ..... 3-20
Adding Washer Fluid ..... 5-38
Additional Program Information ..... 7-8
Additives, Fuel ..... 5-6
Add-On Electrical Equipment ..... 5-99
Adjustable Throttle and Brake Pedal ..... 2-20
Adjusting the Speakers (Balance/Fade) ..... 3-69
After Off-Road Driving ..... 4-30
Air Bag
  Passenger Status Indicator ..... 3-34
  Readiness Light ..... 3-34
Air Bag System, Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) ..... 1-73
Air Cleaner/Filter, Engine ..... 5-19
Air Conditioning ..... 3-26
All Overseas Locations ..... 7-4
All-Wheel Drive ..... 5-49
Aluminum or Chrome-Plated Wheels ..... 5-97
AM ..... 3-97
Analog Clock ..... 3-21
Antenna, Diversity ..... 3-99
Antenna, XM™ Satellite Radio System ..... 3-99
Anti-lock Brake System ..... 4-7
Anti-Lock Brake, System Warning Light ..... 3-38
Appearance Care ..... 5-90
  Care of Safety Belts ..... 5-92
  Chemical Paint Spotting ..... 5-96
  Cleaning the Inside of Your Vehicle ..... 5-90
  Cleaning the Outside of Your Vehicle ..... 5-93
  Finish Damage ..... 5-95
  GM Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials ..... 5-96
  Sheet Metal Damage ..... 5-95
  Underbody Maintenance ..... 5-95
  Weatherstrips ..... 5-92
Approaching a Hill ..... 4-22
Ashtrays ..... 3-21
Audio Output ..... 3-88
Audio System(s) ..... 3-64
Audio Systems
  Audio Steering Wheel Controls ..... 3-96
  Care of Your Cassette Tape Player ..... 3-97
  Care of Your CD and DVD Player ..... 3-98
  Care of Your CD Changer ..... 3-98
  Care of Your CDs and DVDs ..... 3-98
  CD Changer ..... 3-93
  Diversity Antenna System ..... 3-99
  Radio with Cassette and CD ..... 3-65
  Rear Seat Audio (RSA) ..... 3-91
  Setting the Time ..... 3-64
  Theft-Deterrent Feature ..... 3-95
  Understanding Radio Reception ..... 3-97
  XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System ..... 3-99

Automatic Climate Control System ..... 3-22
Automatic Headlamp System ..... 3-14
Automatic Level Control ..... 4-49
Automatic Transmission
Fluid ..... 5-21
Operation ..... 2-22
Automatic Transmission Check ..... 6-11
Automatic Transmission Shift Lock Control
System Check ..... 6-12

# B

Backing Up ..... 4-57
Battery ..... 5-42
BATTERY NOT CHARGING ..... 3-58
Battery Replacement ..... 2-7
Battery Run-Down Protection ..... 3-18
Before Leaving on a Long Trip ..... 4-37
Before You Drive ..... 3-80
Before You Go Off-Roading ..... 4-17
Bench Seat ..... 1-17
Bench Seat Split (50/50) ..... 1-11
Bench Seat, Split (60/40) ..... 1-9
Body Lubrication Service ..... 6-12
Brake
Parking ..... 2-24
System Inspection ..... 6-15
System Warning Light ..... 3-37
Brake Adjustment ..... 5-42
Brake Fluid ..... 5-39
Brake Pedal, Throttle ..... 2-20
Brake Pedal Travel ..... 5-42
Brake Wear ..... 5-41
Brakes ..... 5-39
Braking ..... 4-6
Braking in Emergencies ..... 4-8
Break-In, New Vehicle ..... 2-18
Bucket Seats, Rear ..... 1-22
Bulb Replacement ..... 5-56
Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL) ..... 5-61
Front Turn Signal, Sidemarker and Daytime
Running Lamps ..... 5-60
Halogen Bulbs ..... 5-56
Headlamp Aiming ..... 5-52
Headlamps ..... 5-57
High Intensity Discharge (HID) Lighting ..... 5-56
Replacement Bulbs ..... 5-63
Taillamps ..... 5-61
Buying New Tires ..... 5-68

# C


Cadillac Owner Privileges™ ..... 7-6
California Fuel ..... 5-6
Canada ..... 7-4
Canadian Owners ..... ii
Capacities and Specifications ..... 5-112
Carbon Monoxide ..... 4-40, 4-50, 2-13, 2-28
Care of Safety Belts ..... 5-92
Care of Your
  Cassette Tape Player ..... 3-97
  CD and DVD Player ..... 3-98
  CD Changer ..... 3-98
  CDs and DVDs ..... 3-98
Cargo Cover ..... 2-44
Cassette Tape Messages ..... 3-77
Cassette Tape Player Service ..... 6-10
CD Adapter Kits ..... 3-77
CD Changer ..... 3-93
CD Functions ..... 3-94
Center Console Storage Area ..... 2-41
Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL) ..... 5-61
Center Instrument Panel Fuse Block ..... 5-103
Center Passenger Position, Safety Belts ..... 1-39
Chains, Tires ..... 5-73
CHANGE ENGINE OIL ..... 3-57
Charging System Light ..... 3-36
Check
  Engine Light ..... 3-41
Check Engine Light ..... 3-41
CHECK OIL LEVEL ..... 3-57
CHECK WASHER FLUID ..... 3-60
Checking Brake Fluid ..... 5-40
Checking Coolant ..... 5-26
Checking Engine Oil ..... 5-14
Checking Things Under the Hood ..... 5-10
Checking Your Restraint Systems ..... 1-87
Chemical Paint Spotting ..... 5-96
Child Restraints
  Child Restraint Systems ..... 1-54
  Infants and Young Children ..... 1-50
  Lower Anchorages and Top Tethers for Children (LATCH System) ..... 1-62
  Older Children ..... 1-48
  Securing a Child Restraint Designed for the LATCH System ..... 1-64
  Securing a Child Restraint in a Center Rear Seat Position ..... 1-66
  Securing a Child Restraint in a Rear Outside Seat Position ..... 1-64
  Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position ..... 1-68
  Top Strap ..... 1-58
  Top Strap Anchor Location ..... 1-59
  Where to Put the Restraint ..... 1-57
Cigarette Lighter ..... 3-21

Cleaning
Inside of Your Vehicle ..... 5-90
Outside of Your Vehicle ..... 5-93
Underbody Maintenance ..... 5-95
Video Screen ..... 3-99
Weatherstrips ..... 5-92
Cleaning Exterior Lamps/Lenses ..... 5-93
Cleaning the Mirror ..... 2-32
Climate Control System,
Automatic ..... 3-22
Climate Control System
Climate Controls Personalization ..... 3-30
Outlet Adjustment ..... 3-27
Rear ..... 3-28
Clock ..... 3-21
Comfort Controls ..... 3-22
Compact Disc Changer Errors ..... 3-95
Compact Disc Messages ..... 3-79
Compass Calibration ..... 2-32
Compass Variance ..... 2-31
Content Theft-Deterrent ..... 2-16
Control of a Vehicle ..... 4-5
Convenience Net ..... 2-43
Coolant
Engine Temperature Gage ..... 3-39
Heater, Engine ..... 2-21
Surge Tank Pressure Cap ..... 5-27
Cooling System ..... 5-31
Cruise Control ..... 3-10
Cruise Control Light ..... 3-45
Cupholder(s) ..... 2-41
Current and Past Model Order Forms ..... 7-11
Customer Assistance Information
Courtesy Transportation ..... 7-7
Customer Assistance for Text
Telephone (TTY) Users ..... 7-4
Customer Assistance Offices ..... 7-4
Customer Satisfaction Procedure ..... 7-2
GM Mobility Program for Persons with
Disabilities ..... 7-5
Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors .... 7-10
Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian
Government ..... 7-9
Reporting Safety Defects to the United
States Government ..... 7-9
Roadside Service ..... 7-5
Service Publications Ordering Information ..... 7-10

# D

Daytime Running Lamps ..... 3-15
Defensive Driving ..... 4-2
Defogging and Defrosting ..... 3-26
Delayed Locking ..... 2-9
Diversity Antenna ..... 3-99
Doing Your Own Service Work ..... 5-4
Dome Lamps ..... 3-17

Door
Delayed Locking ..... 2-9
Locks ..... 2-8
Power Door Locks ..... 2-9
Programmable Automatic Door Locks ..... 2-10
Rear Door Security Locks ..... 2-12
Driver
Position, Safety Belt ..... 1-30
DRIVER DOOR AJAR ..... 3-61
Driver Information Center (DIC) ..... 3-47
DIC Operation and Displays ..... 3-47
DIC Warnings and Messages ..... 3-56
Driving
At Night ..... 4-31
City ..... 4-35
Defensive ..... 4-2
Drunken ..... 4-2
Freeway ..... 4-36
Hill and Mountain Roads ..... 4-38
In Rain and on Wet Roads ..... 4-32
Winter ..... 4-40
Driving Across an Incline ..... 4-27
Driving Downhill ..... 4-25
Driving in Mud, Sand, Snow or Ice ..... 4-29
Driving in Water ..... 4-30
Driving On Grades ..... 4-57
Driving on Off-Road Hills ..... 4-21
Driving on Snow or Ice ..... 4-40
Driving Through Deep Standing Water ..... 4-34
Driving Through Flowing Water ..... 4-34
Driving Uphill ..... 4-23
Driving with a Trailer ..... 4-56
DVD
Care of Your ..... 3-98
Care of Your DVD Player ..... 3-98
Cleaning the Video Screen ..... 3-99
Distortion ..... 3-96
Rear Seat Entertainment System ..... 3-80
DVD Player ..... 3-80

# E

Easy Exit Seat ..... 2-48
Electrical System ..... 5-99
Add-On Equipment ..... 5-99
Fuses and Circuit Breakers ..... 5-100
Power Windows and Other Power Options ..... 5-99
Windshield Wiper Fuses ..... 5-99
Electrochromic Mirror Operation ..... 2-30
Emissions Inspection and Maintenance
Programs ..... 3-43
Engine
Air Cleaner/Filter ..... 5-19
Battery ..... 5-42
Check and Service Engine Soon Light ..... 3-41
Coolant ..... 5-24
Coolant Heater ..... 2-21
Coolant Temperature Gage ..... 3-39
Cooling System Inspection ..... 6-14
Engine Compartment Overview ..... 5-12

Engine (cont.)
Exhaust ..... 2-28
Fan Noise ..... 5-36
Oil ..... 5-13
Overheating ..... 5-28
Starting ..... 2-19
Engine Air Cleaner Filter Restriction Indicator Check ..... 6-11
ENGINE COOLANT HOT ..... 3-57
Engine Coolant Level Check ..... 6-10
Engine Oil Additives ..... 5-17
Engine Oil and Chassis Lubrication Scheduled Maintenance ..... 6-5
Engine Oil Level Check ..... 6-10
ENGINE OVERHEATED ..... 3-57
Entering or Exiting the Third Row Seats ..... 1-7
Entertainment System
Cleaning the Video Screen ..... 3-99
DVD Distortion ..... 3-96
Entry Lighting ..... 3-17
Environmental Concerns ..... 4-19
Erasing HomeLink® Buttons ..... 2-39
Exit Lighting ..... 3-17
Extender, Safety Belt ..... 1-47
Exterior Lamps ..... 3-13

# F

Fabric/Carpet ..... 5-91
Filter
Engine Air Cleaner ..... 5-19
Finding a PTY Station (RDS and XM™) ..... 3-70
Finding a Station ..... 3-67
Finish Care ..... 5-93
Finish Damage ..... 5-95
Flash-to-Pass ..... 3-8
Flat Tire ..... 5-74
Flat Tire, Changing ..... 5-74
Fluid
Automatic Transmission ..... 5-21
Power Steering ..... 5-37
Windshield Washer ..... 5-37
FM Stereo ..... 3-97
Fog Lamps ..... 3-15
Folding the Seatback ..... 1-17
Folding the Seatbacks ..... 1-12, 1-22
Folding the Seatbacks (60/40 Split Bench Seat) .... 1-9
Following Distance ..... 4-56
Footnotes ..... 6-5
Front Axle ..... 5-49

Fuel ..... 5-5
Additives ..... 5-6
California Fuel ..... 5-6
Filling a Portable Fuel Container ..... 5-9
Filling Your Tank ..... 5-7
Fuels in Foreign Countries ..... 5-6
Gage ..... 3-45
Gasoline Octane ..... 5-5
Gasoline Specifications ..... 5-5
Low Warning Light ..... 3-46
System Inspection ..... 6-14
Fuel Information Button ..... 3-49
FUEL LEVEL LOW ..... 3-60
Fuses
Fuses and Circuit Breakers ..... 5-100
Windshield Wiper ..... 5-99

# G

Gage
Engine Coolant Temperature ..... 3-39
Fuel ..... 3-45
Oil Pressure ..... 3-43
Speedometer ..... 3-33
Tachometer ..... 3-33
Transmission Temperature ..... 3-40
Voltmeter Gage ..... 3-37
Garage Door Opener ..... 2-37
Gasoline
Octane ..... 5-5
Specifications ..... 5-5
Gate Operator and Canadian Programming ..... 2-39
Getting Familiar with Off-Road Driving ..... 4-19
Glass Surfaces ..... 5-92
Glove Box ..... 2-41
GM Mobility Program for Persons with
Disabilities ..... 7-5

# H

Hazard Warning Flashers ..... 3-5
Head Restraints ..... 1-6
Headlamp
Aiming ..... 5-52
Horizontal Aiming ..... 5-53
Vertical Aiming ..... 5-54
Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer ..... 3-8
Headlamps ..... 5-57
Bulb Replacement ..... 5-56
Front Turn Signal, Sidemarker and Daytime
Running Lamps ..... 5-60
Halogen Bulbs ..... 5-56
High Intensity Discharge (HID) Lighting ..... 5-56
Headphones ..... 3-86
Heated Seats ..... 1-4
Heating ..... 3-26

Highway Hypnosis ..... 4-38
Hill and Mountain Roads ..... 4-38
Hitches ..... 4-55
HomeLink Transmitter, Programming ..... 2-37
HomeLink® Transmitter ..... 2-37
Hood
  Checking Things Under ..... 5-10
  Release ..... 5-10
Horn ..... 3-6
How the System Works ..... 3-19
How to Add Coolant to the Coolant
  Surge Tank ..... 5-32
How to Add Fluid ..... 5-23
How to Check ..... 5-21, 5-66
How to Check Lubricant ..... 5-51
How to Check Power Steering Fluid ..... 5-37
How to Use This Manual ..... ii
How to Wear Safety Belts Properly ..... 1-30
Hydroplaning ..... 4-34

# I

If No Steam Is Coming From Your Engine ..... 5-30
If Steam Is Coming From Your Engine ..... 5-29
If the Light is Flashing ..... 3-42
If the Light Is On Steady ..... 3-42
If You Are Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice or Snow ..... 4-44
If You Do Decide To Pull A Trailer ..... 4-51
If You're Caught in a Blizzard ..... 4-42
Ignition Positions ..... 2-18
Ignition Transmission Lock Check ..... 6-13
Illuminated Visor Vanity Mirrors ..... 2-15
Infants and Young Children, Restraints ..... 1-50
Inflation -- Tire Pressure ..... 5-66
Inspection
  Brake System ..... 6-15
  Engine Cooling System ..... 6-14
  Exhaust System ..... 6-14
  Fuel System ..... 6-14
  Part C - Periodic Maintenance ..... 6-14
  Steering and Suspension ..... 6-14
Instrument Panel
  Cluster ..... 3-32
  Overview ..... 3-4
Instrument Panel Brightness ..... 3-16
Instrument Panel Fuse Block ..... 5-100
Interior Lamps ..... 3-16
Interior Plastic Components ..... 5-91
Introduction
  Transfer Case (All-Wheel Drive) Inspection ..... 6-15

# J

Jump Starting ..... 5-43

# K

Key Lock Cylinders Service ..... 6-12
Keyless Entry System ..... 2-4
Keys ..... 2-3

# L


Lamps
- Exterior ..... 3-13
- Interior ..... 3-16

Lamps On Reminder ..... 3-15
Lap-Shoulder Belt ..... 1-31
LATCH System
- Child Restraints ..... 1-62
- Securing a Child Restraint Designed for the LATCH System ..... 1-64

Leather ..... 5-91
Leaving Your Vehicle With the Engine Running ... 2-26
LEFT REAR DOOR AJAR ..... 3-62
Liftgate/Liftglass ..... 2-13
Liftglass/Liftgate ..... 2-13
Light
- Air Bag Readiness ..... 3-34
- Anti-Lock Brake System Warning ..... 3-38
- Brake System Warning ..... 3-37
- Charging System ..... 3-36
- Cruise Control ..... 3-45
- Low Fuel Warning ..... 3-46
- Malfunction Indicator ..... 3-41
- Passenger Air Bag Status Indicator ..... 3-34
- Safety Belt Reminder ..... 3-33
- Security ..... 3-44
- Tow/Haul Mode ..... 3-45
- Traction Off ..... 3-39

Listening to a DVD ..... 3-80
Loading Your Vehicle ..... 4-48
Loading Your Vehicle for Off-Road Driving ..... 4-18
Lockout Protection ..... 2-12
Locks
- Delayed Locking ..... 2-9
- Door ..... 2-8
- Lockout Protection ..... 2-12
- Power Door ..... 2-9
- Programmable Automatic Door Locks ..... 2-10
- Rear Door Security Locks ..... 2-12

Loss of Control ..... 4-16
LOW COOLANT LEVEL ..... 3-57
Low Fuel Warning Light ..... 3-46
Luggage Carrier ..... 2-42
Lumbar
- Power Controls ..... 1-3


# M


Maintenance, Normal Replacement Parts ..... 5-111
Maintenance Schedule
- At Each Fuel Fill ..... 6-10
- At Least Once a Month ..... 6-10
- At Least Once a Year ..... 6-12
- At Least Twice a Year ..... 6-11
- Brake System Inspection ..... 6-15
- Engine Cooling System Inspection ..... 6-14
- Exhaust System Inspection ..... 6-14
- Fuel System Inspection ..... 6-14
- How This Section is Organized ..... 6-3

Maintenance Schedule (cont.)
Introduction ..... 6-2
Maintenance Requirements ..... 6-2
Part A - Scheduled Maintenance Services ..... 6-4
Part B - Owner Checks and Services ..... 6-10
Part C - Periodic Maintenance Inspections ..... 6-14
Part D - Recommended Fluids and Lubricants ..... 6-16
Part E - Maintenance Record ..... 6-18
Scheduled Maintenance ..... 6-5
Steering and Suspension Inspection ..... 6-14
Using Your ..... 6-4
Your Vehicle and the Environment ..... 6-2
Maintenance When Trailer Towing ..... 4-58
Making Turns ..... 4-57
Malfunction Indicator Light ..... 3-41
Matching Transmitter(s) to Your Vehicle ..... 2-6
Memory Seat ..... 2-47
Message
DIC Warnings and Messages ..... 3-56
Mexico, Central America and Caribbean Islands/Countries (Except Puerto Rico and U.S. Virgin Islands) ..... 7-4
Mirrors
Automatic Dimming Rearview with OnStar®, Compass and Temperature Display ..... 2-30
Outside Automatic Dimming Mirror with Curb View Assist ..... 2-34
Outside Convex Mirror ..... 2-33
Outside Heated Mirrors ..... 2-34
Mirrors (cont.)
Outside Power Mirrors ..... 2-33
MyGMLink.com ..... 7-3

## N

New Vehicle Break-In ..... 2-18
Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts ..... 5-111

## O

Odometer ..... 3-33
Off-Road Recovery ..... 4-14
Oil
Engine ..... 5-13
Pressure Gage ..... 3-43
OIL LIFE RESET ..... 3-57
OIL PRESSURE LOW ..... 3-57
Older Children, Restraints ..... 1-48
Online Owner Center ..... 7-3
OnStar® Personal Calling ..... 2-36
OnStar® Services ..... 2-35
OnStar® Steering Wheel Controls ..... 2-36
OnStar® System ..... 2-35
OnStar® Virtual Advisor ..... 2-36
Operating Your All-Wheel-Drive Vehicle Off Paved Roads ..... 4-17
Other Warning Devices ..... 3-6
Outlet Adjustment ..... 3-27

Outside
Automatic Dimming Mirror with Curb View Assist ... 2-34
Convex Mirror ... 2-33
Heated Mirrors ... 2-34
Power Mirrors ... 2-33
Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode ... 5-28
Owners, Canadian ... ii
Owner's Information ... 7-11

# P

Park Aid ... 3-18
Park (P)
Shifting Out of ... 2-27
Parking
Assist ... 3-18
Brake ... 2-24
Over Things That Burn ... 2-28
Parking Brake and Automatic Transmission
Park (P) Mechanism Check ... 6-13
Parking on Hills ... 4-58
Park (P)
Shifting Into ... 2-25
Part A - Scheduled Maintenance Services ... 6-4
Part B - Owner Checks and Services ... 6-10
Part C - Periodic Maintenance Inspections ... 6-14
Part D - Recommended Fluids and Lubricants ... 6-16
Part E - Maintenance Record ... 6-18
Passenger Air Bag Indicator ... 2-32
Passenger Air Bag Status Indicator ... 3-34
PASSENGER DOOR AJAR ... 3-62
Passenger Sensing System ... 1-81
Passing ... 4-14, 4-56
Passlock® ... 2-17
Personalization Button ... 3-50
Personalization, Climate Controls ... 3-30
Plan Ahead When Possible ... 7-7
Playing a Cassette Tape ... 3-75
Playing a Compact Disc ... 3-78
Playing the Radio ... 3-66
Power
Accessory Outlets ... 3-20
Door Locks ... 2-9
Electrical System ... 5-99
Lumbar Controls ... 1-3
Seat ... 1-3
Steering Fluid ... 5-37
Windows ... 2-15
Power Steering ... 4-12
Programmable Automatic Door Locks ... 2-10
Programming the HomeLink Transmitter ... 2-37
Puddle Lamps ... 3-15

# Q

Questions and Answers About Safety Belts ... 1-29

# R


Radio Messages ..... 3-72
Radios ..... 3-64
Care of Your Cassette Tape Player ..... 3-97
Care of Your CD and DVD Player ..... 3-98
Care of Your CD Changer ..... 3-98
Care of Your CDs and DVDs ..... 3-98
CD Changer ..... 3-93
Radio with Cassette and CD ..... 3-65
Rear Seat Audio ..... 3-91
Setting the Time ..... 3-64
Theft-Deterrent ..... 3-95
Understanding Reception ..... 3-97
RDS Messages ..... 3-71
Reaching Roadside Service ..... 7-6
Reading Lamps ..... 3-17
REAR ACCESS OPEN ..... 3-60
Rear Axle ..... 5-51
Rear Climate Control System ..... 3-28
Rear Door Security Locks ..... 2-12
Rear Heated Seats ..... 1-9
Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides ..... 1-44
Rear Seat Armrest ..... 2-43
Rear Seat Audio ..... 3-91
Rear Seat Audio Controls ..... 3-91
Rear Seat Entertainment System ..... 3-80
Rear Seat Operation ..... 1-7
Rear Seat Outside Passenger Positions ..... 1-41
Rear Seat Passengers, Safety Belts ..... 1-41
Rear Storage Area ..... 2-43
Rear Window Defogger ..... 3-27
Rearview Mirror, Automatic Dimming with OnStar®, Compass and Temperature Display ... 2-30
Reclining Seatbacks ..... 1-5
Reclining the Seatbacks ..... 1-22
Recreational Vehicle Towing ..... 4-47
REDUCED BRAKE POWER ..... 3-58
REDUCED ENGINE POWER ..... 3-57
Remote Control ..... 3-83
Remote Keyless Entry System ..... 2-4
Remote Keyless Entry System, Operation ..... 2-5
Removing the 50/50 Split Bench Seats ..... 1-14
Removing the Bench Seat ..... 1-20
Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire ..... 5-79
Removing the Spare Tire and Tools ..... 5-75
Replacement Bulbs ..... 5-63
Replacing Brake System Parts ..... 5-42
Replacing Restraint System Parts After a Crash ..... 1-87
Replacing the 50/50 Split Bench Seat ..... 1-16
Replacing the Bench Seat ..... 1-21
Reporting Safety Defects
Canadian Government ..... 7-9
General Motors ..... 7-10
United States Government ..... 7-9

Reprogramming a Single HomeLink® Button ..... 2-40
Resetting Defaults ..... 2-40
Restraint System Check ..... 6-11
Checking Your Restraint Systems ..... 1-87
Replacing Restraint System Parts After a Crash ..... 1-87
Restraint Systems
Checking ..... 1-87
Replacing Parts ..... 1-87
Restraints, Head ..... 1-6
Retained Accessory Power (RAP) ..... 2-19
Returning the Seat to an Upright Position ..... 1-19
Returning the Seatbacks to an Upright Position ... 1-24
Returning the Seats to an Upright Position ..... 1-11
Returning the Seat(s) to an Upright Position ..... 1-13
RFA # BATTERY LOW ..... 3-62
Right Front Passenger Position, Safety Belts ..... 1-39
RIGHT REAR DOOR AJAR ..... 3-62
Road Sensing Suspension ..... 4-9
Roadside Service ..... 7-5
Roadside Service Availability ..... 7-6
Roadside Service for the Hearing or Speech Impaired ..... 7-6
Rocking Your Vehicle To Get It Out ..... 4-44
Running Your Engine While You Are Parked ..... 2-29

# S

Safety Belt
Reminder Light ..... 3-33
Safety Belts
Care of ..... 5-92
Center Passenger Position ..... 1-39
Driver Position ..... 1-30
How to Wear Safety Belts Properly ..... 1-30
Questions and Answers About Safety Belts ..... 1-29
Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides for Children and Small Adults ..... 1-44
Rear Seat Passengers ..... 1-41
Right Front Passenger Position ..... 1-39
Safety Belt Extender ..... 1-47
Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy ..... 1-38
Safety Belts Are for Everyone ..... 1-25
Safety Chains ..... 4-55
Safety Warnings and Symbols ..... iii
Scanning the Terrain ..... 4-20
Scheduled Maintenance ..... 6-5
Seats
50/50 Split Bench Seat ..... 1-11
60/40 Split Bench Seat ..... 1-9
Bench Seat ..... 1-17
Bucket Seats, Rear ..... 1-22
Head Restraints ..... 1-6

Seats (cont.)
Heated Seats ..... 1-4
Heated Seats, Rear ..... 1-9
Memory ..... 2-47
Power Lumbar ..... 1-3
Power Seats ..... 1-3
Rear Seat Operation ..... 1-7
Reclining Seatbacks ..... 1-5
Second Row ..... 1-67
Second Row – Lap-Shoulder Belt ..... 1-39
Securing a Child Restraint
Center Rear Seat Position ..... 1-66
Designed for the LATCH System ..... 1-64
Rear Outside Seat Position ..... 1-64
Right Front Seat Position ..... 1-68
Security Light ..... 3-44
Select Button ..... 3-47
Service ..... 5-3
Adding Equipment to the Outside of Your Vehicle ..... 5-4
Doing Your Own Work ..... 5-4
Engine Soon Light ..... 3-41
Publications Ordering Information ..... 7-10
SERVICE 4WD ..... 3-60
SERVICE AIR BAG ..... 3-58
SERVICE BRAKE BOOSTER ..... 3-59
SERVICE BRAKE SYSTEM ..... 3-58
Service Bulletins ..... 7-11
Service Manuals ..... 7-10
SERVICE RIDE CONTROL ..... 3-60
SERVICE STABILITY ..... 3-63
Setting Preset PTYs (RDS Only) ..... 3-70
Setting Preset Stations ..... 3-68
Setting the Time ..... 3-64
Setting the Tone (Bass/Treble) ..... 3-69
Sheet Metal Damage ..... 5-95
Shifting Into Park (P) ..... 2-25
Shifting Out of Park (P) ..... 2-27
Skidding ..... 4-16
Some Other Rainy Weather Tips ..... 4-34
Spare Tire ..... 5-89
Spare Tire Check ..... 6-11
Speaker Covers ..... 5-92
Specifications, Capacities ..... 5-109
Speedometer ..... 3-33
Split Bench Seat (50/50) ..... 1-11
Split Bench Seat (60/40) ..... 1-9
Stabilitrak® System ..... 4-9
STABILITY SYS ACTIVE ..... 3-62
STABILITY SYS DISABLED ..... 3-63
Stalling on an Incline ..... 4-28
Starter Switch Check ..... 6-12
Starting Your Engine ..... 2-19
Steering ..... 4-12
Steering and Suspension Inspection ..... 6-14
Steering in Emergencies ..... 4-13

Steering Tips ..... 4-12
Steering Wheel Controls, Audio ..... 3-96
Stereo RCA Jacks ..... 3-87
Storage Areas
Center Console Storage Area ..... 2-41
Convenience Net ..... 2-43
Cupholder(s) ..... 2-41
Glove Box ..... 2-41
Luggage Carrier ..... 2-42
Rear Seat Armrest ..... 2-43
Rear Storage Area ..... 2-43
Storing a Flat or Spare Tire, Jack and Tools ..... 5-85
Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice or Snow ..... 4-44
Sun Visors ..... 2-15
Sunroof ..... 2-46
Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) ..... 1-73
Adding Equipment to Your Air Bag-Equipped Vehicle ..... 1-86
How Does an Air Bag Restrain? ..... 1-79
Passenger Sensing System ..... 1-81
Servicing Your Air Bag-Equipped Vehicle ..... 1-86
What Makes an Air Bag Inflate? ..... 1-79
What Will You See After an Air Bag Inflates? ..... 1-80
When Should an Air Bag Inflate? ..... 1-77
Where Are the Air Bags? ..... 1-75

# T

Tachometer ..... 3-33
Taillamps ..... 5-61
Temperature and Compass Display ..... 2-30
Testing the Alarm ..... 2-17
Theft-Deterrent, Radio ..... 3-95
Theft-Deterrent Systems ..... 2-16
Content Theft-Deterrent ..... 2-16
Passlock® ..... 2-17
Third Row ..... 1-67
Third Row – Lap Belt ..... 1-40
Throttle, Adjustable ..... 2-20
Tilt Wheel ..... 3-6
Tilting the 50/50 Split Bench Seat ..... 1-13
Tilting the Full Bench Seat ..... 1-18
Tire Inflation Check ..... 6-10
Tires ..... 5-65, 5-94
Buying New Tires ..... 5-68
Chains ..... 5-73
Changing a Flat Tire ..... 5-74
If a Tire Goes Flat ..... 5-74
Inflation -- Tire Pressure ..... 5-66
Inspection and Rotation ..... 5-66
Spare Tire ..... 5-92
Uniform Tire Quality Grading ..... 5-70
Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance ..... 5-71
Wheel Replacement ..... 5-72
When It Is Time for New Tires ..... 5-68

To Use the Engine Coolant Heater ..... 2-21
Top of the Instrument Panel ..... 5-91
Top Strap ..... 1-58
Top Strap Anchor Location ..... 1-59
Torque Lock ..... 2-27
Total Weight on Your Vehicle's Tires ..... 4-54
Tow/Haul Mode Light ..... 3-45
Tow/Haul Mode Selector Button ..... 2-24
Towing
  Recreational Vehicle ..... 4-47
  Towing a Trailer ..... 4-50
  Your Vehicle ..... 4-47
Traction
  Off Light ..... 3-39
  Road Sensing Suspension ..... 4-9
  Stabilitrak® System ..... 4-9
TRACTION ACTIVE ..... 3-63
Traction Control Operation ..... 4-10
Trailer
  Recommendations ..... 4-50
Trailer Brakes ..... 4-55
Trailer Wiring Harness ..... 4-59
TRANS HOT IDLE ENGINE ..... 3-61
Transfer Case ..... 5-49
Transmission
  Fluid, Automatic ..... 5-21
Transmission (cont.)
  Temperature Gage ..... 3-40
TRANSMISSION HOT ..... 3-61
Transmission Operation, Automatic ..... 2-22
Transmission, Transaxle, Transfer Case Unit
  Repair Manual ..... 7-10
Transportation Options ..... 7-7
Traveling to Remote Areas ..... 4-19
Trip Information Button ..... 3-48
Turn and Lane Change Signals ..... 3-7
TURN SIGNAL ON ..... 3-60
Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever ..... 3-7
Turn Signals When Towing a Trailer ..... 4-57

# U

Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) ..... 3-18
Underbody Flushing Service ..... 6-13
Underhood Fuse Block ..... 5-104
Understanding Radio Reception ..... 3-97
Unfolding the Seatback ..... 1-18
Unfolding the Seatbacks ..... 1-12
Uniform Tire Quality Grading ..... 5-70
United States ..... 7-4
Using HomeLink® ..... 2-39
Using the Recovery Hooks ..... 4-45

# V


Vehicle
- Control ..... 4-5
- Damage Warnings ..... iv
- Loading ..... 4-48
- Symbols ..... iv

Vehicle Identification
- Number (VIN) ..... 5-98
- Service Parts Identification Label ..... 5-98

Vehicle Personalization
- Memory Seat ..... 2-47

Vehicle Storage ..... 5-43
Ventilation Adjustment ..... 3-27
Video Screen ..... 3-83
Vinyl ..... 5-91
Visors ..... 2-15
Voltmeter Gage ..... 3-37


# W


Warning Lights, Gages and Indicators ..... 3-31
Warnings
- DIC Warnings and Messages ..... 3-56
- Hazard Warning Flashers ..... 3-5
- Other Warning Devices ..... 3-6
- Safety and Symbols ..... iii
- Vehicle Damage ..... iv

Washing Your Vehicle ..... 5-93
Weatherstrip Lubrication ..... 6-11
Weight of the Trailer ..... 4-53
Weight of the Trailer Tongue ..... 4-54
What Kind of Engine Oil to Use ..... 5-16
What to Add ..... 5-40
What to Do with Used Oil ..... 5-18
What to Use ..... 5-25, 5-37, 5-51
Wheels
- Alignment and Tire Balance ..... 5-71
- Replacement ..... 5-72

When to Add Engine Oil ..... 5-15
When to Change Engine Oil
(GM Oil Life System) ..... 5-17
When to Check ..... 5-66
When to Check and Change ..... 5-21
When to Check Lubricant ..... 5-51
When to Check Power Steering Fluid ..... 5-37
When You Are Ready to Leave After Parking on
a Hill ..... 4-58
Where to Put the Restraint ..... 1-57
Why Safety Belts Work ..... 1-26
Windows ..... 2-14
Power ..... 2-15
Windshield, Backglass and Wiper Blades ..... 5-94
Windshield Washer ..... 3-9
Fluid ..... 5-37
Windshield Washer Fluid Level Check ..... 6-10
Windshield Wiper
Blade Replacement ..... 5-64
Fuses ..... 5-100
Windshield Wipers ..... 3-9
Winter Driving ..... 4-40
Wiper Blade Check ..... 6-11
Wood Panels ..... 5-91

## X

XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System ..... 3-99
XM™ Satellite Radio Service ..... 3-97

## Y

Your Vehicle and the Environment ..... 6-2